





Class F257

Book .L44

GPO















150  
514

HISTORY  
OF  
NORTH CAROLINA.

---

By JOHN LAWSON, Gentleman.

---

BEING A REPRINT OF THE COPY NOW IN THE NORTH CAROLINA  
STATE LIBRARY, RALEIGH, PRESENTED BY PRESIDENT  
JAMES MADISON, IN THE YEAR 1831.

---

CHARLOTTE, N. C.:  
OBSERVER PRINTING HOUSE,  
1903.









F257  
L44

103916 a  
'07

21



## COMPILER'S PREFACE.

What may truly be termed the first real history of North Carolina is that by John Lawson, and it is in many respects the most interesting of them all. Lawson was a man of very marked ability. He was the surveyor general of the Lords Proprietors for their province of North Carolina. He must have been accomplished in his profession and it is plain to see from the book he has left that he was also a botanist and naturalist of no mean order, even though he was at times led far astray by the stories the Indians told him. He was a very close observer of people, and in a small compass he has fixed for all time information not otherwise to be had regarding the aboriginal inhabitants of North Carolina. He signs himself John Lawson, Gentleman, from which it is probable that he was a scion of the ancient house of Lawson in Yorkshire, England, of which John is the favorite name.

This history, which bears the date of 1714, has a preface, a dedication and an introduction, the dedication being in all respects a model, a double tribute to this new land of Carolina and to the Lords Proprietors, its owners. Lawson, after securing the notes and other material for this history, appears to have begun its publication in parts in London as early as 1708 and some copies are dated 1710. The particular copy from which this reprint is now made was presented to the State of North Carolina in 1831 by President James Madison.

A second edition of Lawson was printed in London in 1718 and differs in some respects from the one now reprinted. It is not so attractive, the map being very small and poor. The title page

says it was "Printed for T. Warner at the Black Boy in Pater Noster Row, 1718. Price bound 5 shillings." A reprint of Lawson was made in 1860 by Oliver H. Perry, State librarian, but is very unattractive in all respects. Even this reprint is rare and costly. Perry stated in 1860, in his preface, that there were only two copies of Lawson then in this State; one in the State Library, the other in the library of the State University.

This history of Lawson bearing date 1714 is divided into three distinct parts, the first being a journal of a thousand miles traveled among the Indians from South to North Carolina; the second a description of North Carolina; the third an account of the Indians of North Carolina. The description of North Carolina is sub-divided further into several parts, covering the plants and herbs, the present state of the colony, and its natural history. The large map which accompanies the book and which is now reproduced by photography, is admirably engraved, but has many inaccuracies as to streams and is very misty indeed about everything west of a line running north and south say through what is now Hillsboro, and it woefully fails to locate most of the Indian tribes to which such frequent reference is made and also fails to locate places repeatedly alluded to in the narrative. The seal of the Lords Proprietors is placed above the dedication, since the map is, like the book, specially dedicated to them.

Lawson left Charleston on the 28th of December, 1700, for his long and in those days, eventful and dangerous, journey through the Carolinas. Taking an Indian as guide, he went by boat along

the coast to Bull's Island, and thence to Raccoon Island and the mouth of the Santee river, and a considerable distance up that stream. He found bitter weather from the start and he found an enormous flood in that river, which was 36 feet above its usual level. He notices the French settlements, and unlike most Englishmen of his time sets a high estimate upon that nation both as explorers and colonizers. The first Indian tribe he met was the Sewees, whom he refers to as "a small nation since the English seated their lands," this being a polite phrase for the occupation of the New World. Lawson is frank in the extreme as regards the relations of the whites to the Indians. He chronicles the deadly work of the two great agents in Indian depopulation, to-wit, rum and smallpox, which were brought here by the whites. He tells, too, of the utter difference in human kindness between the whites and the aborigines. The latter never turned away a white man from their doors and always divided food with them. Black indeed does Lawson paint the character of the whites in this respect. In fact the Indian character stands out bright compared with that of the English and Spaniards, so far as human kindness is concerned. It is no wonder, after reading Lawson's narrative of his journey and his account of the Indians that the latter had disappeared so fast. They had killed each other in war and by poison, in the use of which they were as subtle as the Italians of the fifteenth century. But deadlier still was the work of rum and smallpox, which in the 50 years preceding 1700 had swept away, he declares, five-sixths of the Indians who were in reach of the English settlements of North Carolina.

But to return to Lawson and his journey. Leaving the Santee river he set out for the Congaree country, the latter river flowing from the eastward

and joining with the Wateree, forming the Santee. A town in Richland county, South Carolina, near the junction of the Congaree and Santee, is perhaps the site of the capital of the Congaree Indians. This part of Lawson's journey was nearly due northwest. His next objective point was the Wateree tribe of Indians. A village of that name is in Santee county and evidently the Waterees and Congarees were close neighbors. He traveled about three days, his usual day's journey being about 25 miles, and reached the Wateree Chickanee Indians. This march took him northward, for he crossed the Wateree river immediately before reaching the nation of that name. In one day's journey from the Waterees he reached the Waxhaw Indians, these no doubt living in what is now the lower part of Lancaster county, and perhaps part of Union. After a day's journey directed towards Sapona, northeast, he crossed several brooklets and one small river, perhaps the headwaters of Lynch's river, and then he was among the Esaw Indians. From these he went to the Kadapaus. He says he found one point at which a savannah or open level of ground was bordered on one side by ridges of mountains, this showing that he was quite far up the State. He speaks of numerous panthers, "tygers" and wolves, and in fact tells of the shooting of a "tyger," surely a mythical beast, only inferior in fearfulness to the one which he says the Indians told him of further up the country, a frightful monster before which everything gave way and yet which no one seems ever to have seen. He found wild turkeys in gangs of several hundred and he also found the buffalo, having seen the latter killed as far eastward as the Haw river.

Lawson's account of the Indian towns along a part of his route is all too meagre. He says that each of these

towns had its theatre or state house all along the road from the Wisack Indians to Sapona, a distance of 170 miles. In the first sketch of the settlement of North Carolina ever illustrated, that by De Bry, printed in Germany in 1590 and based upon the drawings and description of the settlement of Roanoke Island by Governor John White, there are admirable pictures of these Indian towns, with palisades protecting the huts, and with a larger building in the centre, evidently the theatre or state house, and these engravings and the others of the Indians which De Bry made fill in admirably what Lawson has omitted, since the latter appears to have been no artist.

Lawson made a great semi-circle in this journey of a thousand miles. He said he intended to see North Carolina and he probably went as far to the westward as any man had gone up to that time. It was on his journey through the Kadapau Indian country that he met some Indians whom he terms the Jennitos or Sinnagers. He meant the Senecas, who came from New York and thereabouts and who were one of the "Five Nations." These Senecas, he says, ravaged the country for several thousand miles and were the most feared of all the Red Men. It is a matter of history that the Tuscaroras, who were the most powerful tribe in North Carolina, as Lawson states, after their great defeat by the colonists left North Carolina by permission and went to New York, where they joined the "Five Nations," making the latter the "Six Nations." Lawson says he found the Sapona Indians as far to the southward as the Kadapaus. His map does not locate Sapona town, but he merely states that it was on the Sapona river, one side of which was hemmed in by what he terms "mountainy ground." Sapona river was doubtless the Pee Dee, a few miles be-

low the place where the Yadkin loses its name and water into the Pee Dee. Lawson speaks at this point of his journey of frequently passing small creeks. Lancaster and Chesterfield counties, in South Carolina, are a network of such little streams, the head waters of Lynch's river and branches of the Pee Dee. He says the Sapona river was a branch of the Cape Fear. It was easy to make this mistake, because for a few miles the course of the river was a little north of due east.

And here in his narrative of his journey it was given Lawson to foretell precisely his own horrible mode of death, as it has been given to no other writer. The Saponas had captured as prisoners some Senecas, and planned to torture them by sticking their bodies thickly with lightwood splinters, which were to be lighted like so many candles, the tortured persons "dancing around a great fire until their strength failed and disabled them from making any further pastime for their captors." It was thus the Indians tortured poor Lawson himself, not many years later after they had captured him and DeGraffenreid, near Newbern. Lawson speaks of the Toteros as a neighboring nation to the Saponas, yet having their home in what he calls the "Westward Mountains." It was on January 31st, 45 days after he had left Charleston, that he reached the Saponas, and this shows what a wide sweep his journey took. He left Sapona-town after a brief stay and traveled about eight miles, when he came to Rocky river. This seems to be the stream which separates Stanly and Anson counties, which is to-day known by that name on account, as Lawson says, of its rocky bed, and any one who has seen this stream will say it is well named. Going northward he crossed the Heighwaree, evidently the Uwharrie, which flows across the northwestern corner of



Montgomery county, and which empties into the Yadkin river. He went a little to the northwest, to the town of the Keyauwees, which tribe afterwards was merged into the Saponas. A small town in the southern portion of Davidson county is now known as Sapona, and perhaps may have been the original Keyauwees-town. The distance would make about a day's journey from the Uwharrie river, this being the time in which Lawson made it. He says they found plenty of chestnuts there and this shows that they were far west. He also speaks of their seeing no more pine trees.

It was at the Keyauwees town that he saw the princess of that tribe, the King's only daughter, whom he terms "the beautifullest Indian I ever saw." Observant Lawson never failed to see the women and to note their physical and other good qualities. Like the other Englishmen of the time he had an eye for those comforts which delight the appetite and much of his story is about the food. He does not name the person who left Charleston with him, but says that on departing from the Keyauwee country he and "one more" took their leave of most of the company, "resolving, with God's leave, to see North Carolina." His next objective point was what he calls the Achonechey town. This was no doubt the chief town of the Occoneechee Indians, and must have been not very far from Hillsboro. He says that on his way there he crossed the northwest branch of the Cape Fear river. His course was now changed, more towards the east. In the outset he said he proposed to see North Carolina, and his route shows that he went much out of his way to do this. He refers to passing several small rivers, doubtless, as he says, the head-waters of the Cape Fear. From the Keyauwee's town they traveled about 130 miles, when they

crossed what he terms the "famous Hau, or as some say the Reatkin" (meaning the Yadkin, which he confused with the Haw). As the Indians wandered about like cattle, in search of food, it is very probable that they gave the same, or similar, names to different streams, to-wit, Reatkin-Yadkin. Col. Byrd, of Virginia, calls the latter stream the "Yapatto Yadkin." Lawson continued eastward about 20 miles further, when he reached Achonechey (Occoneechee.) He speaks of the extraordinary rich land between the Haw river and the Occoneechee town, saying that he had never seen 20 miles of such fertile country altogether. He declares that the savages still possessed what he terms the "Flower of Carolina, the English enjoying only the fag-end of that fine country." He evidently did not think so much of the coast region, which was then alone occupied by the whites. It was at the Occoneechee town that he met with that cleverest of Indians, "Enoe Will," whose name or a part of it at least has come down to us in the Eno river, which winds by the quaint old town of Hillsboro. Enoe Will occupied the triple relation to Lawson of landlord, friend and guide, and they set out for Adshusheer, a place which is not located in his map but to which he frequently refers and which must have been an important Indian town. They made their journey, "striking more to the eastward," showing that this had not been their course at an earlier date. Adshusheer must have been eastward of Occoneechee, though Lawson is again wrong about his streams, for though he says he was now crossing streams emptying into the Cape Fear river, he was really among those emptying into the Neuse. He went 40 miles further, to reach a nation called the "Lower Quarter," where he met, strange to say, one-eyed Indians in great numbers. He says he

was stopped by a freshet in the Enoe river, which he was told ran into a place called "Enoe Bay" in the territory of the Coree Indians, whose country seems to have been near what is now Craven county. Lawson evidently got the Enoe and the Neuse rivers mixed the Enoe being but a small stream, and it must have been the Neuse itself which was at flood, for he says it was nearly as large as the Reatkin." He stopped at what he terms the "Falls of Neuse Creek," the Indian name for those falls being "Wee-quo-Whom." This must be the place some 16 miles north of Raleigh now known as the "Falls of Neuse." There is no Neuse creek, but only the river of that name.

By this time two other Englishmen, eastward-bound to the English settlements, had joined Lawson's party, bringing it up to four whites, and on the banks of the Neuse they found Tuscarora Indians on their way to trade with the Schoccores and Achonechy Indians, whom Lawson termed "Westward Indians," no doubt to distinguish them from those who lived nearer the coast. The Indians had temporary hunting camps, which they called "hunting quarters," in one of which Lawson found 500 of them, these all being, he says, Tuscaroras. He says the latter were by far the most numerous tribe in North Carolina and also the most bloodthirsty and cruel. These Tuscaroras appear to have had quite a genius for trade and they traveled far to peddle their wares among other tribes of Indians. The Tuscarora language was in fact a sort of current language among all the North Carolina Indians of which Lawson had

knowledge. The Tuscaroras, in spite of their exceedingly bad reputation, seem to have been friendly to Lawson on this journey at least.

The remaining part of this long wandering of a thousand miles was through the swamps and Lawson says he crossed what is now known as the Tar river and also the Chattookau, which he terms the northwest branch of the Neuse, and passed through a country very thick with Indian towns and plantations, here again finding the long, ragged moss (*tillandsia*) hanging from the trees, which he had not seen since he left lower South Carolina. He then came upon the banks of Pampticough, by which he means Pamlico, within 20 miles of the English plantations, and so by water and on foot, on the 23rd of February, 1701, he reached his destination, the home of "Mr. Richard Smith, of Pampticough river, in North Carolina."

The credulity of Lawson, practical man as he was, must have been sorely tasked by what he saw and what he heard. It was in very truth a strange world he was in. The Indian wizards were in his eyes marvelous, particularly the one who, after performing some preliminary arts on the banks of a stream of much width, "fled across," without touching the water; literally flew.

Lawson's natural history is sometimes at fault and his most amusing mistake, perhaps, is in ranking the "tortoises" among the "insects, because they lay eggs and I did not know well where to put them."

FRED A. OLDS.





THE  
HISTORY  
OF  
CAROLINA;  
CONTAINING THE  
*Exact Description and Natural History*  
OF THAT  
COUNTRY:

Together with the *Present State* thereof.

AND

A JOURNAL  
Of a Thousand Miles, Travel'd thro' several  
Nations of *INDIANS*.  
Giving a particular Account of their Customs,  
Manners, &c.

---

By JOHN LAWSON, Gent. Surveyor-General  
of *NORTH-CAROLINA*.

---

L O N D O N :

Printed for *W. Taylor* at the Ship, and *J. Baker* at the Black-  
Boy, in *Pater-Noster-Row*, 1714.





## PREFACE.

'Tis a great misfortune that most of our travellers who go to this vast continent in America, are persons of the meaner sort, and generally of a very slender education; who being hired by the Merchants to trade among the Indians, in which voyages they often spend several years, are yet at their return, incapable of giving any reasonable account of what they met withal in those remote parts; tho' the Country abounds with Curiosities worthy of a nice Observation. In this point, I think, the French outstrip us.

First, By their Numerous Clergy, their Missionaries being obedient to their Superiors in the highest degree, and that Obedience being one great article of their Vow, and strictly observed amongst all their order.

Secondly, They always send abroad some of their Gentlemen in Company with the Missionaries, who, upon their arrival, are ordered out into the wilderness, to make discoveries, and to acquaint themselves with the savages of America; and are obliged to keep a strict Journal of all the passages they meet withal in order to present the same, not only to their governors and fathers, but likewise to their friends and relations in France; which is industriously spread about that Kingdom, to their advantage. For their Monarch being a very good judge of Men's Deserts, does not often let money or interest make men of Parts give Place to others of less Worth. This breeds an Honorable Emulation amongst them, to outdo one another, even in Fatigues, and Dangers; whereby they gain a good Correspondence with the Indians,

and acquaint themselves with their Speech and Customs; and so make considerable Discoveries in a short time. Witness, their Journals from Canada, to the Mississippi, and its several Branches, where they have effected great matters, in a few years.

Having spent most of my Time, during my Eight Years Abode in Carolina, in travelling! I not only surveyed the Sea-coast and those parts which are already inhabited by the Christians; but likewise view'd a spacious Tract of Land, lying betwixt the Inhabitants and the Ledges of the Mountains, from whence our noblest rivers have their Rise, running towards the Ocean, where they water as pleasant a Country as any in Europe; the Discovery of which being never yet made Publick, I have in the Following Sheets given you a faithful Account thereof, wherein I have laid down everything with Impartiality, and Truth, which is indeed, the Duty of every Author and preferable to a Smooth Stile, accompany'd with Falsities and Hyperboles.

Great Part of this pleasant and healthful country is inhabited by none but Savages, who covet a Christian Neighborhood, for the Advantage of Trade, and Enjoy all the Comforts of Life, free from Care and Want.

But not to Amuse my Readers any longer with the Encomium of Carolina, I refer 'em to my Journal, and other more particular Description of that Country and its Inhabitants, which they will find after the Natural History thereof, in which I have been very exact, and for Method's sake rang'd each Species under its distinct and proper head.

To His Excellency

WILLIAM LORD CRAVEN, Palatine;

THE MOST NOBLE, HENRY DUKE of Beaufort;

THE RIGHT HONBLE MAURICE ASHLEY, ESQ:

SIR JOHN COLLETON, BARONET,

JOHN DANSON, ESQ;

and the rest of the True and Absolute

LORDS PROPRIETORS

of the

PROVINCE OF CAROLINA in AMERICA.

MY LORDS, As Debts of Gratitude ought Most punctually to be paid, so where the Debtor is incapable of Payment, Acknowledgments ought, at least, to be made. I cannot, in the least, pretend to retaliate Your Lordship's Favours to me, but must further intrude on that Goodness of which I have already had so good Experience, by Laying these Sheets at Your Lordship's Feet, where they beg Protection, as having nothing to recommend them, but Truth; a Gift which every Author may be Master of, if he will be.

I here present your Lordships with a Description of your own Country,

for the most part, in her Natural Dress, and therefore less vitiated with Fraud and Luxury. A Country, whose Inhabitants may enjoy a Life of the Greatest Ease, and Satisfaction, and pass away their Hours in solid Contentment.

Those Charms of Liberty and Right, the Darlings of an English Nature, which your Lordships Grant and Maintain, make you appear Noble Patrons in the Eyes of all Men, and We a Happy People in a Foreign Country; which nothing less than Ingratitude and Baseness can make us disown.

As Heaven has been Liberal in its Gifts, so are Your Lordships favourable Promoters of whatever may make us an easy people; which I hope Your Lordships will continue to us and our Posterity, and that we and they may always acknowledge such favours, by banishing from among us every Principal which renders Men factious and unjust, which is the Hearty Prayer of,

My Lords,

Your Lordships Most obliged,

most humble,

and most devoted servant,

JOHN LAWSON.



## INTRODUCTION.

In the Year of 1700, when People flocked from all Parts of the Christian World, to see the Solemnity of the Grand Jubilee at Rome, my attention, at that Time, being to Travel, I accidentally met with a Gentleman, who had been abroad, and was very well acquainted with the Ways of Living in Both Indies; of whom having made enquiry concerning Them, he assur'd me that Carolina was the best country I could go to; and that there then lay a Ship in the Thames in which I might have my Passage. I laid hold on this Opportunity, and was not long on Board, before we fell down the River, and sail'd to Cowes; where, having taken in some passengers we proceeded on our Voyage, till we sprung a-leak and were forc'd into the Islands of Scilly. Here we spent about 10 days in refitting; in which time we had a good deal of Diversion in Fishing and Shooting on those Rocky islands. The inhabitants were very Courteous and civil, especially the Governor, to whose good Company and Favour we were very much oblig'd. There is a Town on one of these Islands, where is good Entertainment for those who happen to come in, though the Land is but mean, and Flesh-meat not plenty. They have good store of Rabbits, Quails and Fish; and you see at the poor Peoples Doors great Heaps of Perriwinkle-shells; those Fish being a great Part of their Food. On the first day of May, having a fair Wind at East, we put to sea, and were on the Ocean (without speaking to any vessel except a Ketch bound from New England to Barbadoes, laden with Horses, Fish and Provisions) 'till the latter end of July, when the Winds hung so much Southerly, that we could

not get to our Port, but put into Sandy-hookbay, and went up to New York after a pinching voyage, Caus'd by our long Passage. We found at the Watering-Place, a French Man of War, who had on Board Men and Necessaries to make a Colony, and was intended for the Messessippi River, there to settle. The Countrv of New York is very Pleasant in Summer, but in the Winter very cold, as all the Northern Plantations are. Their chief commodities are Provisions, Bread, Beer, Lumber and Fish in abundance; all which are very good, and some Skins and Furs are hence exported. The City is govern'd by a Mayor, (as in England) is seated on an island, and lies very convenient for Trade and Defence, having a regular Fort and well mounted with guns. The Buildings are generally of a smaller sort of Flemish Brick, and of the Dutch fashion (except some few Houses;) they are all very firm and good work, and conveniently placed, as is likewise the town, which gives a very pleasant prospect of the neighboring Islands and Rivers. A good part of the Inhabitants are Dutch, in whose hands this Colony once was. After a Fort-night's stay here, we put out from Sandyhook, and in 14 days after, arrived at Charlestown, the Metropolis of South Carolina, which is situate in 32, 45 North Latitude and admits of Large Ships to come over their Bar up to the Town, where is a very commodious Harbour, about 5 mles Distant from the Inlet, and stands on a point very convenient for trade, being Seated between two pleasant and navigable Rivers. The Town has very regular and fair streets, in which are good buildings of Brick and Wood, and since my

coming thence has had great additions of beautiful, Large Brick Buildings, besides a Strong Fort, and regular Fortifications made to defend the town. The inhabitants by their Wise Management and Industry, have much improved the Country, which is in as thriving Circumstances at this Time, as any other Colony on the Continent of English America, and is of more advantage to the Crown of Great Britain, than any other of the more Northerly Plantations, (Virginia and Maryland excepted.) This Colony was at first planted by a genteel Sort of People, that were well acquainted with Trade, and had either Money or Parts to make good Use of the advantages that offer'd, as most of them have done, by raising themselves to great Estates and Posts of Honor, in this thriving settlement. Since the first Planters, abundance of French and others have gone over, and raised themselves to considerable Fortunes. They are very Neat in Packing and Shipping of their Commodities; which method has got them so great a character Abroad, that they generally come to a good Market with their Commodities; when often times the Products of other Plantations, are forced to be sold at Lower Prizes. They have a considerable Trade both to Europe, and the West Indies, whereby they became rich, and are Supply'd with all things necessary for Trade, and Genteel Living, which several other Places fall short of. Their cohabiting in a Town has drawn to them ingenious People of most Sciences, whereby they have Tutors amongst them that educate their Youth a-la-mode.

Their Roads, with great Industry, are made very Good and Pleasant. Near the Town is built a fair Parsonagehouse, with necessary offices, and the Minister has a very considerable allowance from his Parish. There is

likewise a French Church in Town, of the Reform'd Religion, and several Meeting Houses for dissenting Congregations, who all enjoy at this day an entire liberty of their Worship; the Constitution of This Government, allowing all Parties of well meaning Christians to enjoy a free Toleration and possess the same Priviledges, so long as they appear to behave themselves peaceably and well. It being the Lord's Proprietors Intent, that the inhabitants of Carolina should be as free from Oppression as any in the Universe; which doubtless they will, if their own differences amongst themselves do not occasion the contrary.

They have a well-disciplin'd Militia; their Horse are most Gentlemen, and well mounted, and the best in America, and may equalize any in other parts; their Officers, both Infantry and Cavalry, generally appear in scarlet mountings, and as rich as in most Regiments belonging to the Crown, which shews the Richness and Grandeur of this Colony. They are a Fronteer, and prove such troublesome neighbors to the Spaniards, that they have once laid their town of St. Augustine in Ashes, and drove away their cattle; besides many Encounters and Engagements, in which they have defeated them, too tedious to relate here. What the French got by their Attempt against South Carolina, will hardly ever be ranked amongst their Victories; their Admiral Monville being glad to leave the Enterprize, and run away after he had suffered all the Loss and disgrace he was capable of receiving. They are Absolute Masters over the Indians, and carry so strict a hand over such as are within the Circle of their Trade, that none does the least Injury to any of the English, but he is soon sent for and punished with Death or Otherwise, according to the nature of the fault. They have an entire friendship with the neighboring

Indians of several Nations, which are a very warlike People, ever Faithful to the English, and have proved themselves Brave and True on all Occasions; and are a great Help and Strength to this Colony. The Chief of the savage Nations have heretofore groaned under the Spanish Yoke, and having experienced their Cruelty, are become such mortal Enemies to that People, that they never give a Spaniard quarter; but generally, when they take any Prisoners (if the English be not near to prevent it) sculp them, that is to take their hair and Skin of their heads, which they often flea away, whilst the Wretch is alive. Notwithstanding the English have used all their Endeavors, yet they could never bring them to leave this Barbarity to the Spaniards; who, as they allege, used to murder them, and their relations, and make Slaves of them to build their Forts and Towns.

This place is more plentiful in Money, than Most, or indeed any of the Plantations on the Continent; besides they build a considerable number of Vessels of Cedar, and other Wood, with which they trade to Cuirassau and the West Indies; from one they bring money and from the other the Produce of their Islands, which yields a necessary Supply of both to the Colony. Their Stocks of Cattle are incredible, being from one to two thousand head in one man's Possession; these feed in the Savannas, and Other Grounds, and need no fodder in the winter. Their Mutton and Veal is good, and their Pork is not inferior to any in America. As for Pitch and Tar, none of the Plantations are comparable for affording the vast quantities of Naval Stores, as this Place does. There have been heretofore Some Discoveries of Rich Mines in the Mountanous Parts of this Country; but being remote from

the present settlement, and the inhabitants not well versed in ordering minerals, they have been laid aside until a more fit opportunity happens. There are several noble Rivers and Rich Tracts of Land in their Lordships Dominions, lying to the Southward, which are yet uninhabited, besides Port Royal, a rare Harbour and Inlet, having many inhabitants thereon; which their Lordships have now made a port for Trade. This will be a most advantageous settlement, lying so commodiously for Ships Coming from the Gulph, and the Richness of the Land, which is reported to be there. These more Southerly Parts will afford Oranges, Limons, Limes, and many other Fruits, which the Northerly Plantations yield not.

The Merchants of Carolina, are Fair, Frank Traders. The Gentlemen seated in the country are very courteous, live very nobly in their Houses, and give very Genteel entertainments to all strangers and others that come to visit them. And since the Produce of South and North Carolina is the same, unless Silk, which this place produces great quantities of and very good. North Carolina having never made any Tryal thereof as yet, therefore I shall refer the Natural Produce of this Country, to that part which treats of North Carolina, whose productions are much the same. The Christian Inhabitants of both Colonies pretty equal, but the Slaves of South Carolina are far more in number than those in the North. I shall now proceed to relate my journey thro' the country, from this Settlement to the other, and then treat of the Natural History of Carolina, with other remarkable Circumstances which I have met with, during my eight Years Abode in that Country.





# LAWSON'S

## History of North Carolina.

---

### CHAPTER I.

On December 28th, 1700, I began my voyage for (North Carolina) from Charles Town, being six Englishmen in company, with three Indian men and one woman, wife to our Indian Guide, having five miles from the Town to the Breach we went down in a large Canoe, that we had provided for our voyage thither, having the Tide of Ebb along with us; which was so far spent by that time we got down that we had not water enough for our Craft to go over, although we drew but two foot, or thereabouts. This breach is a passage to a Marsh Lying to the Northward of Sullivan's Island, the Pilots having a lookout thereon, lying very commodious for Mariners (on that coast) making a good Land-Mark, in so level a country, this Bar being difficult to hit, where an observation hath been wanting for a day or two; Northeast winds bringing Great Fogs, Mists and Rains; which towards the cool months, October, November, and until the latter end of March, often appear in these Parts. There are three pilots to attend, and conduct ships over the Bar. The Harbour where the vessels generally ride, is against the Town, on Cooper's River, lying within a point which parts that

and Ashley River, they being Land-Lock'd almost on all sides.

At 4 in the afternoon (at half flood) we pass'd with our canoe over the Breach, leaving Sullivan's Island on our Star board. The first Place we designed for, was Santee River, on which there is a colony of French Protestants, allow'd and encourag'd by the Lords Proprietors. At night we got to Bell's-Island, a poor spot on land, being about ten miles round, where lived (at that time) a Bermudian, being employ'd here with a Boy, to look after a stock of cattle and Hogs, by the owner of this Island. One side of the roof of his house was thatched with Palmeto-Leaves, the other open to the heavens, thousands of musketoes and other troublesome insects, tormenting both Man and Beast inhabiting the island. The Palmeto trees, whose leaves growing only on top of the trees in the Shape of a Fan, and in a cluster, like a cabbage; this tree in Carolina, when at its utmost growth, is about 40 or 50 foot in height, and two foot through. It's worth mentioning, that the growth of the Tree is not perceivable in the Age of any Man, the experiment having been often tried in Bermudas, and else-

where, which shows the slow growth of this vegetable, the wood of it being porous and stringy, like some Canes; the leaves thereof the Bermudians make womens hats, bokesets, baskets, and pretty dressing-boxes, a great deal being transported to Pensilvania, and other Northern Parts of America (where they do not grow) for the same manufacture. The people of Carolina make of the fans of this tree, brooms very serviceable to sweep their houses withal.

We took up our lodging this Night with the Bermudian; our entertainment was very indifferent; there being no fresh Water to be had on the Island.

The next Morning we set, away thro' the Marshes; about noon we reached another island called Dix's Land, much like to the former, tho' larger; there lived an honest Scot who gave us the best protection his Dwelling afforded, being well Provided of Oat-Meal, and Several other effects he had found on that coast; which goods belonged to that unfortunate vessel, the Rising Sun, a Scotch Man-of-War, lately arrived from the Istmus of Darien and cast away near the Bar of Ashley River, the September before, Capt. Gibson, of Glasco, then commanding her, who with above an hundred men then on Board her, were every Soul drown'd in that terrible Gust which then happen'd; most of the corps being taken up, were carefully interr'd by Mr. Graham, their Lieutenant, who happily was on shore during the tempest.

After Dinner we left our Scotch Landlord, and went that Night to the North East Point of the Island, It being dark ere we got there, our Canoe Struck on a Sandbar near the Breakers, and were in Great Danger of our Lives; But (by God's Blessing) we got off safe to the Shore, where we lay all night.

In the Morning we set forward on our

intended Voyage. About two a Clock we got to Bulls Island, which is about Thirty Miles long, and hath a great Number of both Cattel and Hogs upon it; the Cattel being very Wild, and the Hogs very Lean. These two last Islands belong to one Colonel Cary, an Inhabitant of South Carolina. Although it were Winter, yet we found such Swarms of Musketoes, and other troublesome Insects, that we got but little Rest that night.

The next Day we intended for a small Island on the other Side of Sewee-Bay, which joining to these Islands, Shipping might come to victual or careen; but there being such a burden of those Flies, that few or none cares to settle there; so the Stock thereon are run Wild. We were gotten about half way to Racoon Island, when there sprung up a tart Gale at N. W. which puts us in some danger of being cast away, the bay being rough, and there running great Seas between the two Islands, which are better than four Leagues asunder; a strong Current of Tide setting in and out, which made us turn tail to it, and got our Canoe right before the Wind, and came Safe into a Creek that is joining to the North End of Bulls Island. We sent our Indians to hunt, who brought us two Deers, which were very poor, and their Maws full of large Grubs.

On the morrow we went and visited the Easternmost Side of this Island, it joining to the Ocean, and having very fair and Sandy Beaches, pav'd with innumerable sorts of curious pretty Shells, and very pleasant to the Eye. Amongst the Rest we found the Spanish Oyster Shell, whence come the Pearls. They are very large, and of a different Form from other Oysters; their Colour much resembles the Tortoise-Shell, when it is dress'd. There was left by the Tide several strange Species of a mucilginous slimy sub-



stance, though living, and very aptly mov'd at their First Appearance; yet, being left on the dry Sand, (by the Beams of the Sun) soon exhale and Vanish.

At our return to our Quarters the Indians had killed two more Deer, two wild Hogs, and three Raccoons, all very lean, except the Raccoons. We had great Store of Oysters, Conks, and Clamps, a Large sort of Cockles. These parts being very well furnished with Shell-Fish, Turtles of several Sorts, but few or none of the green, with other sorts of Salt-Water Fish, and in the Season, good Plenty of Fowl, as Curleus, Gulls, Gannets, and Pelicans, besides Duck and Mallard Geese, Swans, Teal, Widgeon, etc.

On Thursday Morning we left Bulls-Island, and went thro' the Creeks, which lie between the Bay and the Main Land. At noon we went on Shore, and Got our Dinner near a Plantation on a Creek having the full Prospect of Sewee-Bay; we sent up to the House but none were at Home, but a Negro of whom our Messenger purchas'd some small quantity of Tobacco and Rice. We came to a deserted Indian Residence, call'd Avendaugh-bough, where we rested that night.

The next day we entered Santee River's Mouth, where is Fresh water, occasion'd by the extraordinary Current that comes down continually. With hard Rowing we got two Leagues up the River, lying all night in a Swampy Piece of Ground, the Weather being so cold all that time, we were almost frozen ere Morning, leaving the Impressions of our Bodies on the wet ground. We set Forward very early in the Morning, to seek some better Quarters.

As we Row'd up the River, we found the Land towards the Mouth and for about 15 miles up it, scarce anything but swamp and Percoarson, affording vast Ciprus-Trees, of which the French

make Canoes, that will carry fifty or sixty barrels. After the Tree is Moulded and Dug, they saw them in two pieces, and so put a Plank between, and a small Keel, to preserve them from the oyster Banks, which are innumerable in the Creeks and Bays betwix the French settlement and Charles Town. They carry two Masts, and Bermudas Sails, which makes them very handy and fit for their purpose; for although their River fetches its first Rise from the Mountains, and continues a Current some Hundreds of Miles ere it disgorges itself, having no sound Bay or Sand Banks betwix the Mouth thereof and the Ocean. Notwithstanding all this, with the vast stream it affords at all Seasons, and the repeated Freshes it so often alarms the inhabitants with, by laving under Water Great Part of their Country, yet the Mouth is barr'd affording not above four or five foot Water at the Entrance. As we went up the River we heard a great Noise, as if two parties were engaged against each other, seeming exactly like small shot. When we approached nearer the Place, we found it to be some Sewee Indians firing the Canes Swamps, which drives out the Game, then taking their particular stands, kill great quantities of both Deer, Bear, Turkies, and what Wild Creatures the Parts afford.

These Sewees have been formerly a large Nation, though now very much decreased, since the English hath seated their Land, and all other Nations of Indians are observed to partake of the same fate, where the Europeans come, the Indians being a people very apt to catch any Distemper they are afflicted withal. The Small-Pox has destroyed many thousands of these Natives, who no sooner than they are attack'd with the violent fevers, and the Burning which attends the Distemper, fling themselves overhead in the Water, in the very extremity of the Disease,

which shutting up the pores, hinders a kindly evacuation of the Pestilential Matter, and drives it back, by which means death most commonly ensues; not but in other Distempers which are epidemical, you may find among 'em Practitioners that have extraordinary skill and Success in removing those morbisick Qualities which afflict 'em, not often going above 100 yards from their abode for their Remedies, some of their chiefest physicians commonly carrying their Compliment of Drugs continually about them, which are Roots, Barks, Berries, Nuts, etc., that are strung upon a thread. So like a Pomander, the Physician wears them about his neck. An Indian hath been often found to heal an Englishman of a Malady, for the value of a Match Coat; which the ablest of our English Pretenders in America after repeated Applications, have deserted the Patient as incurable. God having furnished every Country with specifick Remedies for their peculiar Diseases.

Rum, a Liquor now so much in Use with them, that they will part with the Dearest thing they have, to purchase it; and when they have got a little in their heads are the impatient Creatures Living, 'till they have enough to make them quite Drunk; and the Most miserable spectacles when they are so, some falling into the Fires, burn their Legs or Arms, contracting the sinews, become cripples all their Lifetime, others from Precipices break their bones and joints, with abundance of instances, yet none are so great to deter them from that accurs'd Practice of Drunkenness, though sensible how many of them (are by it) hurried into the other World before their Time—as themselves Oftentimes will confess. The Indians, I was now speaking of, were not content with the common Enemies that lessen and destroy their country-men, but invented an infallible

Stratagem to purge their tribe, and reduce their Multitude into far less numbers. Their Contrivance was thus, as a Trader amongst them informed me.

They seeing several Ships coming in, to bring the English Supplies from Old England, one chief part of their Cargo being for a Trade with the Indians, some of the Craftiest of them had observed, that the Ships came always in at one place, which made them very confident that Way was the exact road to England; and seeing so many ships come thence they believed it could not be far thither, esteeming the English that were among them no better than cheats, and thought if they could carry the Skins and Furs they got themselves to England, which was inhabited with a better sort of People than those amongst them, that they should purchase twenty times the Value of every Pelt they sold Abroad, in consideration of what rates they sold for at Home. The intended barter was very well approved of, and after a general Consultation of the ablest Heads amongst them, it was, Nemine Contradicente, agreed upon, immediately to make an addition of their fleet, by building more canoes, and those to be of the best sort, and biggest Size, as fit for their intended Discovery. Some Indians were employed about making the Canoes, others to hunting, everyone to the Post he was most fit for, all Endeavors intending towards an able Fleet and Car go for Europe. The affair was carried on with a great deal of Secrecy and Expedition, so as in a Small Time they had gotten a Navy, Loading Provisions, and hands ready to set sail, leaving only the Old, Impotent and Minors at Home till their successful return. The Wind presenting, they set up their mat sails, and were scarce out of sight when there rose a tempest, which it's supposed carried one part of these Indian Merchants, by Way of the other World,

whilst the others were taken up at Sea by an English Ship and sold for Slaves to the Islands. The remainder are better satisfied with their Imbecilities in such an undertaking, nothing affronting them more than to rehearse their Voyage to England.

There being a small Current in Santee River caused us to make Small Way from our Oars. With hard rowing we got that Night to Mons. Eugee's House, which stands about fifteen Miles up the River, being the first Christian Settlement we met withal in the Settlement, and were very courteously receiv'd by him and his wife.

Many of the French follow a trade with the Indians, living very conveniently for that interest. There is about seventy Families seated on this River, who live as Decently and Happily, as any Planters in these Southward parts of America. The French being a temperate Industrious People, some of them bringing very little of Effects, yet by their endeavors and Mutual Assistance amongst themselves (which is highly to be Commended) have outstript our English, who brought with them larger Fortunes, tho' as it seems less endeavour to manage their Talent to the best Advantage. 'Tis admirable to see what time and Industry will (with God's Blessing) effect. Carolina affording many strange Revolutions in the Age of a Man, Daily Instances presenting themselves to our view, of so many, from Despicable beginnings, which in a short time arrive to very splendid Conditions. Here propriety hath a large Scope, there being no strict law to bind our privileges. A Quest after Game, being as freely and peremptorily enjoyed by the meanest Planter, as he that is in the Highest Dignity, or wealthiest in the Province. Deer and other game that are naturally wild, being not immur'd or preserv'd within boundaries to satisfy the appetite of

the rich alone. A poor laborer, that is Master of his Gun, etc., hath as good a claim to have continu'd Coarses of Delicacies crouded upon his Table, as he that is Master of a Greater Purse.

We lay all that night at Mons. Eugee's, and the next Morning set out farther, to go the remainder of our voyage by land; at ten a Clock we pas'd over a narrow, deep Swamp, having left the three Indian Men and one Woman, that had piloted the Canoe from Ashly River, having hired a Sewee Indian, a tall, lusty Fellow, who carried a pack of our cloaths, of great weight; notwithstanding his burden, we had much to do to keep pace with him. At noon we came up with several French Plantations, meeting with several creeks by the way, the French were very officious in assisting with their small Dories to pass over these waters, (whom we met coming from their church) being all of them very clean and decent in their apparel; their Houses and Plantations suitable in neatness and Contrivance. They are all of the same opinion with the church of Geneva, there being no difference amongst them concerning the Punctilio's of their Christian Faith; which Union hath propagated a happy and delightful Concord in all other matters throughout the whole Neighborhood; living amongst themselves as one Tribe or Kindred, everyone making it his business to be assistant to the wants of his country-man, preserving his estate and reputation with the same exactness and concern as he does his own; all seeming to share in the Misfortunes, and joyce at the Advance, and Rise, of their Brethren.

Towards the afternoon we came to Mons. L'Jandro, where we got our Dinner; there coming some French ladies whilst we were there, who were lately come from England, and Mons. L'Grand, a worthy Norman, who hath



been a great Sufferer in his Estate, by the Persecution in France, against those of the Protestant Religion; This Gentleman very kindly invited us to make our stay with him all night, but we, being intended farther that day, took our Leaves, returning Acknowledgement of Their Favors.

About four in the afternoon we passed over a large Ciprus run, in a small Canoe; the French Doctor sent his Negro to Guide us over the head of a large Swamp; so we got that night to Mons. Gallian's the elder, who lives in a very curious contriv'd House, built of Brick and Stone which is gotten near that Place. Near here comes in the Road from Charles-Town and the rest of the English Settlement, it being a very good way by Land, and not above 36 miles altho' more than 100 by water; I think the most difficult way I ever Saw, occasion'd by Reason of the multitude of Creeks lying along the Main, keeping their course thro' the Marshes, turning and winding like a Labyrinth, having the Tide of Ebb and Flood twenty times in less than 3 Leagues going.

The next Morning very early, we ferry'd over a Creek that runs near the House, and, after an Hour's travel in the Woods, we came to the River-side, where we stayed for the Indian who was our Guide, and was gone around by water in a small canoe, to meet us at the place we rested at. He came after a small Time and ferrv'd us in that little Vessel over the Santee River 4 miles, and 84 miles in the woods, which the overflowing of freshes which then came down, had made a perfect sea of, there running an incredible current in the River, which had cast our small craft, and us away, had we not had this Sewee Indian Guide with us; who are excellent artists in managing these small canoes.

Santee River at this time (from the

usual depth of water) was risen perpendicular 36 Foot, always making a Breach from her banks, about this season of the year; the general opinion of the cause thereof is supposed to proceed from the overflowing of the fresh-water lakes that lie near the Head of this River and other upon the same continent. But my opinion is that these vast Inundations proceed from the great and repeated quantities of snow that fall upon the Mountains which Lie at so Great a distance from the sea, therefore they have no help of being dissolv'd by those saline piercing particles, as other adjacent Parts near the Ocean receive; and therefore lies and increases to a vast Bulk, until some mild southerly Breezes coming on a sudden, continue to unlock these frozen bodies, congeal'd by the North-West wind, dissipating them in liquids, and coming down with Impetuosity, fills those branches that feed these rivers, and causes this strange deluge which oft-times lays under water the adjacent parts on both sides this current, for several miles distant from her banks, tho' the French and Indians affirm'd to me, they never knew such an extraordinary Flood there before.

The following is a continuation of the History of North Carolina by John Lawson, surveyor general of this State, who made his first visit here in 1700. He landed at Charleston, S. C., and traveled nearly a month. This installment begins after his reaching the Santee river, in South Carolina:

We all, by God's Blessing, and the Endeavors of our Indian-Pilot, passed safe over the River, but was lost in the Woods, which seem'd like some Great Lake, except here and there a Knoll of High Land, which appear'd above the Water.

We intend for Mon. Gillian's junt, but was Lost, none of us knowing the Way at that time, altho' the Indian was born

in that Country, it having received so strange a Metamorphosis. We were in several Opinions concerning the right Way, the Indian and myself, supposed the House to bear one Way, the rest thought to the contrary; we differing, it was agreed on amongst us, that one-half should go with the Indian to find the House, and the other party to stay upon one of these dry Spots, until some of them returned to us, and informed us where it lay.

Myself and two more were left behind, by Reason the Canoe would not carry us all; we had but one gun amongst us, one Load of ammunition, and no provision. Had our Men in the Canoe miscarried, we must (in all Probability) there perish'd.

In about six Hours Time from our Mens departure, the Indian came back to us in the same Canoe he went in, being half Drunk, which assured us they had found some place of refreshment. He took us three into the Canoe, telling us all was Well; Paddling our Vessel several Miles through the Woods, being often half full of Water; but at last we got Safe to the place we sought for, which proved to lie the same Way the Indian and I had guess'd it did.

When we got to the House, we found our Comrades in the same trim the Indian was in, and several of the French inhabitants with them, who treated us very courteously, wondering at us undertaking such a voyage, thro' a Country inhabited by none but savages, and them of so different Nations and Tongues.

After we had refreshed ourselves, we parted from a very Kind, loving, affable People, who wished us a Safe and Prosperous voyage.

Hearing of a Camp of Santee Indians not far off, we set out intending to take up our Quarters with them that night. There being a deep run of Water in the

Way, one of our Comrades being Top-Heavy, and there being nothing but a small pole over a Creek for a bridge, fell into the Water up to the Chin, myself laughing at the accident, and not taking Good Heed to my steps came to the same Misfortune. All our bedding was wet. The Wind being at N. W. it froze very hard, which prepared such a night's lodging for me that I never desire to have the like again; the wet bedding and freezing Air had so Qualified our Bodies, that in the Morning when we Awaked, we were nigh Frozen to Death, until we had recruited ourselves before a large fire of the Indians.

Tuesday Morning we set towards the Congerees, leaving the Indian Guide Scipio drunk amongst the Santee Indians. We went ten Miles out of our way to head a great Swamp, the freshes having filled them with such great quantities of Water, that the usual paths were render'd unpassable. We met in our way with an Indian Hut, where we were entertained with a Fat Boiled Goose, Venison, Raccoon and ground Nuts. We made but little stay. About noon we passed by several large Savannah's, wherein is curious ranges for Cattle, being green all the year; they were plentifully stor'd with Geese, Cranes, etc., and the adjacent woods with great Flocks of Turkeys. This Day we traveled about 30 miles, and lay all night at a House which was built for the Indian Trade the Master thereof we had parted with at the French town, who gave us leave to make use of his Mansion. Such Houses are common in these parts, especially where there is Indian Towns, and Plantations near at Hand, which this place is well furnished withal.

These Santee Indians are a well-humored and affable people and living near the English are become very tractable. They make themselves

Cribs after a very curious manner, wherein they secure their corn from Vermin, which are more frequent in these warm climates, than countries more Distant from the Sun. These pretty Fabricks are commonly supported with eight Feet or Posts, about Seven Foot High from the Ground, well daubed within and without upon Laths, with Loom or Clay, which makes them tight and fit to keep out the smallest insect, there being a small door at the gable end, which is made of the same composition and to be remov'd at Pleasure, being no bigger, than that a slender Man may creep in at, cementing the door up with the same earth when they take the Corn out of the Crib, and are going from Home, always find their Granaries in the same Posture they left them; theft to each other being altogether unpractised, never receiving Spoils but from Foreigners.

Hereabouts the ground is something higher than about Charlestown, there being found some Quarries of Brown free-stone, which I have seen made use of for buildings, and hath proved very durable and good. The earth here is mixed with white Gravel, which is rare, there being nothing like a Stone to be found, of the natural Produce, near the Ashly river.

The next day about noon, we came to the side of a great swamp, where we were forced to strip ourselves to get over it, which with much difficulty we effected. Hereabouts the late Gust of Wind, which happen'd in September last, had torn the large Cyprus trees and Timbers up by the roots; they lying confusedly in their branches, did Block up the Way, making the passage very difficult.

This night we got to one Scipio's Hut, a famous Hunter; There was nobody at Home, but we having (in our Company) one that used to trade amongst them, we made ourselves welcome to

what his Cabin afforded, (which is a thing common) the Indians allowing it practicable to the English Traders, to take out of their Houses what they need, during their Absence, in Lieu whereof they most commonly leave some small quantity of Tobacco, Paint, Beads, etc. We found a great store of Indian peas, (a very good Pulse) Beans, Oyl, Chinkapin Nuts, Corn, barbacu'd Peaches, and Peach-Bread; which Peaches being made into a Quiddony, and so make up into Loaves like Barley Cakes; these cut into thin slices and dissolved in water, makes a very grateful Acid, and extraordinarily beneficial in Fevers, as has often been tried and approved of by our English Practitioners. The Wind being at N. W., with cold weather, made us a large Fire, in the Indian's Cabin; being very intent upon our Cookery, we set the dwelling on Fire, and with much ado, put it out, tho' with the Loss of Part of the Roof.

The next day, we travell'd on our Way, and about Noon, came up with a settlement of Santee Indians, there being Plantations lying scattering here and there, for a great many miles. They came out to meet us, being acquainted with one of our Company, and made us very welcome with fat barbacu'd Venison, which the Woman of the Cabin took and tore in Pieces with her teeth, so put it into a mortar, beating it to Rags, afterwards stews it with Water, and other Ingredients, which makes a very savoury Dish.

At these Cabins came to visit us the King of the Santee Nation. He brought with him their chief Doctor, or Physician, who was warmly and neatly clad with a Match-Coat, made of Turkies Feathers, which makes a pretty Shew, seeming as if it was a Garment of the deepest silk shag. These Indians have great skill in their medical matters, this doctor perfected his cures, by prop-



er Vegetables, etc., of which they have plenty, and are well acquainted with their specifick virtue. I have seen such admirable Cures, performed by these Savages, which would puzzle a great many graduate practitioners, to trace their Steps in healing, with the same expedition, Ease, and Success; using no racking instruments in their Chirurgery, nor nice Rules of Diet, and Physick, to certify the saying "Qui medici vivit, miserere vivit." In wounds which penetrate deep, and seem Mortal they order a spare Diet, with drinking Fountain Water. The Indians are an easy, credulous People, and most notoriously cheated by their priests and conjurers, both Trades meeting ever in one Person, and most commonly a spice of Quackship, added to the other two ingredients, which renders that cunning Knave the Imposter to be more rely'd upon; thence a fitter instrument to cheat these ignorant people. The priest and Conjurers being never admitted to their practise 'till years and the experience of repeated Services hath wrought their Esteem amongst the Nations they belong to.

The Santee King who was in company with this No-nosed Doctor, is the most absolute Indian Ruler in these Parts, altho' he is head but of a Small People, in respect to some other Nations of Indians, that I have seen. He can put any of these people to death that hath committed any fault, which he judges worthy of so great a Punishment. This authority is rarely found amongst these Savages, for they act not (commonly) by a determinative Voice in their Laws, towards any one that hath committed murder, or such other great crime, but take this method; him to who the injury was done, or if Dead, the nearest of his kindred, prosecutes by Way of an actual Revenge, being himself if opportunity serves his intent, both Judge and Exe-

cutioner, performing so much mischief on his offender, or his nearest Relation until such time that he is fully satisfy'd; Yet this revenge is not so infallible, but it may be bought off with Beads, Tobacco, and such like Commodities that are useful amongst them, though it were the most sable Villany that could be acted by Mankind.

Some that attended the King presented me with an odoriferous, balsamick Root, of a fragrant smell, and Taste, the name I know not; they Chew it in the Mouth, and by that simple Application, heal desperate Wounds, both green and old, that small quantity I had was given inwardly to those troubled with the belly-ach, which remedy failed not to give present Help, the Pain leaving the Patient soon after taking the Root.

Near to these Cabins are several Tombs made after the fashion of the Indians; the largest and chiefest of them was the Sepulchre of the late Indian King of the Santees, a Man of Great Power, not only amongst his own subjects, but dreaded by the Neighboring Nations for his great Valour and Conduct, having as large a Prerogative in his Way of Ruling, as the Present King I now spoke of.

The manner of their Interment is thus: A Mole or Pyramid of Earth is raised, the Mole thereof being worked very smooth and even, sometimes higher or lower, according to the dignity of the Person whose Monument it is. On the Top there is an Umbrella, made Ridge-Ways, like the roof of an House; this is supported by nine Stakes or small Posts, the grave being about 6 to 8 foot in Length, and Four Foot in Breadth; about it is hung Gourds, Feathers, and other suchlike Trophies, placed there by the dead man's relations, in Respect to him in the Grave. The other part of the Funeral Rites are thus; As soon as the party is dead, they

lay the corpse on a piece of bark in the Sun, seasoning or embalming it with a small root beaten to powder, which looks as red as Vermillion; the same is mixed with Bear's Oil to beautify the Hair, and to preserve their heads from being lousy, it growing beautifully in these parts of America. After the Carcass has laid a day or two in the Sun, they remove it and lay it upon Crotches cut on purpose for the support thereof from the Earth; Then they anoint it all over with the fore-mentioned ingredients of the powder of this root and Bear's Oil. When it is so done, they cover it over very exactly with bark of the Pine or Cyprus Tree, to prevent any Rain to fall upon it, sweeping the ground very clean all about it. Some of his nearest Kin brings all the temporal Estate he was possess'd of at his death, as Guns, Bows, Arrows, Beads, Feathers, Match-Coat, etc. This relation is the chief mourner, being clad in moss, and a stick in his hand, keeping a mournful ditty for three or four days, his face being black with the Smoke of Pitch Pine mingled with Bear's Oil. All the while he tells the dead Man's relations, and the rest of the spectators who that Dead Person was, and of the Great Feats performed in his lifetime; all of what he speaks, tending to the praise of the defunct. As soon as the flesh grows mellow, and will cleave from the bone, they get it off, and burn it, making all the bones very clean, then anoint them with the ingredients aforesaid, wrapping up the Skull (very carefully) in a cloth artificially woven of Possum's Hair. (These Indians make Girdles, Sashes, Garters, etc., after the same manner) The bones they very carefully preserve in a wooden box, every year oiling and cleansing them; by this means preserve them for many ages, that you may see an Indian in possession of the bones of his grandfa-

ther, or some of his relations of a larger Antiquity. They have other sorts of Tombs, as where an Indian is slain, in that place they make a heap of stones, (or sticks where stones are not to be found) to this memorial every Indian that passes by adds a stone to augment the heap, in respect to the deceased hero.

We had a very large Swamp to pass over near the House, and would have hir'd our Landlord to be our guide, but he seem'd unwilling, and so we press'd him no farther about it. He was the tallest Indian I ever saw, being seven foot high, and a very straight compleat person, esteem'd on by the King for his Great Art in Hunting, always carrying with him an artificial Head to hunt withal; they are made of the Head of a Buck, the back part of the Horns being scraped and hollow, for lightness of carriage. The skin is left to the setting of the shoulders, which is lined all around with small hoops, and flat sort of lathes, to hold it open for the arm to go in. They have a way to preserve the eyes as if Living. The Hunter Puts on a Match-Coat made of Skin, with the Hair on, and a piece of the white part of the Deer's skin, that grows on the Breast, which is fasten'd to the neck end of this stalking head, so hangs down. In these Habiliments an Indian will go as near a Deer as he pleases, the exact motion and Behavior of a Deer being so well counterfeited by 'em, that several times it hath been known for two hunters to come up with a stalking head together and unknown to each other, so that they have killed an Indian instead of a Deer, which hath happened sometimes to be a Brother or some Dear Friend; for which reason they allow not of that sort of practise, where the nation is Populous.

Within half a Mile of the House we passed over a prodigious wide and deep

swamp, being forced to strip stark-Naked, and much ado to save ourselves from drowning in this Fatigue. We, with much ado, got thro; going that day about five miles farther, and came to three more Indian Cabins, called in the Indian tongue, Hickerau, by the English Traders, The Black House, being pleasantly seated on a high bank, by a Branch of Santee River. One of our Company, that had traded amongst these Indans told us, that in one of the Cabins was his Father-in-law, he called him so, by reason that the old man had given him a young Indian girl, that was his daughter, to lie with him, make bread, and be necessary in what she was capable to assist him in, during his abode amongst them.

When we came thither first, there was nobody at Home, so the son made bold to search his father's granary for Corn, and other Provisions. He brought us some Indian maiz and peas, which are of a reddish color, and eat well, yet color the liquor they are boiling in, as if it were a Lixivium of red tartar. After we had been about an hour in the House, where was millions of flees, the Indian Cabins being often fuller of such vermin, than any Dog-Kennel, the old Man came to us, and seem'd very glad to see his Son-in-Law.

This Indian is a great Conjurer, as it appears by the Sequel, The Seretee or Santee Indians were gone to War against the Hooks and Backbooks Nations, living near the mouth of Win-yau River. Those that were left at Home (which are commonly old people and children, had heard no news for a long time of their men at War. This man at the entreaty of these People, (being held to be a great Sorcerer among them) went to know what posture their fighting men were in. His exorcism was carried on thus; He dress'd himself in a clean white dress'd

deer Skin; a Great Fire being made in the middle of the Plantation, the Indians sitting all around it. The conjurer was blindfolded then he surrounded the Fire several Times, I think thrice; leaving the Company he went into the Woods, where he stayed about half an Hour, returning to them, surrounded the Fire as before, leaving them, went the second Time into the Woods, at which time there came a huge Swarm of Flies, very large, they flying all around the fire several Times, and at last fell into it, and were visibly consumed. Immediately after the Indian Conjurer made a huge Lilluloo, and howling very frightfully, presently an Indian went and caught hold of him, leading him to the Fire. The old Wizard was so feeble and weak, being not able to stand alone, and all over in a sweat, and as wet as if he had fallen into the River. After a while he recovered his strength, assuring them that their men were near a river, and could not pass over it until so many days, but would in such a Time, all return in safety to their Nation. All which proved true at the Indians Return which was not long after. This Story the Englishman, his Son-in-Law, affirmed to me.

The old Man stayed with us about two hours, and told us we were welcome to stay there all Night, and take what his cabin afforded; then leaving us went into the woods to some Hunting Quarter not far away.

The next morning we pursued our Voyage, finding the land to improve itself in pleasantness and richness of soil. When we had gone about 10 Miles one of our Companions tir'd, being not able to travel any farther so we went forward, leaving the poor dejected traveller with Tears in his Eyes to return to Charles-Town, and travel back again over so much bad way, we having pass'd thro' the worst of our



journey, the land here being very high and dry, very few Swamps, and those dry, and a little way through. We travell'd about twenty Miles, leading near a Savannah that was overflown with water; where we were very short of victuals, but finding the woods nearly burnt, and on fire in many places, which gave us great hopes that Indians were not far off.

Next morning very early we waded through the Savannah, the Path lying there and about 10 o'clock came to a Hunting Quarter of a great many Santees; they made us all welcome, showing a great deal of joy at our coming, giving us barbecu'd Turkey, Bear's Oil and Venison.

Here we hired Santee Jack, (a good Hunter and well-humored fellow) to be our pilot to the Congress Indians; we gave him a Stroud-water. After two hours refreshment we went on, and got that day about twenty Miles; we lay by a small swift run of water, which was pay'd at the bottom with a sort of stone much like Tripoli, and so light that I fancied it would precipitate in no Stream, but where it naturally grew. The weather was very cold, the winds holding Northerly. We made ourselves as merry as we could, having a good supper with the scraps of the Venison we had given us by the Indians, having killed three Teal and a Possum; which Medly all together made a curious Ragoo.

This day all of us had a mind to have rested, but the Indian was much against it, alledging that the place we lay in was not good to hunt in, telling us if we would go on, by Noon he would bring us to a more convenient place; so we moved on, and about twelve a clock we came to the most amazing prospect I have ever seen in Carolina; we traveled by a Swamp side, which swamp I believe to be no less than 20 miles over, the other side being as far

as I could well discern, there appearing great riges of Mountains, bearing from us W. N. W. One Alp with a Top like a sugar loaf, advanced its head above all the rest very considerably; the day was very serene, which gave us the advantage of seeing a long way; These Mountains were clothed all over with Trees, which seemed to us to be very large Timbers.

At the sight of this fair Prospect we stayed all night; our Indian going about half an hour before us, had provided three fat turkies ere we got up to him.

The Swamp I now spoke of is not a miry Bog, as others generally are, but you go down to it through a steep Bank, at the foot of which begins this Valley, where you may go dry for perhaps 200 yards, then you meet with a small Brook or Run of Water, about 2 or 3 foot deep, then dry Land for such another space, so another Brook, thus continuing. The land of this Percoarson, or Valley, being extraordinarily rich, and runs of water well stored with Fowl. It is the Head of one of the branches of Santee River; but a further discovery time would not permit; only one thing is very remarkable; there growing all over this Swamp a tall lofty Bay Tree, but is not the same as in England. These being in their verdure all the winter long; which appears here when you stand on the ridge, (where our path lay) as if it were one pleasant, green field, and as even as a Bowling-green to the Eye of the Beholder; being hemmed in on one side with these Ledges of vast High Mountains.

Viewing the land here we found an extraordinary rich, black Mould, and some of a copper color, both sorts very good; the land in some places is much burthened with Iron, Stone, here being a great store of it seemingly very good; The eviling Springs, which are many in

these parts, issuing out of the Rocks, which water we drank of, it colouring the Excrements of Travellers, (by its chalybid Quality) as black as a coal. When we were all asleep in the beginning of the night, we were awakened with the Dismalest and Most hideous Noise that ever pierc'd my ears; This sudden surprize incipacitated us of guessing what this threatening noise might proceed from; but our Indian Pilot (who knew these parts very well), acquainted us, that it was customary to hear such Musick along the Swamp-side, there being endless numbers of panthers, tygers, Wolves, and other Beasts of Prey, which take the Swamp for their abode during the Day, coming in whole droves to hunt the Deer during the Night, making this frightful Ditty 'till days appears, then all is still as in other places.

The next day it proved a small drizzly Rain which is rare; there happening not the tenth part of Foggy Weather towards these Mountains, as visits those parts near the Sea-board. The Indian killed 15 Turkies this day, there coming out of the Swamp about Sunrising flocks of these Fowl; containing several hundred in a gang, who feed upon the Acrons it being most Oak that grow in these Woods. There are but very few Pines in those Quarters.

Early the next morning we set forward for the Congeree Indians, parting with that delicious prospect. By the way, our guide killed more Turkies, and two Polcats, which he eat, esteeming them before fat Turkies. Some of the Turkies which we eat while we stayed there, I believe weighed no less than 40 pounds.

The Land we passed over this day was most of it good, and the worst passable. At night we killed a possum, being cloy'd with Turkies, made a dish of that, which tasted much between

young pork and veal, their Fat being as white as any I ever saw.

Our Indian having this day killed good store of provisions with his gun, he always shot with a single Ball, missing but two shoots in above forty; they being curious artists in managing a gun, to make it carry either ball or shot true. When they have bought a piece and find it to shoot any ways crooked, they take the barrel out of the Stock, cutting a notch in a Tree, wherein they set it streight, sometimes shooting away above 100 Loads of ammunition, before they bring the Gun to shoot according to their Mind. We took up our Quarters by a Fish Pond Side; the pits in the Woods stand full of Water, naturally breed Fish in them. in great Quantities. We cooked our Supper, but having neither Bread, or Salt, our Fat Turkies began to be loathsome to us, altho' we were never wanting of a good appetite, yet a Continuance of one Diet made us wearv.

The next morning Santee Jack told us, we should reach the Indian Settlement betimes that Day, about noon we passed by several fair Savannas, very rich and dry; seeing great copses of many Acres that bore nothing but Bushes about the Bigness of Box-trees; which (in the season) afford great quantities of small Blackberries, very pleasant Fruit and very much like our Blues or Huckleberries, that grow on Heaths in England. Hard by the Savannahs we found the Town, where we halted; there was not above one man left with the Women; the rest being gone a hunting for a Feast. The Women were very busily engaged in Gaming; the Name or Grounds of it I could not learn, though I looked on above two hours. Their Arithmetick was kept with a heap of Indian Grain. When their Play was ended the King, or Caffetta's Wife, invited us into her Cabin. The Indian Kings always entertaining Trav-

ellers, either English or Indians; taking it as a great Affront if they pass'd by their Cabins, and take up their Quarters at any other Indian's House; The Queen set Victuals before us, which good compliment they use generally as soon as you come under their roof.

The Town consists not of above a dozen Houses, they having other stragling Plantations up and down the Country, and are seated upon a small Branch of Santee River. Their Place hath curious dry Savannas and Marshes adjoining to it, and would prove an exceedingly thriving Range for Cattle, and Hogs, provided the English were seated thereon. Besides the Land is good for Plantations.

These Indians are a small people, having lost much of their former Numbers, by intestine Broils; but most by the Small-Pox which hath often visited them, sweeping away whole towns; occasioned by the immoderate Government of themselves in their Sickness; as I have mentioned before, treating of the Sewees. Neither do I know any Savages that have traded with the English, but have been great losers by this Distemper.

We found here good store of Chinkapin Nuts which they gather in Winter great Quantities of, drying them; so keep these Nuts in great Baskets for their use; likewise Hickerie Nuts, which they beat betwix two great stones, then sift them to thicken their Venison with; the small shell precipitating to the bottom of the Pot, whilst the Kernel in Form of flower, mixes with the Liquor. Both these Nuts made into Meal make a curious Soup, either with Clear Water, or in any Meat Broth.

From the Nation of Indians until such Time as you come to the Tuskeiruros in North Carolina, you will see no long Moss upon the trees, which space of ground contains above 500 Miles. This seeming miracle in Nature,

is occasioned by the Highness of the Land, it being Dry and Healthful; for though this Moss bears a Seed in a sort of a small Cod, yet it is generated in or near low swampy Grounds.

The Congerees are kind and affable to the English, the Queen being very kind, giving us what Rarities her Cabin afforded, as Loblolly made of Indian Corn and Dry'd Peaches. These Congerees have abundance of Storks and Cranes in their Savannas. They take them before they can fly, and breed them as tame and familiar as a Dunchill Fowl. They had a tame Crane at one of these Cabins, that was scarce less than six foot in height, his head being round, with a shining natural Crimson Hue, which they all have. These are a very Comely sort of Indians, there being a strange Difference in the Proportion and Beauty of these Heathens. Altho' their Tribes or Nations border one upon another, yet you may discern as great an Alteration in their features and Dispositions, as you can in their speech, which generally proves quite different from each other, tho' their Nations be not above twenty Miles in Distance. The Women here being as handsome as most I have met withal, being several fine figured Brounetto's amongst them. These ladies stick not upon hand long, for they marry when very young, as at 12 or 14 years of age. The English Traders are seldom without an Indian Female for his bedfellow, alleging these reasons as sufficient to allow of such familiarity. First, they being remote from any White People, that it preserves their friendship with the Heathens, they esteeming a white man's Child much above one of their own getting, the Indian Mistress ever securing her White friend provisions whilst he stays amongst them, and lastly the correspondence makes them learn the Indian tongue sooner, they being of the



Frenchmen's opinion, how that an English Wife teaches her Husband more English in one night, than a School-master can in a week.

We saw at the Casseta's Cabin the Strangest Spectacle of Antiquity I ever knew, it being an old Indian Spuah, that, had I been to have guess'd at her age by her aspect, old Parr's Head (the Welch Methusalem) was a face in Swadling-Clouts to hers. Her Skin hung in Reaves like a Rag of Tripe. By a fair Computation, one would might have justly thought it would have contained three such Carcasses as hers was then. She had one of her hands contracted by some accident in the Fire, they sleeping always by it, and often fall into sad disasters, especially in their Drunken Moods. I made the strictest Inquiry that was possible, and by what I could gather, she was considerably above 100 years old, notwithstanding she smok'd Tobacco, and eat her Victuals, to all Appearance as heartily as one of 18. One of our Company spoke some of their Language, and having not forgotten his former Intrigues with the Indian Lassies, would fain have dealing with some of the young Female Fry; but they refused him, he having nothing that these Girls Esteemed. At night we were laid in the Queen's Cabin, where the Queen and the old Squah pig'd in with us, the former was very much disfigured with Tettars, and very reserv'd, which disappointed our fellow Traveller in his Intrigues.

The Women smoak much Tobacco, (as most Indians do.) They have pipes whose heads are cut out of stone, and will hold an ounce of Tobacco and some much Less. They have large wooden Spoons as big as small Ladles, which they make little use of, lading the Meat out of the Bowls with their Fingers.

In the Morning we rose before Day,

having hired a Guide over night to conduct us on our Way; but it was too soon for him to stir out, the Indians never setting forward until the Sun is an Hour or two high, and hath exhall'd the Dew from the earth. The Queen got us a good Breakfast before we left her; she had a young Child, which was much afflicted with the Cholick; for which Distemper she infused a root in Water, which was held in a Goard, this she took into her mouth, and spurted it into the Infant's, which gave it ease. After we had eaten we set out (with our new Guide) for the Wateree Indians. We went over a good deal of indifferent Land this Day. Here begins to appear very good Marble, which continues more and less for the space of 500 miles. We lay all night by a run of Water, as we always do, (if possible) for the Convenience of it. The Weather was very cold. We went this day about 30 Miles from the Congerees.

In the Morning we made no stay to get our Breakfast, but hastened on our voyage, the Land increasing in Marble and Richness of Soil. At noon we halted getting our Dinner upon a marble stone, that rose it self half a foot above the Surface of the Earth, and might contain the Compass of a quarter of an Acre of land, being very even, there growing upon it in some places a small red Berry like a Salmon Spawn, there boiling out of the Main Rock curious Springs of as Delicious Water, as ever I drank in any Parts I ever travel'd in.

These parts likewise affords good free Stone, fit for Building, and of several sorts. The land here is pleasantly seated, with pretty little Hills and Valleys, the rising Sun at once shewing his glorious reflecting Rays on a great Many of these little Mountains. We went this day about 20 miles, our Guide walking like a Horse, till we had saddled him with a good heavy Pack

of some Part of our Cloaths and Bedding; by which means we kept Pace with him.

This Night we lay by a Run-side, where I found a fine yellow earth, the same with Brussels-Sand, which Goldsmiths used to cast withal; giving a good price in England and other parts. Here is likewise the true Blood Stone and considerable Quantities of Fullers-Earth, which I took a Proof of, by scouring great Spots out of Woollen, and it prov'd very good.

As we were on our road this morning our Indian shot at a Tyger that crossed the Way, he being a great distance from us. I believe he did him no Harm, because he sat on his Breech afterwards and look'd upon us. I suppose he expected to have had a Spaniel Bitch that I had with me, for his breakfast, who run towards him, but in the Midway stopped her career, and came sneaking back to us with her Tail betwix her Legs.

We saw in the Path a great many trees blown up by the Roots, at the bottom whereof stuck great Quantities of fine red Bole; I believe nothing inferior to that of Venice or Lemma. We found some holes in the earth which were full of a water as black as ink. I thought that Tincture might proceed from some Mineral, but had not time to make a farther discovery. About noon we passed over a pleasant stony Brook, whose water was of a Bluish Cast, as it is for several hundreds of Miles towards the Heads of the Rivers, I suppose occasioned by the vast Quantities of Marble lying in the bowels of the Earth. The Springs that feed these rivulets lick up some portions of the stones in the Brooks, which Dissolution gives this Tincture, as it appears in all or most of the Rivers, and Brooks of this Country, whose rapid streams are like those in Yorkshire, and other northern counties of England. The In-

dians talk of many sorts of Fish which they afford, but we had not time to discover their Species.

I saw here and there some Indian Plantations formerly, there being several pleasant Fields of cleared Ground and excellent soil, now well spread with fine-bladed grass, and Strawberry vines.

The Mould here is excessive rich, and a Country very pleasant to the Eye, had it the convenience of a navigable river as all new colonies (of Necessity) require it would make a delightful settlement.

We went eight miles further and came to the Weteree Chickanee Indians. The Land holds good, there being not a Spot of bad Land to be seen in Several Days gone.

The People of this Nation are Likely tall Persons, and great Pilferers, stealing from us anything they could lay their hands on, though very respectful in giving us what Victuals we wanted. We lay in their Cabins all Night, being Dark, Smoky Holes, as ever I saw any Indian Dwellings. This Nation is much more Populous than the Congerees, their Neighbors, yet understand not one another's speech. They are very poor in English effects, several of them having no guns, making use of Bows and Arrows, being a lazy, idle People, a Quality incident to most Indians, but none to that degree as these, as I never met withal.

Their Country is wholly free from Swamps and Quagmires, being high dry land, and consequently healthful, producing large cornstalks and fair Grain.

Next Morning we took off our Beards with a razor, the Indians looking on with much admiration. They told us they had never seen the like before, and that our Knives cut far better than those that came amongst the Indians. They would fain have borrowed our Razors, as they had our knives, scis-

sors, and tobacco Tongs, the Day before, being as ingenious at picking of Pockets as any, I believe the World affords; for they will steal with their feet. Yesterday one of our Company walking not so fast as the rest was left behind. He being out of sight before we miss'd him, and not being up to us, though we stayed a considerable time on the road for him, we stuck up Sticks in the Ground and left other Tokens to direct him which way we were gone. But he came not to us that night, which gave us occasion to believe some of the Heathens had killed him, for his Cloathes, or the Savage Beasts had devoured him in the Wilderness, he having nothing about him to strike fire withal. As we were debating which way we should send to find him, he overtook us, having a Waxsaw Indian for his Guide. He told us he had missed the Path, and got to another Nation of Indians, but 3 Miles off, who at that Time held great Feasting. They had entertained him very respectfully, and sent the Indian with him to invite us amongst them, wondering that we would not take up our Quarters with them, but make our Abode with such a Poor Sort of Indians, that were not capable of entertaining us according to our deserts; We received the Messenger with a great many Ceremonies, acceptable to those sort of Creatures. Bidding our Waterree King adieu, we set forth towards the Waxsaws, going along clear'd ground all the Way. Upon our arrival, we were led into a very large and lightsome Cabin, the like I have not met withal. They laid Furs and Deer Skins upon cain benches for us to sit or lie upon, bringing immediately stewed peaches and green Corn, that is preserved in their cabins before it is ripe, and soddened and boiled when they use it, which is a pretty sort of Food, and a great Increaser of the Blood.

These Indians are of an extraordinary Stature, and call'd by their Neighbors Flat Heads, which seems a very suitable Name for them. In their infancy, their nurses lay the Back-part of their Children's Heads on a Bag of Sand, (such as engravers use to rest their plates upon.) They use a roll, which is placed upon the babe's Forehead, it being laid with its back on a flat Board, and swaddled hard down thereon, from one End of this Engine, to the other. This Method makes the child's Body and limbs as straight as an Arrow. There being there some young Indians that are perhaps crookedly inclin'd, at their first coming into the World, who are made perfectly straight by this Method. I never saw an Indian of a mature age, that was anyways crooked, except by accident and that way seldom; for they cure and prevent deformities of the limbs and Body, very exactly. The Instrument I spoke of before, being a sort of a Press, that is let out and in more or less, according to the discretion of the Nurse, in which they make the Child's Head flat, it makes the Eyes stand a prodigious Way asunder, the Hair hangs over the Forehead like the eaves of a House, which seems very frightful; They being ask'd the reason why they practis'd this Method, reply'd the Indian's sight was much strengthened and quicker thereby to discern the Game in hunting at larger Distance, and so never miss'd of becoming expert Hunters, the perfection of which they all aim at, as we do to become experienced Soldiers, learned school-Men, or Artists in Mechanicks; He that is a good Hunter never misses of being a Favourite amongst the Women; the prettiest Girls being always bestow'd upon the chiefest Sports-Men, and those of a grosser Mould, upon the useless Lubbers. Thus they have a graduation amongst them as well as other Nations. As for the



solemnity of marriages amongst them, kept with so much ceremony as divers Authors affirm, it never appear'd amongst those many Nations I have been withal, any wise than in this manner. I have seen several Couples among them, that have been so reserv'd, as to live together for many Years, faithful to each other.

At our Waxsaw Landlord's Cabin, was a Woman employed in no other Business than Cookery; it being a House of great Resort. The fire was surrounded with Roast Meat, or Barbakues, and the Pots continually boiling full of Meat, from Morning until Night. This She-cook was the cleanest I have ever seen among the Heathens of America, washing her Hands before she undertook to do any Cookery; and repeated this useful Decency very often during a day. She made us as White-Bread as any English could have done, and was full as neat and expeditious, in her Affairs. It happened to be one of their great Fetes when we were there; the first day when we were there arrived an Ambassador from the King of Sapona, to treat with these Indians about some important affairs. He was painted with Vermillion all over his body, having a very large Cutlass stuck in his Girdle, and a Fusee in his Hand: At Night the Revels began where this foreign Indian was admitted; the King and War Captain inviting us to see their Masquerade. This Feast was held in commemoration of the Plentiful Harvest of Corn they had reaped the Summer before, with an united Supplication for the like plentiful produce for the Year ensuing. These revels were carried on in a House made for that purpose, it being done round, with white benches of fine Canes joining along the wall; and a place for the Door being left, which is so low, that a man must stoop very much to enter therein. This Edifice resembles a large Hay Rick; its

top being pyramidal, and much bigger than their other Dwellings, and at the Building whereof every one assists until it is finished. All their Dwelling houses are covered with Bark, but this differs very much; for it is very artificially thatched with Sedge and Rushes. As soon as it is finished they place some one of their Chiefest men to dwell therein, charging him with the Diligent preservation thereof, as the Prince commits the Charge of a Fort or Castle, to some subject he thinks worthy of that trust. In these state Houses is transacted all public and Private Business, relating to the affairs of the Government, as the Audience of Foreign Ambassadors from other Indian rulers, Consultation of Waging and Making War, Proposals of their Trade with Neighboring Indians, or the English who happen to come amongst them. In this Theater the most aged and wisest meet, determining what to Act, and what may be most convenient to omit, old Age being held in as a great Veneration amongst these Heathens, as amongst any People you may meet withal in any part of the World.

Whensoever an aged man is speaking, none ever interrupts him, (the contrary Practice the English and other Europeans, too much use) the Company yielding a great deal of Attention to his Tale, with a continued silence, and an exact Demeanour, during the Oration. Indeed, the Indians are a People that never interrupt one another in their Discourse, no man so much as offering to open his mouth, until the Speaker has utter'd his Intent. When an Englishman comes amongst them, perhaps every one is acquainted with him, yet, first the King bids him welcome, after him the War Captain, so on gradually from High to Low; not one of all these speaking to the White Guest, till his Superior has ended his Salutation. Amongst Women it seems impossible to

find a Scold; if they are prevoked or affronted by their Husbands or some other, they resent the Indignity offered them in silent Tears, or by refusing their Meat; Would some of our European Daughters of Thunder set these Indians for a pattern, there might be more quiet families found amongst them, occasion'd by that unruly member, the tongue.

Festination proceeds from the Devil (says a Learned Doctor) a Passion the Indians seem wholly free of; they determine no Business of Moment, without a great deal of Deliberation and Wariness. None of their Affairs appear to be attended with Impetuosity, or Haste, being more content with the common Accidents incident to Human Nature, as (losses, contrary Winds, bad Weather, and Poverty) than those of more civilized Countries.

Now, to return to our state House, whither we were entertained by the Grandees; as soon as we came into it, they placed our Englishmen near the King; it being my fortune to sit next to him, having his Great General or War Captain on my other hand. The House is as Dark as a Dungeon and as hot as one of the Dutch Stoves in Holland. They had made a circular Fire of split canes in the middle of the House; It was one Man's employment to add more split Reeds to this at one end as it consumed at the other, there being a small Vacancy left to supply it with Fuel. They brought in great store of Loblolly, and other Medleys, made of Indian Grain, stewed Peaches, Bear Venison, etc., every one bringing some offering to enlarge the banquet, according to his Degree and Quality. When all the Viands were brought in the first Figure began with kicking out the Dogs, which are seemingly Wolves, made tame with starving and beating, they being the worst Dog-Masters in the World, so that is an infallible cure

for sore eyes, ever to see an Indian Dog fat. They are of quite a contrary condition to Horses; some of these Kings have gotten by chance, a jade stolen by some neighboring Indian, and transported further into country and sold or bought sometimes of a Christian that trades amongst them. These creatures they continually cram and feed with maiz, and what the Horse will eat, till he is as fat as a Hog, never making any further use of him than to fetch a Dear Home that is killed somewhere near the Indian's plantation.

After the dogs had fled the room, the Company was summoned by beat of Drum; the Musick being made of dress'd deer's Skin, tied hot upon an earthen Porridge Pot. Presently came in five men dressed up in Feathers, their Faces being covered with Vizards made of Gourds, round their Ancles and Knees were hung bells of several sorts, having Wooden Falchions in their Hands (such as Stage Fencers commonly Use); in this dress they danced about an hour, shewing many strange gestures, and brandishing their Wooden Weapons, as if they were going to fight each other; often walking very nimbly around the room without making the least noise with their bells (a thing I much admired at) again turning their bodies, arms and legs into such frightful postures, that you would have guessed they were quite raving mad; At last they cut two or three high capers and left the room. In their stead came in a parcel of women and girls, to the number of Thirty odd, every one taking place according to her degree of stature, the tallest leading the dance, and the least of all being placed last; with these they made a circular Dance, like a ring, representing the Shape of the fire they danced about; Many of these had great Horse Belts about their legs, and small Hawks Bells about their necks. They had Mu-

sicians who were two Old Men, one of whom beat a Drum, while the other rattled with a Gourd, that had corn in it to make a noise withal; to these instruments they both sung a mournful ditty; the burthen of their song was In Remembrance of their former Greatness, and the Numbers of their Nation, the famous exploits of their renowned ancestors and all actions of moment that had (in former days) been performed by their forefathers. At these Festivals it is, that they give a traditional relation of what hath passed amongst them to the younger Fry: these verbal deliveries being always published in their most Publick assemblies serve instead of our traditional notes, by the use of letters. Some Indians that I have met withal have given me a curious description of the great Deluge, the Immortality of the Soul, with a Pithy account of the Reward of the good and wicked deeds in the Life to come; indeed a worthy foundation to build Christianity upon, were a true Method found out, and practis'd for the performance thereof.

Their way of Dancing is nothing but a sort of stamping motion much like the treading upon Founders Bellows. Their Female Gang held their dance for above six Hours, being all of them like a White Lather of a running Horse that has just come in from his race. My Landlady was the ring leader of the Amazons, who, when in her own House, behaved herself very discreetly and warily, in her domestic affairs, yet custom had so infatuated her, as to almost break her heart with dancing amongst such a confused Rabble. During this Dancing the spectators do not neglect their Business, in working the loblolly Pots, and other meat that was brought thither; more or less of them being continually eating, whilst the others were dancing.

Next we shall treat of the land here

abouts, which is a Marl as red as blood, and will lather like soap. The town stands on this Land, which holds considerably farther in the country, and is in my Opinion, so durable that no labour of Man, in one or two Ages, could make it poor. Here were corn stalks in their Fields as thick as the small of a Man's Leg, and they are ordinarily to be seen.

We lay with these Indians one night, there being one of the largest Iron Pots I had ever seen in America, which I much wondered at, because I thought there might be no navigable stream near that Place. I ask'd them, where they got that Pot? They laugh'd at my Demand, and would give me no answer, which makes me guess it came from some Wreck and that we were nearer the Ocean or some great River than I thought.

The next day about noon we accidentally met with a Southward Indian, amongst those that us'd to trade backward and forward, and spoke a little English, whom we hir'd to go with us to the Esaw Indians, a very large Nation, containing many thousand people. In the afternoon we set forward, taking our leaves of the Wisack Indians, and leaving them some Trifles. On our Way, we met with several Towns of Indians, each Town having its capitol, theatre or State House, such Houses, being found all along the road, until you come to Sapona, and then no more of those buildings, it being about 170 Miles. We reach'd 10 Miles this Day, lying at another Town of the Wisacks The Man of the House offer'd us Skins to sell, but they were too heavy burdens for our long Voyage.

Next morning we set out early breaking the Ice we met withal in the Stony Runs, which were many. We passed by several Cottages, and about eight of the clock we came to a big Town, where we took up our Quarters



in one of their State Houses, the Men being all out, hunting in the Woods and none but Women at Home. One of the Women picked the Pocket of one of our English, of the Beads, Cadis, and what else should have gratified the Indians for the Victuals we receiv'd of them. She also got his shoos away which he had made the night before, of a drest buckskin. With much ado, we mustered up another pair of shoes, of Mogisons, and set forward on our intended voyage.

Relying wholly on Providence we marched on. The Land held rich and Good. In many Places there were great Quantities of Marble. The Water was still of a Whayish Colour. About 10 of the Clock, we waded through a River, (about the bigness of Derwent in Yorkshire) which I take to be one of the Branches of Winjaw River. We saw several Flocks of Pigeons, Field Fares and Thrushes, much like those of Europe. The Indians of these parts use sweating very much. If any Pain, seize their Limbs or Body, immediately they take Reeds or small Wands, and bend them umbrella fashion, covering them with skins and match coats. They have a large Fire not far off wherein they heat stones or (where they are wanting) Bark; putting it into this Stove, which casts an extraordinary heat. There is a pot of water in the Bagnio, in which is put a bunch of an herb bearing a silver Tassel, not much unlike the Aurea Virga. With this vegetable they rub the head, temple and other parts, which is reckon'd a preserver of the sight, and strengthener of the Brain. We went this day about 12 miles, one of our company being lame of his Knee. We passed over an exceedingly rich Tract of Land, affording many Great Free Stones, and Marble Rocks, and abounding in many pleasant and delightful rivulets. At Noon we stay'd and refreshed ourselves at a

Cabin where we met with one of their War Captains, a man of great Esteem among them. At his departure from the House, the Man of the House scratched this War Captain on the Shoulder, which is looked upon as a very great compliment among them. The Captain went two or three miles on our Way with us, to direct us in the Path. One of our Company gave him a belt, which he took very kindly, bidding us call at his House (which was in our road) and stay until the lame traveller was well, and speaking to the Indian to order his servant to make us welcome. Thus we parted, he being on his journey to the Congerees, and Savannas, a famous warlike friendly Nation of Indians, living to the South end of the Ashly River. He had a man-slave with him who was loaded with European Goods, his wife and Daughter being in the Company. He told us at his departure that James had sent Knots to all the Indians thereabouts, for every town to send in 10 skins, meaning Capt. Moore, then Governor of South Carolina. The Towns being very thick hereabouts, we took up our Quarters at one of the Chief Men's Houses, which was one of the Theaters I spoke of before. There ran, hard by this Town, a pleasant River not very large, but as the Indians told us, well stor'd with Fish. We being now among the powerful nation of Esaws, our Landlord entertained us very courteously, shewing us that night a pair of leather gloves which he had made, and comparing them with ours, they proved to be very ingeniously done, considering it was the first Tryal.

In the morning he desired to see the lame Man's affected part, to the end he might do something he believed would give his ease. After he had viewed it accordingly, he pulled out an instrument somewhat like a comb, which was made of split reed with 15 teeth of rattle snakes, set at much the same

distance, as in a large Horn Comb. With this he scratched the Place where the Lameness chiefly lay, till the blood, came, bathing it both before and after incision, with Warm water, spurted out of his mouth. This done he ran into his Plantation, and got some Sassafras Root (which grows here in great Plenty) dry'd it at the embers, scraped off the outward rind, and having heated it between two stones applied it to the part afflicted, binding it up well. Thus in a day or two the patient became sound. This day we pass'd through a great many towns and settlements, that belonged to the Sugeree Indians, no barren land being found amongst them, but great plenty of free-stone and good timber. About three in the afternoon we reached the Kadapau King's House, where we met with one John Stewart, a Scot, then an Inhabitant of James River in Virginia, who had traded there for many years. Being alone, and hearing that the Sinnagers (Indians from Canada) were abroad in that country, he durst not venture homewards until he saw us, having heard that we were coming above 20 days before. It is very odd that news should fly so swiftly among these people. Mr. Stewart had left Virginia ever since the October before, and had lost a day of the week, of which we informed him. He had brought seven horses along with him, loaded with English goods for the Indians, and having sold most of his Cargo, told us if we would stay two nights, he would go along with us. Company being very acceptable, we accepted the proposal.

The next day we were preparing for our voyage and baked some bread to take with us. Our Landlord was King of the Kadapau Indians, and always kept two or three trading girls in his cabin. Offering one of these to one of our Company, who refused his Kindness, his Majesty flew into a violent

Passion to be thus slighted, telling the Englishmen they were good for nothing. Our old Gamster particularly hung his ears at the proposal, having too lately been a looser by that sort of Merchandize. It was observable that we did not see one partridge from the Water-rees to this place, though my Spaniel bitch which I had with me on this voyage had put up a great many before.

On Saturday morning we all set out for Sapona, killing in this creek several Ducks of a strange kind, having a red circle about their Eyes, like some Pigeons that I have seen. A top-knot reaching from their Heads almost to the middle of their Backs, and abundance of Feathers of pretty shades and colors. They prov'd excellent meat. Likewise here is a good store of Wood Cocks, not so big as those in England, the feathers of the Breast, being of a Carnation Colour, exceeding ours for delicacy of Food. The Marble here is of different Colours, some or other of the rocks presenting most mixtures, but chiefly the white having black and blue veins in it, and some that are red. This day we met with seven Heaps of Stones, being the Monuments of seven Indians, that were slain in that place by the Sinnagers, or Iroquois. Our Indian Guide added a stone to each Heap. We took up our Lodgings near a brook side, where the Virginia man's Horses got away, and went back to the Kadabaus.

This day one of our Company with a Sapona Indian, who attended Stewart, went back for the Horses. In the mean time we went to shoot Pigeons, which were so numerous in these Parts, that you might see many Millions in a Flock. They sometimes split off the limbs of stout Oaks and other trees, upon which they roost o' Nights. You may find several Indian Towns of not above seventeen Houses, that have more than 100 gallons of

Pigeon Oil or Fat, they using it with Pulse or Bread as we do Butter, and making the ground as white as a sheet with their Dung. The Indians take a light and go among them in the night, and bringing away with them some thousand, killing them with long poles as they roost in the trees. At this time of year, the flocks as they pass by, obstruct the light of the day.

On Monday we went about 25 Miles, traveling through a pleasant dry country, and took up our lodgings by a hill side, that was one entire Rock, out of which gushed out pleasant fountains of well tasted Water.

The next day, still passing along such land as we had done for many days, before, which was Hills and Vallies, about 10 a'Clock we reached the top of one of these Mountains, which yielded us a very fine prospect of a very pleasant country, holding so on all sides further than we could discern. When we came to travel through it we found it very stiff and rich, being a sort of Marl. This valley afforded as large Timber as any I have met withal, especially of chestnuts and Oak Timbers which render it an excellent country for raising great herds of swine. Indeed, were it cultivated, we might have good hopes of as pleasant and fertile a valley, as any our English in America can afford. At night we lay by a Swift current where we saw plenty of Turkeys, but perched upon such lofty oaks that our guns would not kill them, tho' we shot very often and our guns were very good. Some of our Company shot several Times at one Turkey before he would fly away, the pieces being loaded with large Goose Shot.

Next Morning we got our Breakfast, roasted acorns being one of the dishes. The Indians beat them into Meal and thickened their Venison Broath with them; and oftimes make a palatable soup. They are used instead of bread,

boiling them until the Oil swims on top of the Water, which they preserve for use, eating the Acorns with Flesh meat. We Traveled this day about 25 miles, over pleasant Savanna Grounds, high and Dry, having very few trees upon it, and those standing at a great distance. The Land was very good and free from Grubs or Underwood. A man near Sapona may more easily clear 10 acres of Ground, than in some places he can one, there being much loose stone upon the Land, lying very convenient for making dry Walls, and other sort of durable fences. This country abounds likewise with Curious bold Creeks (navigable for small craft disgorging themselves into the Main Rivers, that vent themselves into the Ocean. These Creeks are well stored with sundry sorts of Fish and Fowl, and are very convenient for the transportation of what commodities this place may produce. This night we had a great deal of Rain, with Thunder and Lightning.

Next morning it proving delicate weather, three of us separated ourselves from the Horses, and the rest of the Company and went direct to Sapona Town. That day we passed thro' a delicious Country, (none that I ever saw exceeds it). We saw fine-bladed grass, 6 foot High, along the Banks of these pleasant rivulets. We passed by the Sepulchres of several slain Indians. Coming that day about 30 Miles we reached the pleasant Banks of Sapona River, whereon stands the Indian Town and Fort, nor could all England afford a pleasanter Stream, were it inhabited by Christians, and cultivated by ingenious Hands. These Indians live in a clear Field, about a Mile square, which they would have sold me because I talked sometimes about coming into those parts to live. This pleasant River may be sometimes larger than the Thames at Kingston, keeping a continual pleasant Noise, with its reverberat-



ing on the bright Marble rocks. It is beautiful with a numerous train of Swans, and other sorts of Water Fowl, not common though extraordinarily pleasing to the Eye. The forward Spring welcomed us with her innumerable train of small Choristers, which inhabit those fair banks; the Hills redoubling, and adding sweetness to their Melodious tunes, by their shrill echoes. One side of the River is hemmed in with Mountainy Ground, the other side proving as rich a soil to the eve of a knowing person with us, as any this Western World can afford. We took up our Quarters at the King's Cabin, who was a good Friend to the English, and had lost one of his Eyes in their Vindication. Being upon his march towards the Appalatche Mountains, amongst a tribe of Indians in their Way, there happening a difference while they were measuring of gun Powder; and the Powder by accident taking Fire blew out one of this King's Eyes, and did a great deal more mischief upon the spot; Yet this Sapona King stood firmly to the Englishman's Interest, with whom he was in Company, still siding with him against the Indians. They were intended for the South Sea, but were too much fatigued by the vast ridge of Mountains, tho' they hit the right passage; it being no less than 5 days journey through a ledge of Rocky Hills and sandy deserts. And which is yet worse there is no Water, nor scarce a bird to be seen, during your Passage over these barren Craggs and Valleys. The Sapona River proves to be the west Branch of Cape Fair, or Clarendon River, whose inlet with other advantages, makes it appear as noble a River to plant a Colony in, as any I have met withal.

The Saponas had (about 10 days before we came thither) taken five prisoners of the Sinnagers, or Jennitos, a sort of People that range several thousand of Miles, making all Prey they lay

their hands on. These are feared by all the Savage Nations I was among, the Westward Indians dreading their approach. They are all sorted in, and keep continual Spies and Out Guards for their better Security. Those Captives they did intend to burn, few Prisoners of War escaping their punishment. The Fire of Pitch-Pine being got ready and a Feast appointed, which is solemnly kept at the time of their acting this Tragedy, the sufferer has his body stuck thick with lightwood splinters, which are lighted by so many candles, the tortured person dancing round a great Fire, till his strength fails, and disables him from making them any further pastime. Most commonly these wretches behave themselves (In the Midst of their Tortures) with a great Deal of Bravery and Resolution, esteeming it satisfaction enough, to be assured that the same Fate will befall some of their Tormentors, whenever they fall into the Hands of their Nation. More of this you will have in the other sheets.

The Toterós, a neighboring Nation, came down from the Westward Mountains, to the Saponas, desiring them to give them those Prisoners into their Hands, to the intent they might send them back to their own Nation, being bound in gratitude to be servicable to the Sinnagers, since not long ago those Northern Indians had taken some of the Toterós Prisoners, and done them no harm, but treated them Civilly whilst among them, sending them with safety back to their Own people, and affirming that it would be the best Method to preserve Peace on all sides. At that Time, these Toterós, Saponas and the Keyauwees, 3 small Nations, were going to live together, by which they thought they would strengthen themselves and become formidable to their Enemies. The reasons offered by the Toterós being heard the Saponas

King with the consent of his Councilors, delivered the Sinnagers up to the Toterós, to conduct them Home.

Friday Morning the old King having shewed us two of his Horses that were as Fat as if they had belonged to the Dutch Troopers, left us and went to look after his Bever-Traps, there being abundance of those amphibious Animals in this River, and the Creeks Adjoining. Taken with the Pleasantness of the Place, we walked along the River-side, where we found a very delightful Island, made by the River, and a Branch, there being several such plots of Ground environ'd with this Silver Stream, which are fit pastures for Sheep, and free from any offensive Vermin. Nor can anything be desired by a contented mind, as to a Pleasant situation, but what may be found here; every step presenting some new object which still adds Invitation to the Traveller in these Parts. Our Indian King and his Wife entertained us very respectfully.

On Saturday the Indians brought us some Swans and Geese, which we Had our share of. One of their Doctors took me to this Cabin of his and showed me a great lot of Medicinal Drugs, the produce of those Parts; Relating their Qualities as to the Emunctories they work'd by, and what great Maladies he had cured by them. This evening came to us the Horses, with the remainder of our Company, their Indian Guide (who was a Youth of this Nation) having killed in their Way a very Fat Doe, part of which they brought to us.

This Day the King sent out all his Able Hunters to kill game for a great Feast, that was to be kept at their Departure from the Town, which they offered to sell me for a small matter. That piece of ground with a little trouble could make an Englishman a most curious Settlement, containing above a Mile of rich land. This even-

ing came down some Toterós, tall likely men, having great quantities of Buffaloes, Elks and Bears, with other sort of Deer amongst them, which strong Food makes large, robust bodies. Enquiring of them if they never got any of the Bezoar Stone, and giving them a description how it was found, the Indians told me they had a great plenty of it; and ask'd me what use I could make of it, I answered them that the White men used it as Physick, and that I would buy some of them, if they would get it against I came that way again. Thereupon one of them pulled out a leather pouch wherein was some of it in Powder; he was a notable hunter, and affirmed to me that that powder blown into the Eyes strengthened the Sight and Brain exceedingly, that being the most common use they made of it. I bought for 2 or 3 flints a large Peach Loaf, made up with a pleasant sort of seed, and this did us a singular kindness in our journey. Near the Town within their cleared land are several Bagnios, or Sweating Houses, made of stone in shape like a large oven; these they make much use of, especially for any pain in the joints, got by cold or travelling. At night as we lay in our beds there arose the most violent N. W. Wind I ever knew. The first Puff blew down all the Palisadoes that fortified the town, and I thought it would have blown us all into the River, together with the Houses. Our one-eyed King, who pretends much to the Art of Conjuratation, ran out in the most violent Hurry, and in the middle of the Town fell to his Necromantick Practise; tho' I thought he would have been blown away or killed, before the Devil and he could have exchanged half a dozen words; but in two Minutes the Wind had ceased and it became as Great a Calm, as I ever knew in my Life. As I much admired at that sudden alteration, the old man told me the Devil was

very angrv and had done thus, because they had not put the Sinnagers to Death.

On Monday Morning our whole Company, with the Horses, set out from the Sapona Indian town, after having seen some of the Locust, which is gotten thereabouts, the same sort that bears Honey. Getting over several Creeks very convenient for Water Mills, about 8 Miles from the Town, we passed over a very pretty River, called Rock River, a fit name, having a ridge of high Mountains running from its Banks to the Eastward, and disgorging itself in the Sapona River; so that there is a most pleasant and convenient Neck of Land betwixt both Rivers lying upon a Point, where many thousand acres may be fenced in, without much cost or labour. You can scarce go a Mile without meeting with one of these small Currents, here being no Swamps to be found, but pleasant dry roads all over the Country. The way that we went this day was full of Stones, as any which Craven, in the West of Yorkshire, could afford, and having nothing but moggisons on my feet, I was so lamed by this way, that I thought I must have taken up some stay in those parts. We went this Day not above 15 or 20 Miles. After we had supped and all lay down to sleep, there came a Wolf close to the Fireside, where we lay. My Spaniel soon discovered him, at which one of our Company fired a gun at the Beast; but I believe there was a mistake in the loading of it, for it did him no harm. The Wolf stayed until he had almost loaded again, but the Bitch making a great noise at last he left us and went aside. We had no sooner lay down when he approached us again, yet was more shy, so that we could not get a shot at him.

Next day we had 15 Miles further to the Keyauwees. The land is more mountainous but extremely pleasant, and an

excellent place for the breeding of Sheep, Goats and Horses; or Mules, if the English were once brought to the experience of the usefulness of those Creatures. The Valleys here are very rich. At noon, we passed over such another Stony River, as that eight Miles from Sapona. This is called Highwaree, and affords as good Blue stone for Mill stones, as that from Cologne, good Rags, some Hones, and large Pebbles in great abundance, besides free stone of several sorts, all very useful. I knew one of these Hones made use of by an Acquaintance of mine, and it proved rather better than any other from old Spain, or elsewhere. The veins of marble are very large and curious on this River, and the Banks thereof.

Five Miles from this River to the N. W. stands the Keyauwee's Town. They are fortified in with Wooden Punch-eons, like Sapona, being a People much of the same Number. Nature hath so fortify'd this Town with Mountains, that were it a Great Seat of War, it might easily be made impregnable, having large corn fields joining to their Cabins, and a Savanna near the Town, at the foot of these Mountains, that is capable of keeping some hundreds of heads of Cattle. And all this environ'd round with very High Mountains, so that no hard Wind ever troubles these inhabitants. These high cliffs have no grass growing on them, and very few Trees, which are very short and stand at a great distance from each other. The earth is a red Colour, and seems to me to be wholly designed by Nature for the production of Minerals, being of too hot a Quality to suffer any verdure upon its surface. These Indians make use of red ore to paint their Faces withal, which they get in the Neighboring Mountains. As for the refinement of Metals the Indians are wholly ignorant of this, being content with the Realgar. But if it be my chance once more to



visit these Hilly parts, I shall make a longer stay amongst them; For were a good vein of Lead found out, and worked by an ingenious Hand, it might be of no small advantage to the undertaker, there being great convenience for smelting, either by Bellows or Reverberation; and the working of these mines might discover some that are much richer.

At the top of one of these Mountains is a Cave that 100 Men sit very conveniently to dine in; whether natural or artificial I could not learn. There is a fine Bole between this place and the Saps. These Valleys thus hemmed in with Mountains would doubtless prove a good Place for propagating some sort of fruits, that our easterly Winds commonly blast. The vine could not miss of thriving well here; but we of the Northern Climate are neither Artists nor Curious, in propagating that pleasant and profitable vegetable. Near the Town is such another Current as Heighwaree. We being six in Company divided ourselves into two parties; and it was my lot to be at the House of Kayauwees Jack, who is King of that People. He is a Congeree Indian and ran away when he was a boy. He got this Government by marriage with the Queen, the Female issue carrying the Heritage for fear of Imposters; the Savages well knowing how much Frailty possesses the Indian Women betwixt the Garters and the Girdle.

Next day having some occasion to write, the Indian King, who saw me, believed that he could write as well as I. Whereupon I wrote a word and gave it to him to copy, which he did with more exactness than any European could have done, that was illiterate. It was so well that he who could have read mine might have done the same by his. Afterwards he took great delight in making fish-hooks of his own

invention which would have been a good Piece for an Antiquary to have puzzled his brains withal, in tracing out the Characters of all the oriental Tongues. He sent for several Indians to his Cabin to look at his handywork and both he and they thought I could read his writing as well as I could my own. I had a Manual in my pocket that had King David's Picture in it, and in one of his Private retirements. The Indian asked me who that Indian represented? I told him that it was the Picture of a good King that lived according to the rules of Morality, doing all as he would be done by, ordering all his life to the service of the Creator of all things; and being now above us in Heaven with God Almighty, who had rewarded him with all the delightful pleasures imaginable in the other World, for his Obedience to him in this. I concluded with telling him that we received nothing here below, as Food, Raiment, etc., but what came from the Omnipotent Being. They listened to my Discourse with a profound Silence, assuring me that they believed what I said to be true. No man living will ever be able to make these Heathens sensible to the Happiness of a future state, except he now and then mentions some lively carnal Representation, which may quicken their apprehensions, and make them thirst after such a gainful exchange; for were the best lecture that ever was preached by man given to an ignorant sort of people, in a more learned style than their mean capacities are able to understand, the Intent would prove ineffectual, and the Hearers would be left in a greater Labyrinth than their Teacher found them in. But dispense the Precepts of our Faith according to the Pupil's capacity, and there is nothing in our Religion but what an indifferent reason is in some measure able to comprehend tho' a New England Minister blames

the French Jesuits for this way of proceeding, as being quite contrary to the true Christian Practise, and affirms it to be no ready or true Method, to establish a lively representation of our Christian Belief amongst these Infidels.

All the Indians hereabouts carefully preserve the bones of the Flesh they eat, and burn them, as being of opinion that if they Omitted that Custom, the Game would leave their country, and they would not be able to Maintain themselves by Hunting. Most of these Indians wear Mustaches, or Whiskers, which is rare; by reason the Indians are a people that commonly pull the Hair of their Faces, and other parts up by the Roots and suffer None to grow. Here is plenty of Chestnuts, which are rarely found in Carolina, and never near the Sea or Salt Water, tho' they are frequently in such places in Virginia.

At the other House where our Fellow-Travellers lay, they had provided a Dish in great Fashion among the Indians, which was two young Fawns, taken out of the Doe's Bellies, and boiled in the same slimy bags Nature had provided them in, and one of the Country Hares stewed with the Guts in her belly, and her skin with the Hair on. This new-found cookery wrought Abstinence in our Fellow-Travellers, which I somewhat wondered at, because one of them made nothing of eating allegators, as heartily as if it had been Pork and Turnips. These Indians dressed most things after the Wood-Cock fashion, never taking the guts out. At the House we lay at there was good entertainment of Venison, Turkies and Bears; and which is customary among the Indians, the Queen had a Daughter by a Former Husband, who was the beautifulest Indian I ever saw, and had an Air of Majesty with her, quite contrary to the general Carriage of the Indians. She was very kind to the Eng-

lish during our abode, as well as her Father and Mother.

This Morning most of our Company having some inclination to go straight away for Virginia, when they left this Place; I and one more took our leaves of them, resolving, (with God's Leave) to see North Carolina, one of the Indians setting us in our Way. The rest being indifferent which way they went, desired us by all means to leave a letter for them at the Achonechy-Town. The Indian that put us in our Path had been a Prisoner amongst the Sinnagers, but had outrun them, altho' they had cut his toes, and half his feet away, which is a practice common amongst them. They first raise the Skin, cut away half the feet, and so wrap the Skin over the stumps and so make a perfect cure of the Wound. This commonly disables them from making their escape, they being not so good travellers as before, and the impression of their half-feet making it easy to trace them. However, this Fellow was got clear of them, but had little heart to go far from home, and carried always a case of Pistols in his Girdle, besides a Cutlass and Fuzee. Leaving the rest of our Company at the Indian Town, we travel'd that Day about 20 Miles in very Cold, Frosty Weather, and passed over two pretty Rivers, something bigger than Heighwaree, but not quite so Stony. We took these two rivers to make one of the Northward branches of Cape Fair River, but afterwards found our Mistake.

The next Day we travelled over very good Land, but full of Free Stone, and Marble which pinched our Feet severely. We took up our quarters at a sort of Savanna Ground, that had very few Trees in it. The land was good and had several Quarries of Stone, but not Loose as the others used to be.

Next Morning we got our Breakfast of Parched Corn, having nothing but

that to subsist on for 100 Miles. All the Pine Trees had Vanished, for we had seen none for two days. We pas'd thro' a Delicate Rich Soil this Day; no great Hills but pretty Risings and Levels, which made a beautiful countrv. We likewise passed over three Great Rivers this Day; the First about the bigness of Rocky River, the other not much differing in Size. Then we made not the least Question, but we had passed over the North West Branch of the Cape Fair, travelling that day above 30 Miles. We were much taken with the Fertility and Pleasantness of the Neck of Land between these two Branches, and no less pleased that we had passed the River, which used to frighten Passengers from fording it. At last, determining to rest on the other side of the Hill, which we saw before us; when we were on the top thereof there appeared to us such another delicious, rapid stream, as that of the Sapona, having large Stones, about the bigness of an ordinary House, lying up and down the River. As the wind blew cold at the N. W. and we were very weary and hungry, the Swiftness of the Current gave us some cause to fear; but at last we concluded to venture over that night. Accordingly we stripped, and with great difficulty (by God's assistance) got safe to the north side of the famous Hau River, by some called Reatkin; the Indians differing in the names of places, according to their several Nations. It is called Hau River from the Sissipahau Indians, who dwell upon this Stream, which is one of the Main Branches of Cape Fair River, there being Rich Land enough to contain some thousands of Families; for which reason I hope in a short time it will be Planted. This River is much such another as Sapona; both seeming to run a vast way up the Countrv. Here is good Timber, especially of a Scaly-Bark'd Oak; And as there is

Stone enough in both Rivers, and the Land is extraordinary Rich, No Man that will be content within the Founds of Reason, can have any grounds to dislike it. And they that are otherwise, are the best Neighbours, when farthest off.

As soon as it was Day we set out for the Achonechy Town, it being by estimation 20 Miles off, which, I believe, is pretty exact. We were got about half Way, (meeting great Gangs of Turkies) when we saw at a distance 30 loaded Horses, coming on the road, with four or five Men, on other Jades, driving them. We charg'd our Piece, and went up to them, Enquiring whence they came from? They told us, from Virginia. The leading Man's name was Massey, who was born about Leeds in Yorkshire. He asked from whence we came. We told him. Then he asked again, Whether we wanted anything that he had? telling us that we should be welcome to it. We accepted of two Wheaten Biscuits and a little ammunition; He advised us by all means to strike down the country for Ronoack, and not think of Virginia, because the Sinnagers, of whom they were afraid, tho' so well armed and numerous. They persuaded us also to call on one Enoe Will, as we went to Adshusheer, for that he would conduct us safe among the English, giving him the character of a very faithful Indian, which we afterwards found true by experience. The Virginia Men asked our Opinion of the Country we were then in? We told them it was a very pleasant one. They were all of the same opinion, and affirmed That they had never seen 20 Miles of such extraordinary rich Land, lying all together, like that betwixt Hau River and the Achonechy Town. Having taken our leaves of each other we set forward; and the country thro' which we passed was so delightful that it gave us a great deal of satisfaction.



About three a Clock we reached the town, and the Indians presently brought us a good fat Bear, and Venison, which was very acceptable at that time. Their Cabins were hung with a Good Sort of Tapestry, as Fat Bear, and Barbakued or dried Venisen; no Indians having greater plenty of provisions than these. The Savages, do indeed, still possess the Flower of Carolina; the English enjoying only the Flag-end of that country. We had not been in the Town two Hours when Enoe-Will came into the King's Cabin; which was our Quarters. We ask'd him if he would conduct us to the English, and what he would have for his pains; he answered that he would go along with us, and for what he was to have he left that to our discretion.

The next Morning we set out with Enoe-Will towards Adshusheer, leaving the Virginia Path and striking more to the Eastward for Ronoack. Several Indians were in our Company belonging to Will's Nation, who are the Shoccories, mixed with the Eno Indians, and those of the Nation of Adshusheer. Enoe-Will is their chief Man, and rules as far as the Banks of Reatkin. It was a bad stony Way, to Adshusheer. We went over a small River by Achonechy, and in this 14 Miles, thro' several other streams, which empty themselves into the Branches of the Cape Fair. The Stony Way made me quite Lame, so that I was an Hour or two behind the rest, but Honest Will would not leave me, but bid me welcome when we came to his House, feasting us with Hot Bread and Bear's Oil; which is wholesome Food for Travellers. There runs a Pretty Rivulet by this Town. Near the Plantation, I saw a Prodigious overgrown Pinetree, having not seen any of that kind of timber for over 125 Miles. They brought us two Cocks, and pull'd their larger Feathers off, never cutting the lesser, but singeing them off,

I took one of these Fowls in my Hand to make it cleaner than the Indian had, pulling out his guts and liver, which I laid in a Basin; notwithstanding which, he kept such a struggling for a considerable Time, that I had much ado to hold him in my Hands. The Indians laughed at me, and told me that Enoe-Will had taken a Cock of an Indian that was not at Home, and the Fowl was design'd for another Use. I conjectured that he was designed for an offering to their God, who they say hurts them, (which is the Devil). In his struggles he bled afresh, and there issued out of his body more blood than commonly such Creatures afford. Notwithstanding all this, we cooked him and eat him, and if he was designed for him, cheated the Devil. The Indians kept many Cocks, but seldom above one hen, using very such often wicked Sacrifices as I mistrusted this Fowl was design'd for. Our guide and Landlord, Enoe-Will, was of the best and most agreeable Temper I ever met with in an Indian, being always ready to serve the English, not out of Gain, but real Affection; which makes him apprehensive of being poisoned by some wicked Indians, and was therefore very earnest with me, to promise him to revenge his death should it so happen. He brought some of his chief Men into his Cabin, and two of them having a Drum and a Rattle, sung by us as we laid in bed, and struck up their music to serenade and welcome us to their Town. And tho' at last we fell asleep, yet they continued their Consort until morning. These Indians are fortified in as the former, and are much addicted to a sport they call Chenco, which is carried on with a Staff and Bowl made of stone, which they trundle upon a smooth place, like a Bowling Green, made for that purpose as I mentioned before.

Next Morning we set out with our

Guide and several other Indians, who intended to go to the English and buy rum. We designed for a Nation about 40 Miles from Adshusheer, called the Lower Quarter; the First Night we lay in a Rich Perkason, or Low Ground, that was hard by a Creek, and good dry Land.

The next day we went over several rich Tracts of Land, but mixed with Pine and other indifferent Soil. In our Way there stood a large stone about the size of a large Oven, and Hollow. This the Indians took great notice of, putting some Tobacco into the concavity, and spitting after it. I asked them the reason of their so doing, but they made me no answer. In the evening we pass'd over a pleasant Rivulet, with a fine Gravelly bottom, having come over such another that morning. On the other side of this river we found the Indian town, which was a Parcel of nasty, smoaky holes, much like the Wateerees; their town having a great Swamp, running directly through the Middle thereof. The Land here begins to abate of its height, and has some few Swamps. Most of these Indians have but one eye; but what Mischance or quarrel has bereaved them of the other I could not learn. They were not so free to us as most of the other Indians had been; Victuals being somewhat scarce to them. However, we got enough to satisfy our appetites. I saw amongst these men very long Arrows, headed with pieces of Glass, which they had broken from bottles. They had shaped them neatly like the head of a dart, but which way they did it I can't tell. We had not been at this Town above an Hour, when two of our company who had brought a mare of John Stewart, came up to us, having received a letter by one of Will's Indians, who was cautious and asked a great many questions to certify him of the person, e'er he would deliver the letter.

They had left the trader and one that came from South Carolina with us to go to Virginia, these two being resolved to go to Carolina with us.

This day fell much rain, so we stayed at the Indian Town.

This morning we set out early, being four Englishmen besides several Indians. We went 10 Miles, and were then stopped by the Freshness of the Enoe River, which had raised it so high that we could not pass over, till it was fallen. I enquired of my guide where this river disgorged itself; He said it was the Enoe River, and ran into a place call'd Enoe Bay near his country, which he left when he was a boy; by which I perceived that he was one of the Corees by birth; this being a branch of Neus River.

This day our fellow traveller's Mare ran away from him; wherefore Will went back as far as the lower Quarter, and brought her back.

The next day early came two Tuskeraro Indians to the other side of the river, but could not get over. They talked much to us, but we understood them not. In the afternoon Will came with the Mare and had some discourse with them; they told him, the English to which he was going were very wicked people, and that they threatened the Indians for hunting near their Plantations. These two fellows were among the Schoccores and Achonechy Indians, to sell their Wooden Bowls and Ladles for Raw-Skins, which they make great advantage of, hating that any of these Western Indians should have their commerce with the English, which would prove a Hinderance to their Gains. Their Stories deterr'd an old Indian and his son, from going any further, but Will told us nothing they should say would frighten him, he believing them to be a couple of Hog-Stealers; and that the English only sought restitution of their losses by

them, and that this was the only ground for their report. Will had a slave, a Sissipahau Indian by Nation, who killed us several Turkeys and other game, on which we feasted.

The River is near as large as Reatkin; the south side having curious tracts of good Land, the banks high, and stone Quarries. The Tuskeruros, being come to us we ventured over the river, which we found to be a strong current, and Water about Breast high. However we all got safe to the North Shore, which is but poor, white, sandy Land, and bears no timber, but small shrubby oaks. We went about 10 Miles and sat down at the falls of a large creek, where lay mighty Rocks, the Water making a strange Noise as if a great many Water-Mills were going at once. I take this to be the falls of the Neus-Creek, called by the Indians the Wee quo Whom. We lay here all night. My guide Will desiring to see the book that I had about me, I lent it to him; and as soon as he saw the picture of King David, he asked me several Questions concerning the book, and picture, which I resolv'd him, and invited him to become a Christian. He made me a very sharp reply, assuring me that he loved the English extraordinarily well, and did believe their ways to be very good for those that had always practised them, and had been brought up therein, but that for himself, he was too much in years to think of a change, esteeming it not proper for old People to admit such an Alteration. However he told me that if I would take his son Jack, who was then about 14 years of age, and teach him to talk in that Book, and make paper speak, which they call our Way of Writing, he would wholly resign him to my tuition; telling me he was of opinion, I was very well affected to the Indians.

The next Morning we set out early, and I perceived these Indians were in

some fear of Enemies; for they had an old man with them who was very cunning and circumspect, wheresoever he saw any Marks of Footing or any Fire that had been Made, going out of his Way very often to look for these marks. We went this day above 30 Miles, over a very Level country and Most Pine land, yet intermixed with some quantities of Marble; a good range for Cattle though very indifferent for Swine. We here now lost our rapid streams and were come to slow, dead Waters, of a brown color, proceeding from the Swamps, much like the Sluices in Holland, where the Track Scoots go along. In the afternoon we met two Tuskereros, who told us that there was a Company of Hunters not far off, and if we walked stoutly we might reach them that night. But Will and he that owned the Mare, being gone before, and the old Indian tired, we rested that night in the Woods, making a good light Fire, Wood being very plentiful in these parts.

The next Morning about 10 o'clock we struck out of the Way, by advice of our old Indian. We had not gone 2 Miles e'er we met with 500 Tuskereros in one Hunting Quarter. They had made themselves streets of houses built with Pine Bark, not with round tops as they commonly use, but Ridge Fashion, after the manner of most other Indians. We got nothing amongst them but corn, Flesh being not plentiful by reason of the great number of their people. For tho' they are expert hunters, yet they are too populous for one Range, which makes Venison very scarce to what it is amongst other Nations, that are fewer, no savages living so well for Plenty as those living near the sea. I saw amongst these a Hump-Backed Indian, which was the only Crooked one I ever saw withal. About two a Clock we reached one of their Towns, in which there was no-



body left but an old Woman or two, the rest being gone to their Hunting Quarters. We could find no provision at that place. We had a Tuskerero that came in company with us from the lower Quarter, who took us to his Cabin and gave us what it afforded, which was corn-meal.

This day we passed through several swamps, and going not above a dozen Miles came to a Cabin, the Master whereof used to trade amongst the English. He told us, if we would stay two Nights, he would conduct us safe to them, himself designing at that time to go and get some Rum; so we resolved to tarry for his company. During our stay, there happened to be a young Woman troubled with Fits. The doctor who was sent for to assist her, laid her on her belly, and made a small incision with Rattle Snake Teeth, then laying his mouth to the place he sucked out near a quart of black conglutinated Blood, and Serum. Our Landlord gave us the Tail of a Beaver, which was a choice food. There happened also to be a burial of one of them, which ceremony is much the same as that of the Santees, who make a great Feast at the Interment of their Corps. The small runs of water hereabout, afford great plenty of Craw-fish, full as large as those in England, and nothing inferior to their Goodness.

Sunday Morning our Patron, with Enoe-Will, and his servant, set out with us for the English. In the afternoon we ferried over a River in a Canoe, called by the Indians Chattoo-

kau, which is the N. W. Branch of Neus River. We lay in the Swamp, where some Indians invited us to go to their Quarters, which some of our Company accepted, but got nothing extraordinary except a dozen Miles March out of their Way. The country here is very thick of Indian Towns and Plantations.

We were forced to march this way for want of provisions. About 10 o'clock we met an Indian that had got a Parcel of Shad fish ready barbakued. We bought 24 of them for a dress'd doe skin, and so went on through many swamps, finding this Day the long ragged Moss on the Trees, which we had not seen for above 600 Miles. In the afternoon we came upon the banks of Pampticough, about 20 Miles above the English Plantations by Water, though not so far by Land. The Indian found a Canoe which he had hidden, and we all got over, and went about six Miles farther. We lay that night under two or three Pieces of Bark, at the foot of a large Oak. There fell abundance of Snow and Rain in the Night, with much thunder and lightning.

Next day it cleared up, and it being about 12 miles to the English, about half-way we passed over a deep creek, and came safe to Mr. Richard Smith's, of Pampticough River, in North Carolina, where being well received by the inhabitants, and being well pleased with the goodness of the country, we all resolved to continue.

Finis.

## CHAPTER II.

The Province of Carolina is separated from Virginia by a Due West Line, which begins at Currituck Inlet, in 36 degrees, 30 minutes, of Northern Latitude, and extends indefinitely to the Westward, and thence to the Southward, as far as 29 Degrees, which is a vast amount of Sea Coast. But having already treated as far as is necessary, concerning South Carolina, I shall confine myself in the ensuing Sheets, to give my reader a description of that part of the country only which lies between Currituck and Cape Fair River, and is almost 34 degrees North. And this is commonly called North Carolina.

This part of Carolina is faced with a chain of Sand Banks, which defends it from the violence and Insults of the Atlantic Ocean, by which barrier a vast Sound is hemmed in, which fronts the Mouths of the Navigable Pleasant Rivers of this Fertile Country, and into which they disgorge themselves. Thro' the same are inlets of several depths of Water. Some of these Channels admit only of Sloops, Brigantines, small Barks and Ketches; and such are Currituck, Ronoak, and the Sound above Hatteras; whilst others can receive Ships of Burden, as Ococock, Topsail Inlet, and Cape Fair, as appears by my chart.

The first discovery and settlement of this country was by the Procurement of Sir Walter Raleigh, in conjunction with some public spirited Gentlemen of that Age, under the Protection of Queen Elizabeth, for which reason it was then named Virginia, being begun on that part named Ronoak Island, where the ruins of a Fort are to be seen to this day, as well as some old

English Coins which have been lately found; and a Brass Gun, one Powder Horn, and one small quarter-deck gun, made of Iron Staves, and hooped with the same metal; which method of making guns might very probably be made use of in those days; for the Convenience of Infant Colonies.

A farther confirmation of this we have from the Hatteras Indians, who either then lived on Ronoak Island, or much frequented it. These tell us that several of their ancestors were white People, and could talk in a Book, as we do; the truth of which is confirmed by grey Eyes being found frequently amongst these Indians, and no others. They value themselves extremely for their Affinity to the English, and are ready to do them all friendly offices. It is probable that this settlement miscarried for want of timely supplies from England, or thro' the treachery of the Natives, for we may reasonably suppose that the English were forced to co-habit with them for relief and conversation, and that in process of Time, they conformed themselves to the Manners of their Indian Relations. And thus we see how apt Human Nature is to degenerate.

I cannot forbear inserting here a pleasant story that passes for an uncontested Truth amongst the Inhabitants of this Place; which is that the Ship which brought the first Colonies, does often appear amongst them under sail, in a gallant Posture, which they call Sir Walter Raleigh's Ship; and the truth of this has been affirmed to me, by men of the best Credit in the Country.

A second settlement of this country was made about 50 years ago, in that

part we now call Albemarl-Country, and chiefly in Chuwon Precinct, by several substantial planters, from Virginia and other Plantations, who finding mild winters and a fertile soil, beyond Expectation, producing everything that was planted to a prodigious increase; their Cattle, Horses, Sheep and Swine, breeding very fat, and passing the winter without any Assistance from the Planter; so that everything seemed to come by nature; the Husbandman living almost void of care, and free from those fatigues which are absolutely requisite in Winter-Countries; these encouragements induced them to stand their ground, altho' but a handful of people, seated at great distances from each other, and amidst a vast number of Indians from different Nations, who were then in Carolina. Nevertheless I say, the flame of this new discovered Summer-Country spread through the neighboring Colonies, and in a few years drew a considerable number of families thereto, who all found Land enough to settle themselves in, (had they been many thousand more) and that which was very good and commodiously seated, both for Profit and Pleasure. And indeed, most of the Plantations in Carolina, naturally enjoy a very noble prospect of large and spacious Rivers, pleasant Savannas, and fine Meadows, with their green liveries, interwoven with beautiful flowers of most glorious colors, which the several seasons afford, hedged in with famous groves of the ever famous Tulip tree, the stately Laurel, and Bays equalizing the Oak in bigness and growth; Myrtle, Woodbines, Jessamines, Honeysuckles, and several other fragrant Vines and Evergreens, whose aspiring branches shadow and interweave themselves with the loftiest timbers, yielding a pleasant Prospect, Shade and Smell, proper habitations for the sweet sing-

ing Birds, that melodiously entertain such as travel thro' the Woods of Carolina.

The Planters possessing all these Blessings, and the Produce of great quantities of Wheat and Indian Corn, in which this country is very fruitful, as likewise in Beef, Pork, Tallow, Hides, Deer Skins, and Furs; for these commodities the New Englandmen and Bermudians visited Carolina in their Barks and Sloops, and carry'd out what they made, bringing them in exchange, Rum, Sugar, Salt, Molasses, and some wearing apparel, tho' the last at very extravagant prices.

As the Land is very fruitful, so are the Planters kind and hospitable to all that come and visit them; there being very few house-keepers, but what live nobly, and give away more provisions to Coasters and Guests who come to them, than they expend among their own families.

#### OF THE INLETS AND HAVENS OF THIS COUNTRY.

The Bar of Currituck, being the Northmost of this country, presents itself first to be treated of. It lies in 36 degrees, 30 minutes, and the course over is S. W. by W. having not above 7 to 8 ft. on the Bar, tho' a good harbour when you are over, where you may ride safe and deep enough, but this part of the Sound is so full of Shoals, as not to suffer anything to trade thro' it, that draws above three foot Water, which renders if very incommodious. However this affects but some parts of the country, and may be easily remedied by carrying their Produce in small Craft, down to vessels which ride near the Inlet.

Rock Inlet has ten foot of Water; the course over the Bar is almost W. which leads you thro' the best of channels. The Bar, as well as Currituck, often shifts by the Violence of the N. E. Storms, both lying exposed to



those winds. Notwithstanding which, a considerable trade might be carried on, provided there was a Pilot to bring them in; for it lies convenient for a large part of this Colony, whose product would very easily allow of that charge: Lat. 35 deg. 50 min.

The Inlet of the Hatteras lies to the Westward of the Cape, round which is an excellent Harbour. When the wind blows hard at N. or N. E. if you keep a small League from the Cape point, you will have 3, 4, and 5 Fathom, the outermost Shoals lying about 7 or 8 Leagues from Shoar. As you come into the Inlet, keep close to the south breakers, till you are over the Bar, where you will have two Fathom at low water. You may come to an anchor in two fathom and a half when you are over, then steer over close aboard the North Shore, where is four Fathom, close to a Point of Marsh; then steer up the sound a long League, till you bring the North Cape of the Inlet to bear S. S. E. half E, then steer W. N. W. the East point of Bluff Land at Hatteras as bearing E. N. E., the Southmost large Hammock towards Ocacock, bearing S. S. W. half S., then you are in the Sound, over the bar of sand, whereon is but 6 foot water; then your course to Pamicough is almost West. It flows on these three bars S. E. by E. 1-4 E. about eight of the clock, unless there is a hard gale of wind at N. E. which will make it flow two hours longer; but as soon as the Wind is down, the Tides will have their Natural Course: A hard gale at N. or N. W. will make the water ebb sometimes 24 hours, but still the Tide will ebb and flow, tho' not seen by the turning thereof, but may be seen by the Rising of the Water, and falling of the same, Lat. 35 deg. 20 min.

Ocacock is the best Inlet and Harbour yet in this country, and has 13 foot at low water upon the bar. There

are two channels; one is but narrow and lies close aboard the South Cape; the other in the middle, viz-between the Middle Ground and the South Shoar, and is above half a Mile wide. The Bar itself is but half a Cable's length over, and then you are in 7 or 8 Fathom Water; a good Harbour. The course into the Sound is N. W. At High-water, and Neap-tides here is 18 foot Water. It lies S. W. from Hatteras Inlet. Lat. 35 deg. 8 min.

Topsail Inlet is above two leagues to the Westward of Capt Look-out. You have a fair channel over the Bar, and two Fathom thereon and a good harbour in 5 or 6 Fathom to come to an anchor. Your course over the bar is almost N. W. Lat. 24 deg. 44 min.

As for the Inlet and River of Cape Fair, I cannot give you a better information thereof, than has already been deliver'd by the gentlemen who were sent on purpose, from Barbadoes, to make a discovery of that River, in the year 1663, which is thus:

From Tuesday the 29th of September to Friday the 2nd of October we ranged along the shoar from Lat. 32 deg. 20 min. to lat. 33 deg. 33 min. but could discern no entrance for our Ship, after we had passed to the northward of 32 deg. 40 min. On Saturday, October 3rd, a violent storm overtook us, the Wind between North and East; which easterly winds and Foul Weather continu'd until Monday the 12th; by reason of which storms and Foul Weather, we were forced to get off to Sea, to secure ourselves and Ship, and were driven by the rapidity of the strong current to Cape Hatteras in Lat. 35 deg. 30 min. On Monday the 12th. aforesaid, we came to an anchor in seven Fathom at Cape Fair Road, and took the Meridian Altitude of the Sun, and were in Lat. 33 deg. 43 Min.; the wind continuing still Easterly, and Foul Weather until Thursday the 15th,

and on Friday the 16th, the Wind being at N. W. we Weigh'd and sailed up Cape Fair River, some 4 or 5 Leagues, and came to an anchor in 6 or 7 Fathom, at which time several Indians came on board and brought us great store of fresh Fish, large Mulletts, young Bass, Shads, and several other sorts of very good, well tasted fish. On Saturday the 17th, we went down to the Cape, to see the English Cattle, but could not find 'em, tho' we rounded the Cape, and having an Indian guide with us, here we rode till October the 24th. The Wind being against us, we could not go up the River with our Ship, but went on Shoar and viewed the Land of those Quarters. On Saturday we weigh'd and sailed up the River some 4 Leagues, or thereabouts. Sunday the 25th we weighed again, and rowed up the River, it being calm, and got some 14 Leagues from the Harbour's Mouth, where we moored our ship. On Monday October 26th, we went down with the Yawl, to Necoes, an Indian Plantation, and viewed the Land there. On Tuesday the 27th, we rowed up the main river, with our long-boat, and 12 men, some 10 Leagues, or thereabouts. On Wednesday the 28th we rowed up about 8 or 10 Leagues more and came to a tree that lay cross the River; but because our provisions were almost spent, we proceeded no farther, but returned downward before the night, and on Monday the 2nd of November we came on board our ship. Tuesday the third, we lay still to refresh ourselves. On Wednesday the 4th we went 5 Leagues or 6 up the River, to search a branch that run out of the main river towards the N. W. In which branch we went up 5 or 6 Leagues; but not liking the Land we returned on board that night about Midnight, and called that Place Swampy Branch. Thursday, Novem-

ber the 5th, we stayed aboard. On Friday the 6th we went up Green's River, the mouth of it being against the Place at which rode our ship. On Saturday the 7th. we proceeded up the said River some 14 or 15 Leagues in all, and found it ended in several small branches; the Land for the most part being marshy and Swamps, we returned towards our Ships, and got aboard in the Night. Sunday November the 8th, we lay still, and on Monday the 9th, went up again the Main River, being well stocked with provisions, and all things necessary, and proceeded upwards until Thursday noon, the 12th, at which time we came to a place, where were two Islands in the middle of the river; and by reason of the Crookedness of the River at that Place, several Trees lay across both Branches, which stopped the passage of each branch, so that we could proceed no farther with our boat, but went up the river-side by land, some three or four Miles, and found the River wider and wider. So we returned, leaving it as far as we could see up a long Reach, running N. E. we judging ourselves near 50 Leagues north from the River's Mouth. In our return we viewed the Land on both sides the River and found as good tracts of dry, well wooded, Pleasant, and delightful Ground, as we have seen anywhere in the World, with abundance of long thick Grass on it, the Land being very Level, with steep banks on both sides the River, and in some places very high, the Woods stor'd everywhere with great numbers of Turkies and Deer, we never going to shoar, but we saw of each sort; as also great store of Partridges, Cranes and Conies in several places; we likewise heard several wolves howling in the Woods, and saw where they had torn a deer in pieces. Also in the river we saw a great store of Ducks, Teal,

Widgeon; and in the Woods great Flocks of Parrakeeto's. The timber that the Woods afford, for the most part, consists of Oaks of four or five sorts, all differing in leaves but all bearing very good acorns. We measured many of the oaks in several places, which we found to be in bigness some two, some three and others almost four fathom high, before you come to boughs or limbs; forty, fifty and sixty foot and some more; and those Oaks very common in the upper parts of both Rivers; also a very large Tall tree of great bigness, which some call Cyprus, the right name we know not, growing in Swamps. Likewise the Walnut, Birch, Beech, Maple, Ash, Bay, Willow, Alder, and Holly; and in the lowermost parts innumerable Pines, tall and good for Boards or Masts, growing for the most Part, in barren and sandy, but in some cases up the River, in good Ground, being mixed amongst Oaks and other Timbers. We saw Mulberry Trees, Multitudes of Grape Vines, and some grapes which we eat of. We found a very large and good Tract of Land on the N. W. Side of the River, thin of Timber, except here and there a very great Oak, and full of Grass, commonly as high as a Man's middle, and in many Places to his Shoulders, where we saw many Deer, and Turkies; one Deer having very large Horns and a great Body, we therefore called it Stag park. It being a very pleasant and delightful Place, we traveled in it several Miles, but saw no end thereof. So we returned to our boat and proceeded down the River, and came to another Place some 25 Leagues from the river's mouth on the same side, where we found a place no less delightful than the former; and as far as we could judge both tracts came into one. This lower place we call'd Rocky Point, because we found many Rocks and Stones of several

sizes, up on the Land, which is not common. We sent our boat down the River before us, ourselves traveling by Land many Miles, Indeed we were so much taken with the Pleasantness of the country that we traveled into the Woods too far to recover our Company and boat that night. The next day being Sunday we got to our boat, and on Monday the 16th of November proceeded down to a Place on the East side of the River, some 23 Leagues from the Harbour's Mouth, which we call'd Turkey Quarters, because we killed several Turkies thereabouts; we viewed the Land there and found some Tracts of good ground, and high, facing the River about one Mile inward, but backwards some two Miles, all Pine Land but good Pasture Ground. We returned to our boat and proceeded down some two or three Leagues, where we had formerly viewed, and found it a tract of as good Land as any we have seen, and had as good Timber on it. The banks on the River being high, therefore we called it High-Land-Point. Having viewed that, we proceeded down the River, going on Shoar in several places on both sides, it being generally large Marshes, and many of them so dry that they may more fitly be called Meadows. The Woodland against them is for the most part Pine and in some Places as barren as ever we saw Land, but in other Places good Pasture Ground. On Tuesday November 17th we got aboard our Ship, riding against the Mouth of Green's River, where our Men were providing Wood, and fitting the ship for the Sea. In the Interim we took a view of the country on both sides of the river there, finding some Good Land but more Bad, and the best not comparable to that above. Friday the 20th was foul weather, yet in the afternoon we weighed went down the River, about two Leagues, and came to



an Anchor against the Mouth of Hilton River, and took a view of the Land there on both sides, which appeared to us much like that of Green's River. Monday the 23rd, we went with our long Boat well Victual'd and Mann'd, up Hilton's River, and when we came three Leagues or thereabouts up the same, we found this and Green's River to come into one, and so continu'd for four or five Leagues, which makes a great island betwixt them. We proceeded still up the river until they parted again, keeping up Hilton's River on the Larboard side, where we found another large branch of Green's River to come into Hilton's, which makes another great island. On the starboard side going up we proceeded still up the river some four leagues, and returned, taking a view of the Land on both sides, and then judged ourselves to be from our ship some 18 Leagues W. and by N. One League below this place came four Indians in a canoe to us, and sold us several Baskets of Acorns, which we satisfied them for and so left them; but one of them followed us on the Shore some two or three Miles, till he came on the top of a high bank, facing on the River, and as we row'd underneath it, the Fellow shot an Arrow at us, which very narrowly missed one of our Men and struck in the upper side of the boat, but broke in pieces, leaving the head behind. Thereupon we went all upon the shore (except four to guide the boat) to look for the Indian but could not find him. At last we heard some sing, farther in the Woods, which we looked upon as a challenge to us to come and fight them. We went towards them with all speed, but before we came in sight of them heard two guns go off from our Boat; whereupon we retreated as fast as we could to secure our Boat and Men. When we came to them we found all well, and

demande the reason of their firing the Guns; they told us that an Indian came creeping along the bank, as they supposed to shoot at them, therefore they shot him at a great distance, with small shot, but thought they did him no hurt, for they saw him run away. Presently after our return to the boat and while we were thus talking, came two Indians to us with their Arrows, crying Bonny, Bonny. We took their bows and arrows from them, and gave them beads to their content, then we led them by their hands to the boat and showed them the arrow head sticking in her side, and related to them the whole passage; which when they understood both of them showed a great Concern, and signed to us by signs that they knew nothing of it. So we let them go, and marked a tree on the top of the place, calling the Place Mount-Skerry. We looked up the river as far as we could discern, and saw that it widened and came running directly down the country. So we returned, viewing the Land on both sides the river, and finding the banks steep in some places, but very high in others. The bank-sides are generally clay, and as some of our Company did affirm, some Marl. The Land and Timber up this River is no way inferior to the best in the other, which we called the Main-River. So far as we could discern, this seemed as fair if not fairer than the former, and we think runs farther in the country, because a strong current comes down, and a great deal more drift wood. But to return to the business of the Land and Timber, we saw several plots of ground cleared by the Indians, after their weak manner, compassed round with timber trees, which they are no wise able to fell, and so keep the sun from corn fields very much; yet nevertheless we saw as large cornstalks or larger than we have seen anywhere

else; so we proceeded down the river until we found the Canoe the Indian was in, who shot at us. In the Morning we went on shoar and cut the same in pieces. The Indians perceiving us coming towards them ran away. Going to his Hut we pull'd it down and broak his pots and platters and spoons, and tore the Deer-skins and Mats in pieces, and took away a basket of acorns; and afterwards proceeded down the river two leagues, or thereabouts, and came to another place of Indians, bought Acorns and some Corn of them, and went downwards two leagues more. At last, espying an Indian peeping over a high bank, we held up a gun to him, and calling to him Skerry, presently several Indians came in sight to us, and made great signs of friendship, saying Bonny, Bonny. Then running before us they endeavored to persuade us to come on shoar, but we answered them with stern countenances, and called out Skerry, taking our guns and threatening to shoot at them, but they still cried Bonny, Bonny; and when they saw they could not prevail or persuade us to come on shoar, two of them came off to us in a Canoe, one paddling with a great Cain, the other with his hand. As soon as they overtook us, they laid hold of our boat, sweating and blowing, and told us it was Bonny on Shore, and at last persuaded us to go on shore with them. As soon as we landed, several Indians to the number of 40 lusty Men, came to us all in a great Sweat and told us Bonny: We showed them the arrowhead in the Boat side, and a piece of the Canoe we had cut in pieces. Whereupon the chief man amongst them made a long speech, threw beads into our boat, which is a great sign of love and friendship, and gave us to understand that when he heard of the affront which we had received, it caused him to cry; and that

he and his men were come to make peace with us, assuring us by signs that they would tye the Arms, and cut off the Head of the Fellow who had done us that wrong, and for a further testimony of their Love and Good-Will towards us, they presented us with two very handsome, proper young Indian Women, the tallest that ever we saw in this country; which we supposed to be the King's daughters or persons of some distinction among them. Those young women were so ready to come into our boat, that one of them crowded in and could hardly be persuaded to go out again. We presented the King with a hatchet and several beads, and made presents of beads also to the young women, chief men, and the rest of the Indians as far as our beads would go. They promised us in four days to come on board our ship, and so departed from us. When we left the place, which was soon after, we called it Mount Bonny, because we had there concluded a firm peace. Proceeding down from the River further, two or three Leagues, we came to a place where 9 or 10 Canoes were; we went ashore there and found several Indians, but most of them were the same which had made peace with us before. We stayed very little at that place, but went directly down the River and came to our Ship before day.

Thursday the 26th of November, the wind being at south, we could not go down the river's mouth, but on Friday the 27th, we weighed at the Mouth of Hilton's River, and got down a League towards the harbour's Mouth. On Tuesday the 21st of December we made a purchase of the River and Land of Cape Fair, of Wat-Coosa and such other Indians as appeared to us to be the chief of those parts. They brought us store of fresh Fish aboard, as Mulletts, Shads and other sort, very good.

This River is all fresh water, fit to drink. Some 8 Leagues within the Mouth, the tide runs up about 35 Leagues, but stops and rises a great deal further up. It flows at the Harbour's Mouth S. E. and N. W. 6 foot at Neap Tides, and 8 foot at Spring Tides. The Channel on the east side by the Cape-Shoar, is the best and lies close abroad the Cape-Land, being three Fathoms at highwater, in the shallowest part in the Channel, just at the entrance; but as soon as you are past that place, half a cable's length inward, you have 6 or 7 Fathoms, in others 4 or 5 and in others but 9 or 10 foot, especially where the river is broad. When the river comes to part and grows narrow, there it is all channel from side to side, in most places, tho' in some you shall have 5, 6 or 7 Fathoms, but generally 2 or 3, Sand and Ooze. We viewed the Cape-land and judged it to be little worth, the woods of it being shrubby and low, and the Land sandy and barren; in some places Grass and Rushes, in others nothing but clear sand. A Place fitter to starve Cattle in our judgment than to keep 'em alive, yet the Indians as we understand keep the English cattle down there, and suffer them not to go off the said Cape (as we suppose) because the country Indians shall have no part with them; and therefore 'tis likely they have fallen out about them, which shall have the greatest share. They brought on board our ship very good and fat Beef several times, which they sold us at a very reasonable price, also fat and very large Swine, good and cheap; but they may thank their friends of New England who brought their Hogs to so fair a Market. Some of the Indians brought very good Salt aboard us, and made signs pointing to both sides of the river's Mouth, that there was a great store thereabouts. We saw up the river several good places for the set-

ting up of Corn or Saw-Mills. In that time, as our business called us up and down the River and branches, we killed of wild fowl 4 Swan, 10 Geese, 29 Cranes, 10 Turkeys 40 Ducks and Mallards, 3 dozen of Parraketos and 6 dozen of other small fowls, as Curlews, and Plover, etc.

Whereas there was a writing left in a post, at the Point of Cape Fair River, by those New England Men, that left Cattle with the Indians there, the contents whereof tended not only to the Disparagement of the Land about the said River, but also to the great discouragement of all such as should hereafter come into those Parts to settle, in answer to that scandalous writing, we whose names are underwritten, do affirm that we have seen facing both sides of the River, and branches of the Cape-Fair aforesaid, as good land and as well timbered as any we have seen in other parts of the World, sufficient to accommodate thousands of our English Nation, and lying commodiously by the River's Side.

On Friday the 4th of December, the Wind being fair, we put out to Sea, bound for Barbados; and on the 6th of February 1663-4 came to an anchor in Carlisle Bay; it having pleased God after several apparent dangers both by Sea and Land to bring us all in safety to our long-wish'd-for and much desired Port; to render an account of our discovery; the Verity of which we do assert. Anthony Long. William Hilton. Peter Fabian.

Thus you have an account of the Latitude, Soil and Advantages of Cape Fair, or Clarendon River, which was settled in the year 1661, or thereabouts, and had it not been for the irregular practise of some of that Colony against the Indians, by sending away some of their children (as I have been told) under the pretence in instructing them in learning and the principles of the



Christian religion; which so disgusted the Indians, that tho' they had no guns, yet they never gave over until they had entirely rid themselves of the English, by their Bows and Arrows; which they did not only take off themselves, but also their Stocks of Cattle; and this was so much the more ruinous to them, in that they could have no assistance from South Carolina, which was not then planted; and the other Plantations were but in their Infancy. Were it not for such practise, I say it might in all probability have been, at this day, the best Settlement in their Lordship's great Province of Carolina.

The Sound of Albermarl, with the rivers and creeks of that country, afford a rich and durable soil. The Land in most places lies indifferent low, (except in Chuwon, and high up the Rivers) but bears an incredible Burden of Timber; the low grounds being covered with Beech, and the High-Land yielding Lofty Oaks, Walnut trees and other useful Timber. The Country in some Plantations has yearly produced Indian corn, or some other grain, ever since this country was first seated (yet to all appearance) it seems not to be in the least impoverish'd neither do the Planters ever miss of a good crop, unless a very unnatural season visits them, which seldom happens.

#### OF THE CORN OF CAROLINA.

The Wheat of this place is very good, seldom yielding less than thirty-fold, provided the Land is good where it is sown; Not but that there has been sixty-six Increase for one measure sown in Piny-Land, which we account the meanest sort. And I have been informed by people of Credit, that Wheat which was planted in very rich Land, brought a hundred and odd Pecks for one. If our Planters, when they found such great increase, would be so curious as to make nice Observations of the Soil, and other remarkable Accidents,

they would soon be acquainted with the nature of the earth and Climate, and be qualified to manage their Agriculture to more Certainty, and greater advantage; whereby they might arrive to the Crops and Harvests of Babylon, and those other fruitful countries so much talked of. For I must confess that I never saw one acre of Land Managed as it ought to be in Carolina, since I knew it; and were they as negligent in their Husbandry in Europe, as they are in Carolina, their Land would produce nothing but Weeds and Straw.

They have tried rye and it thrives very well; but having such plenty of Maiz, they do not regard it because it makes black bread, unless very curiously handled.

Barley has been sown in small quantities and does better than can be expected; because that grain requires the ground to be very well worked with repeated Ploughings, which our general Way of breaking the earth with hoes can, by no means, perform, tho' in several places we have a light, rich, deep, black Mould, which is the particular soil in which barley best thrives.

The naked Oats thrive extraordinary well, and the other would prove a very bold Grain, but the Plenty of other Grains makes them not much coveted.

The Indian corn or maiz proves the most useful grain in the world; and had it not been for the fruitfulness of this species, it would have proved very difficult to have settled some of the Plantations in America. It is very nourishing whether in bread, sodden or otherwise, and those poor Christian servants in Virginia, Maryland and the other northerly Plantations, that have been forced to live wholly upon it, do manifestly prove, that it is the most nourishing grain, for a man to subsist on, without any other victuals. And this assertion is made good by the negro slaves, who in many places eat nothing

except this Indian Corn and Salt. Pigs and Poultry fed with this grain prove the sweetest of all others. It refuses no ground except the barren sand, and when planted in good ground will repay the planter seven or eight hundred fold, besides the Stalks bruised and boiled, make very pleasant Beer, being sweet like the Sugar-Cane.

There are several sorts of rice, some bearded, others not, besides the red and white. But the white rice is the best; yet there is a sort of perfumed rice in the East Indies, which gives a curious flavour in the dressing. And with this sort America is not yet acquainted, neither can I learn that any of it has been brought over to Europe; the rice of Carolina being esteemed the best that comes to that Quarter of the World. It is of great increase, yielding from 800 to 1,000-fold, and thrives best in Wild Land, that has never been broken up before.

Buckwheat is of great increase in Carolina; but we make no other use of it than instead of Matz to feed Hogs and Poultry; and Guinea Corn, which thrives well here, serves for the same use.

Of the pulse kind, we have many sorts. The first is the Bushel-bean, which is a spontaneous Product. They are so called, because they bring a bushel of beans for one that is planted. They are set in the Spring round Arbours, or at the feet of poles, up which they will climb, and cover the Wattling, making a very pretty shade to sit under. They continue flowering, budding and ripening all the summer long, till the frost approaches, when they forbear their fruit and die. The stalks they grow on come to the thickness of a man's Thumb, and the bean is white and mottled, with a purple figure on each side of it, like an ear. They are very flat and eaten as the Windsor-Bean is, being an extraordinary well

relished Pulse, either by themselves or with Meat.

We have the Indian Rounceval, or Miraculous Pease, so called from their long pods and great increase. These are latter Pease, and require a pretty long summer to ripen in. They are very good and so are the Bonavis, Calavanicies and Kanticocks, besides several others of that kind.

Now I am launched into a Discourse of the Pulse, I must acquaint you that the European Bean planted here, will in time degenerate into a dwarfish sort, if not prevented by a yearly supply of foreign seed, and an extravagant rich soil; yet these Pigmy-Beans are the sweetest of that kind I ever met withal.

As for all the sorts of English Pease that we have yet made Tryal of, they thrive very well in Carolina. Particularly the white and grey Rounceval, the common field pease, and Sickle Pease yield very well, and are of a good relish. As for the other sorts I have not seen any made tryal of as yet, but question not their coming to great perfection with us.

The Kidney Beans were here before the English came, being very plentiful in the Indian Corn-Fields.

The garden roots that thrive well in Carolina, are Carrots, Leeks, Parsnips, Turneps, Potatoes of several delicate sorts, Ground-Artichokes, Radishes, Horse-Radish, Beets, both sorts, Onions, Shallot, Garlick, Cives, and the Wild-Onions.

The salads are the Lettice, Curl'd, Red, Cabbage, and Savoy. The spinage round and prickly, Fennell, sweet and the common sort, Samphire in the Marshes excellent, so is the dock or wild Rhubarb, Rocket, Sorrel, French and English Cresses of several sorts, Purslain Wild, and that of a larger size which grows in gardens, for this plant is never met withal in the Indian Plantations, and is therefore supposed

to proceed from Cow-dung, which beast they keep not. Parsley two sorts, Asparagus thrives to a miracle, without hot beds or dunging the Land, White Cabbage from New England or European Seed, for the people are negligent and unskilfull and don't take care to provide seed of their own. Colly-Flower we have not yet had an opportunity to make tryal of, nor has the Artichoke ever appeared amongst us that I can learn. Coleworts plain and curl'd, Savoy; besides the Watermelons of various sorts, very good, which should have gone amongst the fruits. Of Muskmelons we have very large and good, and several sorts of the Golden, Green, Guinea and Orange. Cucumbers long green and prickly, all these from the natural ground, and great increase without any helps of Dung or reflection. Pompions yellow and very large Burmillions, Cashaws, an excellent fruit boil'd; Squashes, Simnals, Horns, and Gourds, besides many other species of less value, too tedious to name.

Our pot herba and others of use, which we already possess, are Angelica wild and tame, Balm, Bugloss, Borage, Burnet, Clary, Marigold, pot Marjoram, and other Marjorams, summer and winter Savory, Columbines, Tansey, Wormwood, Nep, Mallows, several sorts, Drage red and white, Lambs Quarters, Thyme, Hyssop, of a very large growth, sweet Basil, Rosemary, Lavendar. The more Physical are Carduus Benedictus, the scurvy-grass of America, I never here met any of the European sort; Tobacco of many sorts, Dill, Carawa, Cummin, Anise, Coriander, all sorts of Plantain of England, and two sorts spontaneous, good Vulneraries; Elecampane, Comfrey, Nettle the seed from England, none native; Monks Rhubarb, Burdock, Asarum, wild in the woods, reckoned one of the Snake Roots, besides the common species, which

are great Antidotes against the Serpent's Bite, and are easily raised in the garden. Mint, Jamestown weed, so called from Virginia, the seed it bears is very like that of an Onion; it is excellent for curing burns, but taken inwardly brings on a sort of drunken madness.

#### THE PRESENT STATE OF CAROLINA.

When we consider the Latitude and Convenient Situation of Carolina, had we no further confirmation thereof, our Reason would inform us that such a place lay fairly to be a delicious country, being placed in that Girdle of the World which affords Wine, Oil, Fruit, Grain, and Silk, with other rich commodities, besides a Sweet Air, Moderate Climate, and Fertile Soil; these are the blessings (under Heaven's Protection) that spin out the thread of life to its utmost extent, and crown our days with the sweets of Health and Plenty, which when joined with content, render the Possessors the happiest Race of Men upon Earth.

The Inhabitants of Carolina thro' the richness of the soil, live an easy and Pleasant Life. The Land being of several sorts of Compost, some stiff, others light, some Marl, others rich black Mould; here barren of Pine but affording Pitch, Tar, Masts; there vastly rich, especially on the freshes of the River, one part bearing great Timbers, others being Savannas or natural Meads, where no Trees grow for several Miles, Adorned by Nature with a Pleasant Verdure, and beautiful Flowers, frequent in no other Places, yielding abundance of herbage for cattle, Sheep and Horses. The country in General affords pleasant seats, the land except in some few Places, being dry and high banks, parcell'd our into most convenient necks (by the Creeks) easy to be fenced in for securing their stock to more strict Boundaries whereby,



with a small trouble of fencing, almost every man may enjoy to himself an entire Plantation, or rather Park. These, with other Benefits of Plenty of Fish, Wild-fowl, Venison, and the other conveniences which this summer country naturally furnishes, has induced a great many families to leave the more Northerly Plantations and sit down under one of the mildest governments in the world; in a country that, with moderate Industry, will afford all the Necessaries of Life. We have yearly abundance of strangers come amongst us, who chiefly strive to go Southerly to settle, because there is a vast tract of rich Land betwixt the Place we are seated in, and Cape Fair and upon the River, and more Southerly which is inhabited by Indians, who are this time well affected to the English, and very desirous of their coming to live amongst them. The more Southerly the Milder Winters, with the advantage of purchasing the Lord's Land at the most easy and Moderate Rate of any Lands in America nay, (allowing all advantages thereto annexed) I may say the Universe does not afford such another; besides men have a great advantage of choosing good and Commodious Tracts of Land at the first seating of a Country or River, whereas the later settlers are forced to purchase smaller Dividends of the old Standers, and sometimes at very considerable rates, as now in Virginia and Maryland, where a thousand acres of good Land cannot be bought under 20 shillings an acre, besides two shillings every year in Acknowledgement of every 100 acres, besides which sum, be it more or less, will serve to put the Merchant or Planter here into a good posture of Buildings, Slaves and other Necessities when the purchase of his land comes to him on such easy terms; and as our grain and pulse thrive with us to admiration, no less do our flocks of

Horses, Cattle, Sheep and Swine multiply.

The beef of Carolina equalizes the best that our neighboring colonies afford; the oxen are of a greater size when they are suffered to live to a fit age. I have seen fat and good beef at all Times of the year, but October and the cool months are the seasons we kill our Beeves in, when we intend them for salting or exportation; for then they are in their Prime of Flesh, all coming from Grass, we never using any other food for our cattle. The Heifers bring Calves at eighteen or 20 months old, which makes such a wonderful increase that many of our Planters, from very mean beginnings, have raised themselves, and are now masters of hundreds of Fat Beeves and other Cattle.

The Veal is very good and white, so is the Milk very rich, there being at present considerable quantities of butter and cheese made that is very good, not only serving our own necessities, but we send out a great deal among our neighbors.

The Sheep thrive very well at present, having mostly commonly two lambs at one yeanning. As the country comes to be opened they prove to be better, change of pasture being agreeable to that useful creature. Mutton is (generally) exceedingly fat, and of a good Relish; their Wool is very fine and proves of Good Staple.

The Horses are well shaped and swift; the best of them would sell for 10 or 12 pounds in England. They prove excellent Drudges, and will travel incredible Journeys. They are troubled with very few Distempers, neither do the cloudy-faced grey horses go blind there, as in Europe. As for Snavins, Splints and Ring-Bones, they are here never met withal as I can learn. Were we to have our Stallions and choice of Mares from England, or any other of a

good sort, and careful to keep them on the Highlands, we could not fail of a good breed; but having been supplied with our first horses from a neighboring Plantation, which were but mean, they do not as yet come up to the excellency of the English Horse; tho' we generally find that the Colt exceeds in beauty and strength its Sire and Dam.

The Pork exceeds any in Europe, the great Diversity and Goodness of the Acorns and Nuts which the Woods afford, making the Flesh of an excellent taste, and produces great Quantities; so that if Carolina is not the chief it is not inferior, in this one Commodity, to any Colony in the hands of the English.

As for the Goats, they have been found to thrive and increase well, but being mischievous to orchards and other trees, makes people decline keeping them.

Our Produce for exportation to Europe and the Islands in America are Beef, Pork, Tallow, Hides, Deer-Skins, Furs, Pitch, Tar, Wheat, Indian Corn, Pease, Masts, Staves, Heading, Boards, and all sorts of Timber and Lumber for Madeira and the West Indies; Rozin, Turpentine, and several sorts of Gums and Tars, with some Medical Drugs, are produced here, besides Rice, and several other foreign grains, which thrive very well. Good Bricks and Tiles are made, besides several sorts of useful earths, as Bole, Fuller's Earth, Oaker, Tobacco-pipe Clay, in great plenty; Earths for the Potter's Trade, and fine sand for the Glass Maker. In building with bricks, we make our Lime of oyster-shells, tho' we have great store of Lime-stone, towards the Heads of our Rivers, where are stones of all sorts that are useful, besides vast quantities of useful Marble. Iron-stone we have plenty of, both in the Low-grounds and on the Hills; Lead and copper has been found, so

has Antimony heretofore; but no endeavors have been used to discover those Subteraneous species; otherwise we might in all probability, find out the best of minerals, which are not wanting in Carolina. Hot baths we have an account of from the Indians that frequent the Hill country, where a great likelihood appears of making salt-peter, because the earth in many places is, strongly mixed with a nitrous Salt, which is much coveted by the Beasts, who come at some seasons in great Drovers and Herds, and by their much licking of this earth, make great Holes in those banks, which sometimes lie at the heads of great Precipices where their eagerness after this salt hastens their end, by falling down the high banks, so that they are dashed into pieces. It must be confessed that the Most Noble and Sweetest Part of this Country is not inhabited by any but the Savages; and a great deal of the richest part thereof has no inhabitants but the Beasts of the Wilderness. For the Indians are not inclinable to settle in the Richest Land, because the Timbers are too large for them to cut down, and too much burdened with Wood for their Labourers to make Plantations of; besides, the Healthfulness of those Hills is apparent, by the Gigantick statue and the Gray Heads so common amongst the Savages that dwell near the Mountains; the great Creator of all Things, having most wisely diffused His Blessings, by parcelling out the Vintages of the World, into such lots, as His wonderful foresight thought most proper, requisite and convenient for the Habitations of His creatures. Towards the Sea, we have the Conveniency of Trade, transportation, and other Helps the Water affords, but oftentimes these Advantages are attended with indifferent Land, a thick Air, and other Inconveniences, when backwards near the

Mountains, you meet with the Richest Soil, a sweet, thin air, dry Roads, pleasant small murmuring streams, and several beneficial productions, and species which are unknown in the European World. One part of this country affords what the other is wholly a stranger to.

We have Chalybeate Waters of several Tastes and different Qualities; some purge, other work by the other emunctories. We have amongst the inhabitants a Water that is inwardly a great Aperive, and outwardly cures Ulcers, Tetters, and Sores, by washing therein.

There has been a Coal-Mine lately found near the Mannakin Town, above the Falls of James River in Virginia, which proves very good, and is used by the Smiths for their Forges; and we need not doubt of the same amongst us, towards the heads of our Rivers, but the plenty of wood, which is much better than our fuel, makes us not inquisitive after Coal-Mines. Most of the French who lived at that town on James River, are removed to Trent River, in North Carolina, where the rest were expected daily to come to them, when I came away, which was in August, 1708. They are much taken with the pleasantness of that country, and indeed, are a very industrious people. At present they make very good linen Cloath, and Thread, and are very well versed in cultivating Hemp and Flax, of both which they raise very considerable quantities; and design to try an essay of the Grape, for making of Wine.

As for those of our own country in Carolina, some of the Men are very Laborious, and make great Improvements in their way; but I dare hardly give 'em the character in General. The easy way of living in that Plentiful Country, makes a great many Planters very negligent, which, were they other-

wise, the Colony might now have been in a far better condition than it is as to trade and other advantages which universal industry would have led them into.

The Women are the most Industrious Sex in that place, and by their good Housewifry, make a good deal of Cloath of their own cotton, Wool and Flax; some of them keeping their families (though large) very decently apparell'd, both with linnens and Woolens, so that they have no occasion to run into the Merchant's debt, or lay their Money out on stores for cloathing.

The Christian Natives of Carolina are a straight, clean-limbed People; the Children being seldom or never troubled with Rickets, or those other distempers that the Europeans are visited withal. 'Tis next to a Miracle to see one of them deformed in body. The vicinity of the Sun makes no impression on Men, who labour out of doors or use the Waters. As for those Women who do not expose themselves to the Weather, they are often very Fair, and generally as Well-Featured as you shall see anywhere, and have very brisk charming eyes, which sets them off to advantage. They marry very young, some at thirteen and fourteen; and she that stays until twenty is reckoned a Stale Maid; which is a very indifferent character in that warm country. The Women are very fruitful, most of the Houses being full of little ones. It has been observed that women long married, and without children in other places, have removed to Carolina and become Joyful Mothers. They have very easy Travail in their Child-bearing, in which they are so happy, as seldom to miscarry. Both sexes are generally spare of body, and not Cholerick, nor easily cast down at disappointments and losses, seldom immoderately grieving at misfortunes,



unless for the loss of their nearest Relations and Friends, which seems to make a more than ordinary impression upon them. Many of the Women are very handy in Canoes, and will manage them with great Dexterity and Skill, which they become accustomed to in this Watery Country. They are ready to help their Husbands in any Servile Work, as Planting when the season of the weather requires Expedition; Pride seldom preventing Good Housewifery. The girls are not bred up to the wheel and Sewing only, but the dairy and affairs of the House they are very well acquainted withal; so that you shall see them whilst very young, manage their business with a great deal of Conduct and Alacrity. The children of both Sexes are very docile, and learn anything with a great deal of ease and Method, and those that have the advantage of education, write good hands and prove good accountants; which is most Coveted, and indeed most necessary in these Parts. The young men are commonly of a bashful sober behaviour; few proving prodigals to consume what the industry of their parents has left them, but commonly improve it. The marrying so young carries a double advantage with it; that is that the parents see their children provided for in marriage; and the young married people are taught by their Parents, how to get their living; for their Admonitions make great impressions on their children. I have heard, (before I knew this New World) that the Natives of America were a short-lived people, which by all the observations I could ever make, proves quite contrary; for those who are born here, and in other colonies, live to as great ages as any of the Europeans, the Climate being free from consumption, which distemper, so fatal to England, they are strangers to. And as the country becomes more cleared of

wood, it still becomes more Healthful to the Inhabitants, unless addicted to the Ague; which is incident to most new-comers in America from Europe, yet not mortal. A gentle Emetick seldom misses of driving it away, but if it is not too troublesome, 'tis better to let the seasoning have its own course, in which case the party is commonly free from it ever after and very Healthful.

And now, as to the other Advantages the Country Affords, we do not guess at them at present, because as I said before, the best part of this country is not inhabited by the English, from whence probably will hereafter spring productions that this age does not dream of, and of much more advantage to the inhabitants than any things we are yet acquainted withal. And as for several productions of other countries, much in the same latitude, we may expect with good management, they will become familiar to us, as Wine, Oil, Fruit, Silk, and other profitable commodities, such as Drugs, Dyes, etc. And at present the curious may have a large field to satisfy, and divert themselves in as collections of strange Beasts, Birds, Insects, Reptiles, Shells, Fishes, Minerals, Herbs, Flowers, Plants, Shrubs, intricate Roots, Gums, Tars, Rozins, Dyes, Stones, with several others that yield Satisfaction and Profit to those whose inclinations tend that Way. And as for what may be hoped for, towards a Happy Life and Being, by such as design to move thither, I shall add this: That with prudent management, I can affirm by experience, with a small beginning one may live very comfortable, and not only provide for the necessaries of life, but likewise for those who are to succeed to him. Provisions being very plentiful, and of Good Variety; to accommodate genteel Housekeeping, and the neighbouring Indians are friendly

in many cases and serviceable to us, in making us Wares to catch fish in, for a small matter, which proves of great advantage to large families, because those engines take great quantities of many sorts and kinds of fish, which are very good and nourishing: Some of them Hunt and Fowl for us at reasonable rates, the country being as plentifully provided with all sorts of Game as any Part of America; the poorer sort of Planters often get them to Plant for them, by hiring them for that season, or for so much work, which commonly comes very reasonable. Moreover, it is remarkable, that no place on the Continent of America, has seated an English Colony so free from bloodshed as Carolina, but all the others have been more Damaged and Disturbed by the Indians, than they have, which is worthy of notice, when we consider how oddly it was first planted with inhabitants.

The Fishing-Trade in Carolina might be carried on to a great advantage, considering how many sorts of excellent fish our Sounds and Rivers afford, which cure very well with salt, as has been experienced by some small quantities, which have been sent abroad and yield a good price. As for the whale fishing, it is no otherwise regarded than by a few People who live on the Sand Banks, and those only work on dead fish cast ashore, none being struck on our coast, as they are to the Northward, although we have plenty of Whales there. Great Plenty is generally the ruin of Industry. Thus our Merchants are not many, nor have those few there be, applied themselves to the European trade. The Planter sits contented at home, whilst his oxen thrive and grow fat, and his stocks daily increase; the fatted Porkers and Poultry are easily raised to his Table, and his orchard affords him Liquor, so that he eats and drinks away the

cares of the world, and desires no other Happiness than that which he daily enjoys. Whereas not only the European, but also the Indian trade might be carried on to a great Profit, because we lie as fairly for the body of Indians, as any settlement in English-America. And as for the small trade that has been carried on in that way, the Dealers therein have thrived as fast as any men, and the soonest raised themselves of any people I have known in Carolina.

Lastly, as to the climate it is very healthful; our summer is not so Hot as in other places, to the Eastward, in the same Latitude, neither are we ever visited by any Earthquakes, as many places in Italy and other Southern Countries are. Our northerly winds in summer cool the air, and free us from pestilent fevers, which Spain, Barbary, and the neighboring countries in Europe, etc., are visited withal. Our Sky is generally Serene and Clear, and the Air very Thin, in comparison with many parts of Europe, where the Consumptions and Catarrhs reign among the Inhabitants. The Winter has several fits of sharp weather, especially when the Wind is at N. W. which always clears the sky, tho' never so thick before. However such weather is very agreeable to European Bodies, and makes them Healthy. The N. E. Winds blowing in Winter, bring with them thick weather, and in the spring sometimes Blight the Fruit; but they very seldom endure long, being blown away by westerly winds, and then all becomes fair and clear again. Our Spring in Carolina is very beautiful, and the most pleasant weather a person can enjoy. The Fall is accompanied with cool mornings, which come in toward the latter end of August and so continue with (most commonly) very moderate weather, till about Christmas; when the Winter comes on apace. Tho' these

seasons are very piercing, yet the cold is of no continuance. Perhaps you will have Cold Weather for three or four days at a time, then pleasant Warm Weather follows, such as you have in England, about the latter end of April or beginning of May. In the year 1707 we had the severest winter in Carolina, that ever was known since the English came to settle there; for our Rivers that were not above half a Mile wide, and fresh waters, were frozen over; and some of them in the north part of this Country were passable for people to walk over.

One of the Great Advantages of North Carolina, is that we are not a Frontier, and near the Enemy; which proves very Chargeable and Troublesome in Time of War to those Colonies that are so seated. Another great advantage comes from its being near Virginia, where we come often to a Good Market, at the return of the Guinea Ships for Negro's and the Remnant of their Stores, which is very Commodious for the Indian trade, besides at War-Time we lie near at hand to go under their Convoy and to sell our Provisions to the Tobacco Fleets; for the Planting of Tobacco generally in those Colonies prevents their being supplied with stores, sufficient for victualling their Ships.

As for the Commodities which are necessary to carry over to this Plantation, for use and merchandize, and are therefore requisite for those to have along with them, that intend to transport themselves thither; they are Guns, Powder and Shot, Flints, Linnens, of all sorts, but chiefly ordinary Blues, Osnabrugs, Scotch and Irish Linnens, and some fine, Mens and Womens Cloaths ready made up, some few Broadcloths, Kerseys, and Druggets, to which you must add Haberdashers-Wares, Hats about five or six shillings apiece, and few finer; a few wigs, not

long and pretty thin hair, thin stuffs for Women, Iron Works, as Nails, Spades, Axes, broad and narrow Hoes, Frows, Wedges, and Saws of all sorts, with other Tools for Carpenters, Joiners, and Coopers, Shoemakers, Shave-locks, etc., all which and others which are necessary for the Plantations, you may be informed of, and buy at very reasonable rates, of Mr. James Gilbert, Ironmonger, in Mitre-Tavern-Yard near Aldgate. You may also be used very kindly for your Cuttlery-Ware, and other advantageous merchandizes, and your Cargo's well sorted, by Capt. Sharp, at the Blue Gate in Cannon street; and for Earthen-Ware, Window glass, Grindstones, Mill stones, Paper, Ink-Powder, Saddles, Bridles, and what other things you are minded to take with you, for pleasure or ornament.

And now I shall proceed to the rest of the vegetables, that are common in Carolina, in reference to the Place where I left off, which is the natural history of that country.

#### OF THE VEGETABLES OF CAROLINA.

The Spontaneous shrubs of this Country are the Larkheel Tree, three sorts of honey-suckle tree, the first of which grows in Branches as our Piemonto-Tree does, that is always in low, moist ground, and the other grows in Clear, moist Land, the Flower more cut and Lacerated; the third, which is the most beautiful, and I think the most charming flower of its colour, I ever saw, grows betwixt two and three foot high, and for the most part by the side of a swampy wood, or on the banks of our Rivers, but never near the salt water. All the sorts are white; the last grows in a great bunch of Honeysuckles, set up on one chief stem, and is commonly the bigness of a large turnip. Nothing can appear more beautiful than these, when in their splendour, which



is in April and May. The next is the Honeysuckle of the Forest; it grows about a foot high, bearing its flowers on small Pedestals, several of them standing on the Main Stock, which is the thickness of a Wheat-Straw. We have also the Wood-bind, much the same as in England, Princes-Feather, very large and beautiful in the Garden; Tres-Colores, branched Sun-flowers. Double Poppies, Lupines, of several pretty sorts, spontaneous; and the Sensitive plant is said to be near the Mountains, which I have not yet seen. Saf-Flowers; (and I believe the Saffron Flower of England would thrive here if planted) the yellow Jessimin is wild in our woods, of a pleasant smell; Evergreens are here plentifully found, of a very quick growth, and pleasant shade; Cypress or white Cedar, the Pitch Pine, the Yellow Pine, the white Pine with long leaves; and the smaller Almond Pine, which lasts bears Kernels in the Apple, tasting much like an Almond; and in some years there falls such plenty, as to make the Hogs fat; Horn Beam; Cedar, two sorts; Holly, two sorts; Bay-tree, two sorts; one of the dwarf-bay about 12 foot high; the other the bigness of a middling Pine-Tree, about two foot and a half Diameter; Laurel Trees, in Height equalizing the lofty Oaks; the berries and Leaves of the trees dye a yellow; the Bay trees yield a wax, which besides its use in Chirurgery, makes candles that in burning gave a fragrant smell. The Cedar-berries are infused, and made beer of, by the Bermudians, they are Carminative, and much of the quality of Juniper berries; Yew and Box I never saw or heard of in this country; there are two sorts of Myrtles, different in Leaf and Berry; the berry yields wax that makes candles, the most lasting and of the sweetest smell imaginable. Some mix half tallow with this wax, others use it

without mixture, and these are fit for a lady's chamber, and incomparable to pass the line withal and other hot countries, because they will stand when others will melt by the excessive heat down in the Binnacles; Evergreen Oaks, two sorts, and very plentiful and growing always in a low swampy ground, and amongst Ponds. We have a Prim or Privet, which grows on the dry, barren, sandy hills, by the sound side; it bears a smaller sort than in England, and grows in a round bush, very beautiful. Last of bushes (except Savine, which grows everywhere wild) is the famous Yaupon, of which I find two sorts if not three. I shall speak first of the nature of this Plant. It grows the most like box, of any Vegetable that I know, being very like in leaf, only dented exactly like Tea, but the Leaf somewhat flatter. I cannot say whether it bears any flowers, but a berry it does, about the bigness of a grain of Pepper, being first red, then brown when ripe, which is in December. Some of these bushes grow to be 12 foot high, others are three or four. The Wood thereof is brittle as Myrtle, and affords a light ash-colored bark. There is sometimes found of it in swamps and rich low grounds, which has the same figured leaf, only it is larger and of a deeper green. This may be confirmed by the richness that attends the Low Grounds thus situated. The third sort has the same leaf, but never grows a foot High, and is found both in rich low land, and on the Sand Hills. I don't know that I ever found any seed or berries on the dwarfish sort, yet I find no difference in taste, when the infusion is made. Cattle and Sheep delight in this Plant very much, and so do the Deer, all which crop it very short, and browse thereon whensoever they meet with it. I have transplanted the sandbank and dwarfish Yaupon,

and find that the first year the shrubs stood at a stand, but the second year they thrive as well as in their native soil. This plant is the Indian Tea, used and approved by all the Savages on the coast of Carolina, and from them sent to the Westward Indians, and sold at a considerable price; all which they cure after the same way as they do for themselves which is thus: They take this Plant (not only the leaves but the smaller twigs along with them) and bruise it in a mortar until it becomes blackish, the leaf being wholly defaced. Then they take it out and put it into one of their Earthen Pots which is over the Fire until it smokes, stirring it all the time until it is cured. Others take it after it is bruised and put it in a bowl, into which they put live coals, and cover them with the Yaupon, till they have done smoaking, often turning them over. After all they spread it upon their mats, and dry it in the sun and keep it for Use. The Spaniards in New Spain have this plant very plentiful on the coast of Florida, and hold it in great esteem. Sometimes they cure it as Indians do, or else beat it to a Powder, so mix it as coffee; yet before they drink it they filter the same. They prefer it above all Liquids to drink with Physick, to carry the same safely and speedily thro' the passage, for which it is admirable, as I myself have experienced.

In the next place I shall speak of the Timber that Carolina affords, which is as follows:

Chestnut-Oak; it is a very lofty tree, clear of Boughs and Limbs for 50 or 60 foot. They bear sometimes four or five foot through, all clear timber, and are the largest Oaks we have, yielding the fairest Plank. They grow chiefly in lowlands, that is stiff and rich. I have seen of them so high that a good gun could not reach a turkey, tho'

loaded with Swan-Shot. They are called chestnuts because of the largeness and sweetness of the acorns.

White, Scaly-Bark Oak. This is used as the former in building Sloops and Ships. Tho' it bears a large acorn, yet it never grows to the Bulk and height of the Chestnut Oak. It is so called because of a scaly, broken, white-bark, that covers this tree, growing on dry land.

We have Red-Oaks; sometimes in good land very large and lofty. 'Tis a porous wood, and used to rive into rails for Fences. 'Tis not very durable; yet some use this as well as the two former, for pipe and barrel Staves. It makes good Clap-Boards.

White Oak is free to rive, bears a whitish smooth Bark; and rives very well into Clap-Boards. It is accounted durable, therefore some use to build vessels with it for the sea; it proving well and durable. These all give good mast for the Swine.

Bastard-Spanish is an Oak betwixt the Spanish and Red-Oak; the chief use is for fencing and clap-boards. It bears good Acorns.

The next is Black-Oak, which is esteemed a durable wood, under water; but sometimes it is used in House-work. It bears a good mast for Hogs.

White Iron or Ring oak is so called from the durability and lasting quality of this Wood. It chiefly grows on clean, dry ground, and seldom fails of bearing a plentiful crop of acorns. The Wood is found to be very durable and is esteemed to be the best Oak for ship-work that we have in Carolina; for tho' live Oak be more lasting, yet it seldom allows planks of any considerable length.

Turkey Oak is so called from a small acorn it bears, which the wild Turkeys feed on.

Live-Oak chiefly grows on dry, sandy, Knolls. This is an evergreen, and the

most durable Oak all America affords. The shortness of this wood's boll, or trunk, makes it unfit for plank to build ships withal. There are some few trees that would allow a stock of 12 foot, but the firmness and great weight thereof frightens our sawyers from the great fatigue that attends the cutting of this Timber. A Nail once driven therein, 'tis next to an impossibility to draw it out. The limbs thereof are so curved that they serve for excellent Timbers, Knees, etc., for vessels of any sort. The Acorns thereof are as sweet as Chestnuts, and the Indians draw an Oil from them as sweet as that from the Olive, tho' of an Amber colour. With these nuts or Acorns, some have counterfeited the Cocoa, whereof they have made Chocolate, not to be distinguished by a good Palate, Window Frames, Mallets, and Pins for Blocks are made thereof to an excellent purpose. I knew two trees of this kind among the Indians, which were planted from the Acorn, and grew in the Freshes, and I never saw anything more beautiful of that sort. They are of an indifferent quick growth, of which there are two sorts. The Acorns make very fine Pork.

Willow Oak is a sort of Water Oak. It grows in Ponds and Branches, and is useful for many things. It is so called from the leaf, which very much resembles the Willow.

The Live Oak grows in the Fresh-water Ponds and Swamps by the riversides, and in low ground overflowed with Water, and is perennial Green.

Of Ash we have two sorts, agreeing nearly with the English in the grain. One of our sorts is tough like the English, but differs something in the leaf, and much more in the bark. Neither of them bears Keys. The Water-Ash is brittle. The bark is food for the Beavers.

There are two sorts of Elm. The

first grows on our highland and approaches our English. The Indians take the bark of its root and beat it whilst green to a pulp, and then dry it in the Chimney, where it becomes of a reddish colour. This they use as a Sovereign Remedy to heal a cut or green Wound, or anything that is not corrupted. It is of a Glutinous Quality. The other Elm grows in low ground, of whose bark the English and Indians make ropes; for as soon as the sap rises, it strips off with the greatest ease imaginable. It runs in March or thereabouts.

The Tulip-Trees, which are by the Planters called Poplars, and are nearest approaching that wood in grain, grow to a prodigious Bigness, some of them having been found one and twenty foot in Circumference. I have been informed of a Tulip Tree that was ten foot in Diameter, another wherein a lusty man had his bed and household furniture, and lived in it until his labour got him a more Fashionable Mansion. He afterwards became a noted man in his country for Wealth and Conduct. One of these sorts bears a white tulip, the other a parti-colour'd mottled one. The Wood makes a very pretty Wainscot, Shingles for Houses, and Planks for several Uses. It is reckoned very lasting, especially underground for mill-work. The Buds, made into an ointment, cure Scalds, Inflammations and Burns. I saw several bushels thereof. The cattle are apt to eat these buds, which give a very odd taste to the Milk.

Beech is here frequent and very large. The grain seems exactly the same as that in Europe. We make little use thereof, except for fire use. 'Tis not a durable timber. It affords a very sweet nut, yet the Pork fed thereon (tho' sweet) is very oily, and ought to be hardened with Indian Corn, before



it is killed. Another sort called Buck-Beech is here found.

Horn-Beam grows in some places very plentifully, yet the very plenty of the Wood makes it unregarded.

The virtues of Sassafras are well known in Europe. This wood sometimes grows to be above two feet over, and is very durable and lasting, used for bowls, timbers, posts and houses, and other things that require standing in the ground. 'Tis very light. It bears a white flower, which is very Cleansing to the Blood, being eaten in the Spring with other Sallating. The berry when ripe is black; 'tis very oily, Carminative, and extremely prevalent in Clysters for the Colick. The Bark of the Root is a Specifick to those affected with Gripes. The same in Powder and a lotion made thereof is much used by the Savages to mundify old Ulcers, and for several other uses; being highly esteemed among them.

Dog-Wood is plentiful on our light land; inclining to a rich soil, it flowers the first in the Woods; its white blossoms making the Woods very beautiful. It has a fine grain and serves for several uses, within doors; but it is not durable. The bark of this root infused is held an infallible Remedy against the Worms.

Laurel, before mentioned; as to its bigness and use I have seen Planks sawn of this wood, but 'tis not found durable in the Weather, yet pretty enough for many uses.

Bay and Laurel generally delight in a low, swampy ground. I know no use they make of them, but for fire-wood, excepting what I spoke of before, amongst the evergreens.

A famous Evergreen I must now mention, which was forgotten amongst the rest. It is in leaf like a Jessimin, but larger, and of a hardier nature. This grows up to a large Vine, and twists itself around the trees it grows

near, making a very fine shade. I never saw anything of that nature outdo it, and if it be cut away close to the ground, it will presently spring up again, it being impossible to destroy it, when once it has got a root. 'Tis an ornamental Plant, and worth the Transplanting. Its seed is a black-berry.

The Scarlet Trumpet Vine bears a glorious red flower, like a bell or trumpet, and makes a shade inferior to none that ever I saw, yet it leaves us when the spring comes and remains naked till the next spring. It bears a large Cod that holds its seed.

The Maycock bears a glorious flower, and apple of an agreeable sweet, mixed with an acid taste. This is also a summer vine.

The Indico grows plentifully in our quarters.

The Bay-Tulip Tree is a fine evergreen, which grows frequently here.

The Sweet-Gum Tree, so called because of the fragrant Gum it yields in the Spring Time upon incision of the bark or wood. It cures the Herpes and Inflammations, being applied to the Morpew and Tettars. 'Tis an extraordinary Balsam, and of great value to those who know how to use it. No wood has scarce a better grain; whereof fine Tables, Drawers, and other Furniture might be made. Some of it is curiously curled. It bears a round bur with a sort of prickle, which is the seed.

Of the Black-Gum there grows with us two sorts, both fit for Cart-Naves. The one bears a black, well tasted berry, which the Indians mix with their Pulse and Soups, it giving them a pretty flavour and scarlet colour. The Bears crop these trees, for the berries which they mightily covet, yet killed in that season they eat very unfavorably; which must be occasioned by this fruit, because at other times when they

feed on Mast, Bear's-Flesh is very well-tasted food. The other gum bears a berry in shape like the other, tho' bitter and ill tasted. This tree (the Indians report) is never wounded by lightning. It has no certain Grain, and is almost impossible to spit or rive it.

The White-Gum, bearing a sort of long-bunched flower, is the most curled and knotted wood I ever saw, which would make curious furniture in case it was handled by a good workman.

The red sort of Cedar is an Evergreen, of which Carolina affords Plenty. That on the Salts, growing generally on the Sand-banks; and that in the Freshes is found in the Swamps. Of this wood Tables, Wainscots, and other necessities are made, and esteemed for its sweet smell. It is as durable a Wood as any we have, therefore much used in Posts for Houses and Sills; likewise to build Sloops, Boats, etc., by reason the Worm will not touch it for several years. The Vessels built thereof are very durable and good swimmers. Of this Cedar shiploads may be exported. It has been heretofore so plentiful in this settlement that they have fenced in Plantations with it, and the Coffins of the dead are generally made thereof.

White-Cedar, so called, because it nearly approaches the other Cedar in smell, bark and leaf, only this grows taller, being as straight as an arrow. It is extraordinarily light and free to rive. 'Tis good for Yard, Top-Masts, Booms and Boltsprits, being very tough. The best shingles for houses are made of this Wood, it being no strain to the roof and never rots. Good pails and other vessels, free from leakage, are likewise made thereof. The Bark of this and the Red Cedar the Indians use to make their Cabins of, which prove firm and resist all weathers.

Cypress is not an Evergreen with us,

and is therefore called the Bald Cypress, because the leaves during the winter season turn red, not recovering their verdure until the spring. These trees are the largest for height and thickness that we have in this part of the world, some of them holding 36 foot in Circumference. Upon incision they yield a sweet-smelling grain, tho' not in great quantities; and the nuts which these trees bear plentifully yield a most odoriferous Balsam, that infallibly cures all new and green Wounds, which the Inhabitants are well acquainted withal. Of these great Trees the Pereaugers and Canoes are scooped and made; which sort of Vessels are chiefly to pass over the Rivers, Creeks and Bays, and to transport Goods and Lumber from one river to another with. Some are so large as to carry 30 barrels, tho' of one entire piece of Timber. Others that are split down the bottom and a piece added thereto will carry eighty or an hundred. Several have gone out of our inlets on the Ocean to Virginia, laden with Pork and other Produce of the Country. Of these trees curious boats for pleasure may be made, and other necessary Craft. Some years ago a foolish man in Albemarle and his son had got one of these Canoes decked. She held as I take it 15 barrels. He brought her to the collectors to be cleared for Barbados; but the officer took him for a man that had lost his senses, and argued the danger and impossibility of performing such a voyage in a hollow tree; but the fellow would hearken to no advice of that kind until the gentleman told him if he did not value his own life, he valued his reputation and honesty, and so flatly refused clearing him; upon which the canoe was sold, and I think remains in being still. This wood is very lasting and free from the rot. A Canoe of it will outlast four boats, and seldom wants

repair. They say a chest made of this wood will suffer no Moth, or Vermine to abide therein.

The Locust, for its enduring the weather, is chosen for all sorts of work that are exposed to it. It bears a leaf nearest the Liquorice Plant. 'Tis a pretty tall tree. Of this the Indians make their choicest bows, it being very tough and flexible. We have little or none of this wood in Pamticough.

The Honey-Tree bears as great a resemblance to the Locust, as a Shallot does to an Onion. It is of that species, but more prickly. They bear a Cod, one side whereof contains the Seed; the other the Honey. They will bear in five years from the Kernel. They were first brought (by the Indian Traders) and propagated by their seed, at the Apamatricks in Virginia. Last year I planted the seed, and had them sprung up before I came from thence, which was in August. Of the Honey very good Metheglin is made, there being orchards planted in Virginia for that intent.

The Sorrel, or Sowr-Wood Tree, is so called because the Leaves taste like Sorrel. Some are about a foot or ten inches in diameter. I am unacquainted with its Vertues at present.

Of pines there are in Carolina at least four sorts. The Pitch Pine growing to a great Bigness, most commonly has but a short Leaf. Its Wood being replete with abundance of Bitumen, is so durable that it seems to suffer no decay, tho' exposed to all weathers, for many ages; and is used in several domestic and plantation uses. This tree affords the four great necessities, Pitch, Tar, Rozin and Turpentine; which two last are extracted by tapping and the heat of the Sun, the other two by the heat of the Fire.

The white and yellow pines are sawed into Planks for several uses. They make Masts, Yards, and a great

many other necessities therewith, the Pine being the most useful tree in the woods.

The Almond Pine serves for Masts very well. As for the Dwarf-Pine, it is for shew alone, being an evergreen, as they all are.

The Hicory is of the Walnut kind and bears a nut, as they do, of which there are some three sorts. The first is that which we call the common White Hicory. It is not a durable wood for if cut down and exposed to the weather it will be quite rotten, and spoiled in three years; as will likewise the Beech of this country. Hicory nuts have very hard shells, but excellent sweet kernels, with which, in a plentiful year the old Hogs that can crack them, fatten themselves and make excellent Pork. These Nuts are gotten in great quantities by the Savages, and laid up for stores, of which they make several dishes and Banquets. One of these I cannot forbear mentioning; it is this; they take these Nuts and break them very small betwixt two stones, till the shells and kernels are indifferent small; and this powder you are presented withal in their Cabins, in little Wooden dishes; The kernel dissolves in your Mouth and the shell you spit out. This tastes as well as any Almond. Another dish is the soup which they make of these Nuts, beaten and put in Venison broth, which dissolves the nut, and thickens, whilst the shell precipitates, and remains at the bottom. This broth tastes very rich. There is another sort which we call red Hicory, the heart thereof being very red, firm and durable; of which Walking-Sticks, Mortars, Pestils, and several other fine Turnery-wares are made. The third is called the Flying-Bark Hicory, from its brittle and scaly Bark. It bears a Nut with a bitter Kernel, and soft shell like a French Walnut, Of this



wood, Coggs for Mills are made, etc. The leaves smell very fragrant.

The Walnut tree of America is called Black Walnut. I suppose that name was at first to distinguish it from the hiccories, it having a blacker bark. This tree grows in a good land to a prodigious bigness. The Wood is very firm and durable, of which tables and chests of drawers are made, and prove very well. Some of this is very knotty, which would make the best returns for England, tho' the masters of vessels refuse it, not understanding its goodness. 'Tis a very good and durable wood, to bottom vessels for the Sea withal; and they say that it is never eaten by the Worm. The Nuts have a large Kernel which is very oily, except lain by a long time to mellow. The shell is very thick, as all the Native Nuts of America are. When it has its yellow outward coat on it looks and smells much like a lemon.

The Maple, of which we have two sorts, is used to make Trenchers, Spinning-wheels, etc., withal.

Chinkapin is a sort of Chestnut whose nuts are commonly very plentiful, insomuch that the Hogs get fat with them. They are rounder and smaller than a chestnut, but much sweeter. The wood is much of the nature of Chestnut, having a leaf and grain almost like it. It is used to timber Boats, Shallops, etc. and makes anything that is to endure the weather. This and the Hickory are very tough Rods used to whip Horses withal; yet their Wood in substance is very brittle. This tree the Vine much delights to twist about. It's good firewood, but very sparkling, as Sassafras.

The Birch grows on the Banks of our Rivers, very high up. I never saw a Tree on the Salts. It differs something, in Bark, from the European Birch. Its Buds in April are eaten by

the Parrakeetes, which resort, from all Parts, at that Season, to feed thereon. Where this wood grows, we are not yet seated, and as to the Wine or other Profits it would yield, we are, at present, Strangers to.

The Willow, here, likewise differs both in Bark and Leaf. It is frequently found on the Banks of fresh Water, as the Birch is.

The Sycamore, in these Parts, grows in a low, swampy Land, by Riversides. Its Bark is quite different from the English, and the most beautiful I ever saw, being mottled and clouded with several colours, as white, blue, etc. It has no Keys, but a Bur like the Sweet-Gum. Its Uses I am ignorant of.

I never saw any Aspin, but in Rapahanock-River, from where I brought one (that was presented me there as a great Present), but it died by the way.

Of Holly we have two sorts; one having a large Leaf, the other a smaller. They grow very thick in our low woods. Many of them are very straight, and two foot diameter. They make good Trenches, and other Turnery ware.

The Red-Bud Tree bears a purple Lark-Heel, and is the best sallad of any Flower I ever saw. It is ripe in April and May. They grow on trees generally small, but some are a foot Diameter.

Pelletory grows on the banks and islands. It is used to cure the tooth-ache by putting a piece of the bark in the Mouth, which being very hot draws a Rhume from the Mouth and causes much spittle. The Indians use it to make their Composition, which they give to their young men and Boys when they are Husquenaw'd, of which you shall hear further when I come to treat of the customs, etc. of that people.

Arrow-Wood growing on the Banks

is used by the Indians, for arrows and gun-sticks. It grows as straight as if planed, and is of all sizes. 'Tis as tough and pliable as the smallest canes.

The Chestnut Tree of Carolina grows up towards the hilly Part thereof, is a very large and durable wood, and fit for houseframes, Palisado's, Sills, and many other uses. The nut is smaller than those from Portugal, but sweeter.

This is no tree but called the Oak-Vine, by reason it bears a sort of Bur as the Oak does, and generally runs up those trees. It's so porous, that you suck liquors tho' a length of two foot.

Prickly-Ash grows up like a Pole; of which the Indians and English make poles, to set their Canoes along in Shoal water. Its very light and full of thorns or Prickles, bearing berries in large clusters, of a purple colour, not much unlike the alder. The root of this tree is Cathartick and Emetick, used in Cachexias.

The Poisin vine is so called because it colours the hands of those who handle it. What the effects of it may be I cannot relate; neither do I believe that any has made an experience thereof. The juice of this will stain Linnen never to wash out. It marks a blackish blue colour, which is done only by breaking a bit of the Vine off, and writing what you please therewith. I have thought that the East India Natives set their colours by some such means into their Callicoës. It runs up any tree it meets withal and clasps around it. The leaves are like Hemlock and fall off in winter.

Of Canes and Reeds we have many sorts. The hollow Reed, or Cane, such as Angling rods are made of, and Weavers use, we have great plenty of it, tho' none to the Northward of James River in Virginia. They always grow in Branches and low ground. Their leaves endure the Winter, in

which season our cattle eat them greedily. We have them towards the Heads of our Rivers, so large that one joint will hold above a pint of liquor.

The small Bamboo is next, which is a certain vine like the rest of these species, growing in low land. They seldom with us grow larger than a man's little finger, and are very tough. Their root is a round ball which the Indians boil as we do garden roots, and eat them. When these roots have been some time out of the ground, they become hard and make good heads to the Canes, on which several pretty Figures may be cut. There are several others of this kind, not thoroughly discovered.

That Palmeto grows with us, which we call the dwarfish sort; but the Palmeto tree I have not met withal in Carolina, of which you have a description elsewhere. We shall next treat of the spontaneous fruits of this country, and then proceed to those that have been transplanted from Europe and other parts.

Among the natural fruits the Vine first takes place, of which I find six sorts very well known. The first is the black bunch grapes, which yield a crimson juice, these grow common and bear plentifully. They are of a good relish tho' not large, yet well knit in the clusters. They have a thickish skin and large stone, which makes them not yield much juice. There is another sort of black grape like the former, in all respects save that their juice is of a light flesh colour, inclining to a white. I once saw a spontaneous white grape bunch in North Carolina; but the Cattle browsing on the sprouts thereof in the spring it died. Of those which we call Fox Grapes, we have four sorts; two whereof are called Summer Grapes because ripe in July, the other two Winter Fruit because not ripe until October or September. The summer

Fox Grapes grow not in clusters, or in great bunches, but are about five or six in a bunch, about the bigness of a damson, or larger. They always grow in Swamps, and low moist Lands, running sometimes very high and being shady and therefore proper for arbours. They afford the Largest Leaf I ever saw to my remembrance, the back of which is of a white horseflesh colour. This fruit always ripens in the shade. I have transplanted them into my orchard, and find they thrive well, if matured. A neighbour of mine has done the same; mine were by slips, his from the roots, which thrive to admiration, and bear fruit, tho' not so juicy as the European grape, but of a glutinous nature. However it is pleasant enough to eat.

The other winter Fox Grapes are much of the same bigness. These refuse no ground, swampy or dry; but grow plentifully on the sand hills along the coast, and elsewhere, and are great Bearers. I have seen near 12 bushels upon one vine of the black sort. Some of these when thoroughly ripe have a very pretty vinous taste and eat very well yet are glutinous. The white sort are clear and transparent, and indifferent small stones. Being removed by the slip or root they thrive well in our gardens and make pleasant shades.

Persimmon is a tree that agrees with all Lands and soils. Their fruit when ripe is nearest our Medlar; if eaten before draws your mouth up like a purse, being the greatest Astringent I ever met withal, therefore very useful in some cases. The fruit if ripe, will presently cleanse a foul wound, but causes pain. The fruit is rotten when ripe, and commonly contains four flat kernels, called stones, which is the seed. 'Tis said the Cortex Peruvianus comes from a Persimmon Tree, that grows in New Spain. I have tried the dying of

this bark to imitate it, which it does tolerably well, and agrees therewith. It is binding enough to work the same effect. The tree in extraordinary Land comes sometimes to two foot Diameter, though not often. There are two sorts of this fruit; one ripe in the summer, the other when the frost visits us.

We have three sorts of Mulberries besides the different bigness of some trees fruit. The first is the common red Mulberry, whose fruit is the earliest we have (except the Strawberries) and very sweet. These trees make a very fine shade, to sit under in summer time. They are found wild in great quantities, whenever the land is light and rich, yet their fruit is much better when they stand open. They are used instead of Raisins and Currants, and make several pretty Kickshaws. They yield a transparent crimson liquor, which would make good wine; but few peoples inclination in this country tend this way. The others are a smooth-leaved mulberry, fit for the Silkworm. One bears a white fruit which is common, the other bears a small red berry, very sweet. They would persuade me there that the black mulberry with the silk worm smooth leaf was a white mulberry, and changed its fruit. The wood hereof is very durable, and where the Indians cannot get Locust, they make use of this to make their bows. This tree grows extraordinarily round and pleasant to the eye.

The Hickory, Walnut, Chinkapin, and Chestnut with their fruits, we have mentioned before.

The Hazle nut grows plentifully in some places of the country, especially towards the mountains; but ours are not so good as the English nuts, having a much thicker shell, like all the fruits of America that ever I met withal, which in hardness exceed those of Europe.



The Cherries of the Woods grow to be verty large trees. One sort which is rarely found is red and not much unlike the Cornel-berry. But the common cherry grows high, and in bunches like English currants, but much larger. They are of a bitterish-sweet relish, and are equally valuable with our small red Cherries for an infusion in Spirits. They yield a crimson liquor and are great bearers.

Our Raspberries are of a purple colour and agreeable relish, almost like the English; but I reckon them not quite so rich.. When once planted 'tis hard to root them out. They run wild all over the country, and will bear the same year you transplant them, as I have found by experience.

The Hurts, of Huckleberries or Blues of this country, are four sorts which we are all well acquainted withal; but more species of this sort, and all others, Time and Enquiry must discover. The first sort is the same Blue of Bilberry that grows plentifully in the north of England, and in other places commonly on your Heaths, Commons and Woods, where Braken or Fern grows.

The second sort grows on a small bush in our Savannas, and Meads and in the Meadows. They are larger than the common fruit and have larger seed.

The third grows on a single stem of a stick that grows in low rich land, and on the banks of rivers. They grow three or four foot high, and are very pleasant like the first sort but larger.

The fourth sort grows upon trees; some 10 and 12 foot high, and about the thickness of a man's arm; these are found in the runs and low grounds and are very pleasant and bear wonderfully. The English sometimes dry them in the Sun, and keep them to use in the winter instead of currants. The Indians get many bushels and dry them

on mats, whereof they make Plum-Bread, and many other Eatables. They are good in Tarts or infused in Liquors.

In the same ground commonly grows the Piemento, or All-spice tree, whose berries differ in shape from those of the West Indies, being Taper or Conick, yet not inferior to any of that sort. This tree grows much like the Hurts, and is of the same bigness. I have known it transplanted to high Land, where it thrives.

Our Dew-berries are very good, but the Black-berries are bitterish, and not so palatable as in England.

The Sugar-Tree ought to have taken place before. It is found in no other parts of Carolina or America that I ever learnt, but in places that are near the mountains. It's most like one sort of Maple of any Tree and may be ranked amongst that kind. This Tree, which I am told is of a very tedious growth, is found very plentiful towards the heads of some of our rivers, The Indians tap it, and make gourds to receive the Liquor, which operation is done at distinct and proper times, when it best yields its juice, of which when the Indians have gotten enough they carry it home and boil it to a just consistence of Sugar, which grains of itself, and serves for the same uses as other sugar does.

The Papau is not a large tree; I think I never saw one a foot through; but has the broadest leaf or any tree in the woods and bears an apple about the bigness of a hen's egg, yellow, soft and as sweet as anything can well be. They make rare Puddings of this fruit. The Apple contains large stones.

The wild Fig grows in Virginia up in the Mountains, as I am informed by a gentleman of my acquaintance, who is a person of Credit and a great Traveler in America. I shall be glad to have an opportunity to make Tryal what

improvement might be made of this wild fruit.

The wild Plums of America are of several sorts. Those which I can give an account of from my own knowledge, I will and leave the others till a farther discovery. The most frequent is that which we call the common Indian Plum, of which there are two sorts if not more. One of these is ripe much sooner than the other, and differs in the Bark; one of the Barks being very scaly like our American Birch. These trees when in blossom smell as sweet as any Jessimin, and look as white as a sheet, being something prickly. You may make it grow to what shape you please. They are very ornamental around a house and make a wonderful shew at a distance, in the spring, because of their livery. Their fruit is red and very palatable to the sick. They are of a quick growth and will bear from the stone in five years on their Stock. The English large, black plum thrives well, as does the cherry, being grafted thereon.

The American Damsons are both black and white, and about the bigness of a European Damson. They grow anywhere if planted from the stone or slip; bear a white blossom and are a good fruit. They are found on the sand-banks along the coast of America. I have planted several in my orchard, that came from the Stone, which thrive well amongst the rest of my Trees, but they never grow to the bigness of the other trees now spoken of. These are plentiful Bearers.

There is a third sort of Plum about the bigness of a Damson. The tree is taller, seldom, exceeding 10 inches in thickness. The plum seems to taste physically, yet I never found any operation it had, except to make their lips sore that eat them.. The Wood is something porous, but exceeds any box for a beautiful yellow.

There is a very pretty bushy tree about seven or eight Foot high, very spreading, which bears a winter fruit, that is ripe in October. They call 'em currants, but they are nearer a Hurt. I have eaten very pretty tarts made thereof. They dry them instead of Currants. The Bush is very beautiful.

The Bermudas Currants grow in the Woods on a bush much like the European Currant. Some people eat them very much; but for my part I can see nothing inviting in them, and reckon them a very indifferent fruit.

We have another Currant which grows on the Banks of Rivers, or where only Clay has been thrown up. This fruit is red and gone almost as soon as come. They are a pretty fruit whilst they last and the tree (for 'tis not a bush) they grow upon is a very pleasant Vegetable.

The Haw-thorn grows plentifully in some parts of this country. The Haws are quite different from those in England, being four times as big, and of a pleasant, agreeable taste. We make no use of this plant nor of any other for Hedges because timber is so plentiful at present.

In my judgment the Honey Locust would be the fittest for Hedges; because it is very apt to shoot forth many sprouts and Succours from the Roots; besides it is of a quick growth, and very Prickly.

The Black-Haw grows on a slender Tree, about the height of a Quince tree, or something higher and bears the Black-Haw, which people eat and the birds covet after. What Vertues the fruit or wood is of, I cannot resolve you at present.

Thus I have given an account of all the spontaneous fruits of Carolina, that have come to my knowledge, excepting Services, which I have seen in the Indians' hands and eat of them,

but never saw nor knew how they grew. There may very well be expected a great many more fruits which are the natural product of this Country, when we consider the fruitfulness of the soil and climate, and account for the vast tract of Land (a great part of which is not yet found out) according to the product of that which is already discovered, which, (as I once hinted before) is not as yet arrived to our knowledge, we having very little or no correspondence amongst the mountainous parts of this province, and towards the country of Mississippi, all which we have strange accounts of, (and some with respect to the Large and Noble Fruits and several other ornaments and blessings of nature which Mississippi possesses; more to be coveted than any of those which we enjoy to the eastward of the Mountains; Yet when I came to discourse with some of the idolizers of that country, I found it to be rather Novelty than Truth and Reality, that induced those persons to allow it such Excellencies above others. It may be a brave and fertile country, as I believe it is, but I cannot be persuaded that it can be near so advantageous to us as ours, which is much better situated for trade, being faced all along with the Ocean, as the English America is, when the other is only a direct river, in the midst of a Wild Unknown Land, the greatest part of whose product must be fetched or brought a great way before it can come to Market. Moreover such great Rivers commonly allow of more Princes Territories than one, and thus nothing but War and Contention accompanies the inhabitants thereof.

But not to trouble my reader with any more of this, we will proceed in the next place to shew what Exotick

Fruits we have, that thrive well in Carolina; and what others it may reasonably be supposed would do well there, were they brought thither and planted. In pursuance of which I will set down a Catalogue of what Fruits we have, I mean species; For should I pretend to give a regular name to every one, it's neither possible for me to do it, nor for any one to understand it when done; if we consider that the chiefest part of our fruit comes from the kernel and some others from the Succours of sprouts of the tree. First we will begin with apples, which are the Golden Russet, Pearmain, winter and summer; Harvey-Apple, I cannot tell whether the same in England; Winter Queening, Leather Coat, Juniting, Codlin, Redstreak, Longstalk, Ladyfinger. The Golden Russet thrives well. The Pearmain, of both sorts are apt to speck, and rot on the trees; and the trees are damaged and cut off by the Worm, which breeds in the Forks and other Parts thereof, and often makes a circumposition by destroying the bark around the branches until it dies. Harvey Apple; that which we call so is esteemed very good for making cider of. Winster Queening is a durable apple and makes good cider. Leather Coats, both apple and tree stand well. The Juniting is early ripe, and soon gone in these warm countries. Codlin; no better and fairer fruit in the world; yet the tree suffers the same distemper, as the Pearmain, or rather worse; the trees always dying before they come to their growth. The Red-streak thrives very well. Longstalk is a large apple, with a long stalk and makes good summer cider.

We beat the first of our Codlin cider against reaping our wheat, which is from the 10th of June to the five and twentieth.



Lady-Finger, the Long Apple, some called Rope-Apples, which are small apples hanging like Ropes of Onions; Flatterings, Grigsons, Cheese-Apples, and a great number of Names, given according to every one's Direction.

The Warden-Pear here proves a good eating Pear; and is not so long ripening as in England.

Katharine excellent.

Sugar-pear.

And several others without Name, The Bergamot we have not, nor either of the Bonne Chretiennes, though I hear, they are all three in Virginia. These sorts of Pears which we have, are as well relisht, as ever I eat any where, but that Fruit is of very short Continuance with us, for they are gone almost as soon as ripe.

I am not a Judge of the different sorts of Quinces, which they call Brunswick, Portugal and Barbary. But as to the Fruit, in general, I believe no Place has fairer and better relisht. They are very pleasant eaten raw. Of this Fruit they make a Wine, or Liquor, which they call Quince-Drink, and which I approve of beyond any Drink which that Country affords, though a great deal of Cider and some Perry is there made. The Quince-Drink most commonly purges those that first drink it, and cleanses the Body very well. The Argument of the Physicians, that they bind People, is hereby contradicted, unless we allow the Quinces to differ in the two Countries. The least Slip of this Tree stuck in the Ground, comes to bear in three years.

All peaches, with us, are standing; neither have we any Wall-Fruit in Carolina; for we have Heat enough, and therefore do not require it. We have a great many sorts of this Fruit, which all thrive to Admiration, Peach-Trees coming to perfection (with us) as easily as the Weeds. A Peach falling on the

Ground, brings a Peach-Tree that shall bear in three years or sometimes sooner. Eating Peaches in our Orchards makes them come up so thick from the Kernel, that we are forced to take a great deal of Care to weed them out, otherwise they make our Land a Wilderness of Peach-Trees. They generally bear so full, that they break great part of their Limbs down. We have likewise very fair Nectarines, especially the red, that clings to the Stone, the other yellow Fruit, that leaves the Stone; of the last, I have a Tree, that, most Years, brings me fifteen or twenty Bushels. I see no foreign Fruit like this, for thriving in all sorts of Land, bearing its Fruit to Admiration. I want to be satisfied about one sort of this Fruit, which the Indians claim as their own, and affirm, they had it growing amongst them, before any Europeans came to America. The Fruit I will describe, as exactly as I can. The Tree grows very large, most commonly as big as a handsome Apple-Tree; the Flowers are of a reddish, murrey Colour; the Fruit is rather more downy, than the Yellow Peach, and commonly very large and soft, being very full of Juice. They part freely from the Stone, and the Stone is much thicker than all the Peach Stones we have, which seem to me that it is a Spontaneous Fruit of America, yet in those parts of America that we inhabit, I never could hear that any Peach-Trees were ever found growing in the Woods; neither have the foreign Indians, that live remote from the English, any other sort. And those living amongst us have a hundred of this sort for one other; they are a hardly Fruit, and are seldom damaged by the North-East Blasts, as others are. Of this sort we make Vinegar; wherefore we call them Vinegar-Peaches, and sometimes Indian-Peaches.

This Tree grows to a vast Bigness,

exceeding most Apple-Trees. They bear well, tho' sometimes an early Spring comes on in February, and perhaps, when the Tree is fully blown the Cloudy North-East-Winds which attend the end of, that Month, or the beginning of March, destroy most of the Fruit. The biggest Apricock-Tree I ever saw, as they told me, was grafted on a Peach-Stock, in the Ground. I know of no other sort with us, than the Common. We generally raise this Fruit from the Stone, which never fails to bring the same Fruit. Likewise our Peach-Stones effect the same, without so much as once missing, to produce the same sort that the Stone came from.

Damson, Damazeen, and a large round black Plum, are all I have met withal in Carolina. They thrive well enough; the last to Admiration, and becomes a very large Tree, if in stiff Ground; otherwise they will not do well.

Of Figs we have two sorts; One is the low Bush-Fig, which bears a large Fruit. If the Winter happens to have much Frost, the tops thereof die, and in the Spring sprout again, and bear two or three good Crops.

The Tree-Fig is a lesser Fig, though very sweet. The Tree grows to a large Body and Shade, and generally brings a good Burden; especially if in light Land. This Tree thrives nowhere better, than on the Sand-Banks by the Sea.

We have the common red and black Cherry, which bear well. I never saw any grafted in this Country, the common excepted, which was grafted on an Indian Plum-stock, and bore well. This is a good way, because our common Cherry-Trees are very apt to put Scions all around the Tree, for a great Distance, which must needs be prejudicial to the Tree and Fruit. Not only our Cherries are apt to do so, but our Apples and most other Fruit-Trees, which

may chiefly be imputed to the negligence and Unskillfulness of the Gardener. Our Cherries are ripe a month sooner than in Virginia.

Gooseberries I have seen of the smaller sort, but find they do not do so well as in England, and to the Northward. Want of Dressing may be some reason for this.

Currants, White, Red and Black, thrive here, as well as any where.

Raspberries, the red and white, I never saw any trial made of. But there is no doubt of their thriving to Admiration, since those of the Country do so well.

The Mulberries are spontaneous. We have no others, than what I have already mentioned in the class of Natural Fruits of Carolina.

Barberry red, with Stones, and without Stones, grow here.

Strawberries, not Foreign, but those of the Country, grow here in great plenty. Last April I planted a Bed of two hundred feet in Length, which bore the same year.

Medlars we have none.

All sorts of Walnuts from England, France and Maderas, thrive well from the Nut.

No Filberts, but Hazel-Nuts; the Filbert-Nut planted, becomes a Hazel-Nut and no better.

As for that noble vegetable the Vine, without doubt, it may (in this Country) be improved, and brought to the same Perfection, as it is in this Day, in the same Latitude in Europe, since the Chiefest part of this Country is a deep, rich, black Mould, which is up towards the Freshes and Heads of our Rivers, very rich and mixed with Flint, Pebbles, and other Stones. And this sort of Soil is approv'd (by all Gardeners and Vigneroons) as a proper Earth, in which the Grape chiefly delights; and seems to give a farther Confirmation hereof, is, that the largest Vines, that

were ever discovered to grow wild, are found in those parts, sometimes in such Plenty, and are so interwoven with one another, that 'tis impossible to pass through them. Moreover in these Freshes, towards the Hills, the vines are about five times bigger than those generally with us, who are seated in the Front-Parts of this Country, adjoining to the Salts. Of the Wild Vines, which are most of them great Bearers, some Wine has been made, which I drank of. It was very strong and well relisht; but what detains them all from offering at great quantities, they add, is that this Grape has a large Stone, and a thick Skin, and consequently yields but a small quantity of Wine. Some Essays of this Nature have been made by that Honourable Knight, S<sup>r</sup> Nathanael Johnson, in South Carolina, who, as I am informed, has rejected all Exotick Vines, and makes his Wine from the natural black Grape of Carolina, by grafting it upon its own Stock. What improvement this may arrive to, I cannot tell; but in other Species, I own Grafting and Inbudding yields speedy Fruit, tho' I never found that it made them better.

New planted Colonies are generally attended with a Force and Necessity of Planting the known and approved Staple and Product of the Country, as well as all the Provisions their Families spend. Therefore we can entertain but small hopes of the Improvement of the Vine, till some skillful in dressing Vines shall appear amongst us, and go about it, with a Resolution, that Ordering the Vineyard shall be one-half of their Employment. If this be begun and carried on, with that Assiduity and Resolution which it requires, then we may reasonably hope to see this a Wine-Country; for then when it becomes a general Undertaking, every one will be capable to add something to the common Stock, of that which he

has gained by his own experience. This way would soon make the Burden light, and a great many shorter and exacter Curiosities, and real Truths would be found out in a short time. The trimming of Vines as they do in France, that is, to a Stump, must either be not followed, or we are sensible of the exact time, when they ought to be pruned; for Experience has taught us, that the European Grape, suffer'd to run and expand itself at large, has been found to bear as well in America, as it does in Europe; when at the some time the same sort of Vine trimm'd to a Stump as before Spoken of has borne a poor Crop for one Year or two; and by its spilling after cutting, emaciated, and in three or four years died. This experiment I believe has never failed; for I have trimm'd the Natural the French way, which has been attended, at last, with the same Fate. Wherefore it seems most expedient, to leave the Vines more Branches here than in Europe, or let them run up Trees, as some do, in Lombardy, upon Elms. The Mulberries and Chinkapin are tough, and trimm'd to what you please, therefore fit supporters of the Vine. Gelding and plucking the Leaves, to hasten the ripening of this Fruit, may not be unnecessary, yet we see the natural wild Grape generally ripens in the Shade. Nature in this and many others, may prove a sure Guide. The twisting of the Stems to make the Grapes ripe together, loses no Juice and may be beneficial, if done in Season. A very ingenious French Gentleman, and another from Switzerland, with whom I frequently converse, exclaim against that strict cutting of Vines, the generally approved Method of France and Germany, and say that they were both out in their Judgment, till of late, Experience has taught them otherwise. Moreover the French in North Carolina assure me, that if we should trim our



Apple and other Fruit-Trees as they do in Europe, we should spoil them. As for Apples and Plums, I have found by Experience, what they affirm to be true. The French from the Mannakin Town on the Freshes of James River in Virginia had, for the most part, removed themselves to Carolina, to live there, before I came away; and the rest were following as their Minister (Monsieur Philip de Rixbourg) told me, who was at Bath-Town, when I took my leave of my Friends. He assur'd me, that their Intent was to propagate Vines, as far as their present Circumstances would permit; provided they could get any Slips of Vines, that would do. At the same time I had gotten some Grape-Seed, which was of the Jesuits white Grape, from Madera. The Seed came up very plentifully, and, I hope, will not degenerate, which if it happens not to do, the Seed may prove the best way to raise a Vineyard, as certainly it is most easy for Transportation. Yet I reckon we should have our Seed from a Country, where the Grape arrives to the utmost perfection of ripeness. These French Refugees have had small Encouragement in Virginia, because at their first coming over, they took their Measures of Living from Europe; which was all wrong; for the small Quantities of ten, fifteen and twenty acres to a Family did not hold out according to their way of Reckoning, by Reason they made very little or no fodder; and the Winter there being much harder than with us, their Cattle fall'd; chiefly be-

cause the English took up and survey'd all the Land round about them; so that they were hemm'd in on all Hands from providing more Land for themselves or their Children, all which is prejudicial in America, where the generality are bred up to Planting. One of these French men being a Fowling, shot a Fowl in the River, upon which his dog went down the Bank to bring it to his Master; but the Bank was so high and steep, that he could not get up again. There upon the French Man went down to help his Dog up, and Breaking the Mould away, accidentally with his Feet, he discovered a very rich Coal-Mine. This Adventure he gave an Account of amongst the Neighborhood, and presently one of the Gentlemen of that Part survey'd the Land, and the poor French Man got nothing by his Discovery. The French are good Neighbours amongst us, and give Examples of Industry, which is much wanted in this Country. They make good Flax, Hemp, Linen-Cloth and Thread; which they exchange amongst the Neighbourhood for other Commodities, for which they have occasion.

We have hitherto made no Trial of foreign Herbage; but, doubtless it would thrive well; especially, Sanfoin, and those Grasses, that endure Heat, and dry Grounds. As for our Low Lands, such as Marshes, Savannas and Percoarson-Ground, which lies low, all of them naturally afford good land for pasturage.

### CHAPTER III.

We will next treat of the Beasts, which you shall have an Account of, as they have been discover'd.

The Beasts of Carolina are the Buffelo, or wild beef.

Bear.

Panther.

Cat-a-mount.

Wild Cat.

Wolf.

Tyger.

Polecat.

Otter.

Bever.

Musk-Rat.

Possum.

Raccoon.

Minx.

Water-Rat.

Rabbet, two sorts.

Elks.

Stags.

Fallow-Deer.

Squirrel, four sorts.

Fox.

Lion, and Jackall on the Lake.

Rats, two sorts.

Mice, two sorts.

Moles.

Weasel, Dormouse.

Bearmouse.

The Buffelo is a wild Beast of America, which has a Bunch on his Back, as the Cattle of St. Lawrence are said to have. He seldom appears amongst the English Inhabitants, his chief haunt being in the Land of Mississippi, which is for the most part, a plain Country; yet I have known some kill'd on the Hilly Part of Cape-Fear-River, they passing the Ledges of Vast Mountains from the said Mississippi, before they can come near us. I have eaten of their meat,

but do not think it so good as our Beef; yet the younger Calves are cry'd up for excellent Food, as very likely they may be. It is conjectured that these Buffelos, mixt in Breed with our tame Cattle, would much better the Breed for Largeness and Milk, which seems very probable. Of the wild Bull's Skin, Buff is made. The Indians cut the Skin into Quarters for the Ease of their Transportation, and make Beds to lie on. They spin the Hair into Garters, Girdles, and Sashes and the like, it being long and curled, and often of a chestnut or red colour. These Monsters are found to weigh (as I am informed by a Traveler of Credit) from 1,600 to 2,400 Weight.

The Bears here are very common, though not so large as in Greenland and the more Northern Countries of Russia. The Flesh of this Beast is very good, and nourishing, and not inferior to the best Pork in Taste. It stands betwixt Beef and Pork, and the young Cubs are a Dish for the Greatest Epicure living. I prefer this Flesh before any Beef, Veal, Pork or Mutton; and they look as well as they eat, their fat being as white as snow, and the sweetest of any Creatures in the World. If a man drink a quart thereof melted, it never will rise in his Stomach. We prefer it above all things, to fry Fish and other things in. Those that are Strangers to it, may judge otherwise; but I who have eaten a great deal of Bear's Flesh in my Life-time (since my being an inhabitant in America) do think it equalizes, if not excels, any Meat I ever eat in Europe. The Bacon made thereof is extraordinary Meat; but it must be well saved, otherwise it

will rust. This creature feeds upon all sorts of wild Fruits. When Herrings run, which is in March, the flesh of such of those Bears as eat thereof, is nought, all that season, and eats filthily. Neither is it good, when he feeds on Gum-berries, as I intimated before. They are great Devourers of Acorns, and sometimes meet the swine in the Woods, which they kill and eat, especially when they are hungry, and can find no other Food. Now and then they get into the fields of Indian Corn, or Maiz, where they make a sad havock, spoiling ten times as much as they eat. The Potatoes of this Country are so agreeable to them, that never fail to sweep them all clean if they chance to come in their way. They are seemingly a very clumsy Creature, yet are very nimble in running up Trees, and traversing every limb thereof. When they come down they run Tail foremost. At catching Herrings they are most expert Fishers. They sit by the Creek-sides, (which are very narrow) where the Fish run in; and there they take them up, as fast as it is possible, they can dip their paws into the Water. There is one thing more to be considered of this Creature, which is, that no Man, either Christian or Indian, has ever killed a She-bear with Young.

It is supposed, that the She-Bears, after conception hide themselves in some secret and undiscoverable Place, till they bring forth their Young, which, in Probability, cannot be long; other the Indians who hunt the Woods, like Dogs, would, at some time or other, have found them out. Bear-Hunting is a great Sport in America, both with the English and the Indians. Some Years ago, there were killed five hundred Bears, in two counties of Virginia, in one Winter; and but two She-Bears amongst them all, which were not with Young, as I told you of the rest. The

English, have a breed of Dogs fit for this sport, about the size of Farmers Dogs, and by Practice come to know the Scent of a Bear which, as soon as they have found, they run him, by the Nose, till they come up with him, and then bark and snap at him, till he trees, when the Huntsman shoots him out of the Trees, there being, for the most part two or three with Guns lest the first should miss, or not quite kill him. Though they are not naturally voracious, yet they are very fierce when wounded. The Dogs often bring him to a Bay, when wounded, and then the Huntsmen make other Shots, perhaps with the Pistols that are stuck in their Girdles. If a Dog is apt to fasten, and run into a Bear, he is not good, for the best Dog in Europe is nothing in their Pawes, but if they ever get him in their Clutches, they blow his Skin from his Flesh, like a Bladder, and often kill him; or if he recovers it, he is never good for anything after. As the Paws of this Creature are held for the best bit about him, so is the head esteemed the worst, and always thrown away, for what reason I know not. I believe none ever made Trial thereof to know how it eats. The Oil of the Bear, is very Sovereign for Strains, Aches and old Pains. The Fine Fur at the bottom of the Belly, is used for making Hats, in some places. The Fur itself is fit for several Uses; as for making Muffs, facing Caps, etc., but the black Cub-skin is preferable to all sorts of that kind, for Muffs. Its Grain is like Hog-Skin.

The Panther is of the Cat's kind; about the height of a very large Greyhound, of a reddish Colour, the same as a Lion. He climbs Trees with the greatest Agility imaginable, is very strong-limb'd, catching a piece of meat from any Creature he strikes at. His Tail is exceeding long; his Eyes look very fierce and lively, are large, and are of a greyish Colour, his Prey is Swines-



Flesh, Deer, or any thing he can take; no Creature is so nice and clean, as this, in his Food. When he has got his Prey he fills his Belly with the Slaughter, and carefully lays up the Remainder, covering it very neatly with Leaves, which if anything touches, he never eats any more of it. He purrs as Cats do; if taken when Young, is never to be reclaimed from his wild Nature. He hollows like a Man in the Woods, when killed, which is by making him take a Tree as the least Cur will presently do; then the Huntsmen shoot him; if they do not kill him out-right, he is a dangerous Enemy, when wounded, especially to the Dogs that approach him. This Beast is the worst Enemy to the Planter, of any Vermine in Carolina. His flesh looks as well as any Shambles-Meat whatsoever; a great many People eat him, as choice Food; but I never tasted of a Panther, so cannot recommend the Meat, by my own Experience. His Skin is a warm covering for the Indians in the Winter, though not esteemed amongst the choice Furs. This Skin, dress'd, makes fine Women's Shoes, or Mens Gloves.

The Mountain Cat is so-called, because he lives in the Mountainous Parts of America. He is a Beast of Prey, as the Panther is, and nearest to him in Bigness and Nature.

The Cat is quite different from these in Europe; being more nimble and fierce, and larger; his Tail does not exceed four Inches. He makes a very odd sort of Cry in the Woods, in the Night. He is spotted as the Leopard is, tho' some of them are not, (which may happen when their Furs are out of Season) he climbs a Tree very dexterously, and preys as the Panther does. He is a great Destroyer of Young Swine. I knew an Island which was possessed by these Vermine, unknown to the Planter, who put thereon a considerable Stock of Swine; but never took one back, for the

wild Cats destroyed them all. He takes most of his Prey by surprise by getting up the Trees, which they pass by or under, and thence leaping directly upon them. Thus he takes Deer (which he cannot catch by running) and fastens his Teeth into their Shoulders and sucks them. They run with him till they fall down for want of strength, and become a Prey to the Enemy. Hares, Birds, and all he meets, that he can conquer, he destroys. The Fur is approv'd to wear as a Stomacher, for weak and cold Stomachs. They are likewise used to line Muffs, and Coats withal, in cold Climates.

The Wolf of Carolina, is the Dog of the Woods. The Indians had no other Curs, before the Christians came amongst them. They are made domestick. When wild they are neither so large, nor fierce, as the European Wolf. They are not Man-slayers; neither is any Creature in Carolina, unless wounded. They go in great Drovers in the Night, to hunt Deer, which they do as well as the best Pack of Hounds. Nay, one of these will hunt down a Deer. They are often so poor, that they can hardly run. When they catch no Prey, they go to a Swamp, and fill their Belly full of Mud; if afterwards they chance to get anything of Flesh, they will disgorge the Mud, and eat the other. When they hunt in the Night, that there is a great many together, they make the most hideous and frightful Noise, that ever was heard. The Fur makes good Muffs. The Skin dress'd to a Parchment makes the best Drum-Heads, and if tann'd makes the best sort of Shoes for the Summer-Countries.

Tygers are never met withal in the Settlement; but are more to the Westward, and are not numerous on this Side the Chain of Mountains. I once saw one, that was larger than a Panther, and seemed to be a very bold

Creature. The Indians that hunt in those Quarters, say, they are seldom met withal. It seems to differ from the Tyger of Asia and Africa.

Polcats or Skunks in America, are different from those in Europe. They are thicker, and of a great many colours; not all alike, but each differing from another in the particular Colour. They smell like a Fox, but ten times stronger. When a Dog encounters them, they throw upon him, and he will not be sweet again in a Fortnight or More. The Indians love to eat their Flesh, which has no manner of ill Smell when the Bladder is out. I know no use their Furs are put to. They are easily brought up tame.

There have been some Otters from the Westward of Carolina, which were of a white Colour, a little inclining to yellow. They live on the same Prey here, as in Europe, and are the same in all other Respects; so I shall insist no farther on that Creature. Their Furs, if black, are valuable.

Bever is very numerous in Carolina, there being abundance of their Dams in all parts of the Country, where I have travel'd. They are the most industrious and greatest Artificers, (in building their Dams and Houses) of any four-footed Creatures in the World. Their Food is chiefly the Bark of Trees and Shrubs, viz.: Sassafras, Ash, Sweet-Gum, and several others. If you take them young they become very tame and domestick, but are very mischievous in spoiling Orchards, by breaking the Trees, and blocking up your Doors in the Night, with the Sticks and Wood they bring thither. If they eat any thing that is salt, it kills them. Their Flesh is a sweet Food; especially their Tail, which is held very dainty. Their Fore-Feet are open, like a Dog's; their Hind-Feet webbed like a Water-Fowl's. The Skins are good Furs for several Uses, which every one

knows. The leather is very thick; I have known Shoes made thereof in Carolina, which lasted well. It makes the best Hedges Mittens that can be used.

Musk Rats frequent fresh Streams and no other; as the Bever does. He has a Cell of Musk, which is valuable, as is likewise his Fur.

The Possum is found no where but in America. He is The Wonder of all the Land-Animals, being the size of a Badger, and near that colour. The Female, doubtless, breeds her Young at her Teats; for I have seen them stick fast thereto, when they have been no bigger than a small raspberry, and seemingly inanimate. She has a Paunch or false Belly, wherein she carries her Young, after they are from those Teats, till they can shift for themselves. Their Food is Roots, Poultry or Wild Fruits. They have no Hair on their Tails, but a sort of Scale or hard Crust, as the Bevers have. If a Cat has nine Lives, this Creature surely has nin teen; for if you break every Bone in their Skin, and mash their Skull, leaving them for Dead, you may come an hour after, and they will be gone quite away. They are a very stupid Creature, utterly neglecting their Safety. They are most like Rats of any thing. I have for necessity in the Wilderness, eaten of them. Their Flesh is very white, and well tasted; but their ugly tails put me out of conceit with that Fare. They climb Trees as the Raccoons do. Their Fur is not esteemed nor used, save that the Indians spin it into Girdles and Garters.

The Raccoon is of a dark-grey Colour; if taken young, is easily made tame, but is the drunkenest Creature living, if he can get any Liquor that is sweet and strong. They are rather more unlucky than a Monkey. When wild they are very subtle in catching their prey. Those that live in the Salt-Water, feed

much on Oysters, which they love. They watch the Oyster when it opens, and nimbly put in their Paw, and pluck out the Fish. Sometimes the Oyster shuts, and holds fast their Paw till the Tide comes in, that they are drown'd, tho' they swim very well. The way that this Animal catches Crabs, which he greatly admires, and which are plenty in Carolina, is worthy of Remark. When he intends to make a Prey of these Fish, he goes to a Marsh, where standing on the Land, he lets his Tail hang in the Water. This the Crab takes for a Bait, and fastens his Claws therein, which as the Raccoon perceives, he, of a sudden, springs forward, a considerable way, on the Land and brings the Crab along with him. As soon as the Fish finds himself out of his Element, he presently lets go his hold; and then the Raccoon encounters him by getting him cross-wise in his Mouth, and devours him. There is a small sort of Land Crab, which we call a Fiddler, that runs into a Hole when anything pursues him. This Crab the Raccoon takes by putting his Fore-Foot in the Hole, and pulling him out. With a tame Raccoon this sport is very diverting. The Chief of his other Foods is all sorts of wild Fruits, green Corn, and such as the Bear delights in. This and the Possum are much of a Bigness. The Fur makes Hats and Linings. The Skin dress'd makes fine Womens Shoes.

The Minx is an Animal much like the English Fillemart or Polcat. He is long, slender, and every way shap'd like him. His Haunts are chiefly in the Marshes by the Sea-Side and Salt-Waters, where he lives on Fish, Fowl, Mice and Insects. They are bold Thieves and will steal anything from you in the Night, when asleep, as I can tell by Experience, for one Winter by Misfortune, I ran my Vessel a-ground, and went often to the Banks, to kill Wild Fowl, which we did a

great many. One Night we had a mind to sleep on the Banks (the Weather being fair) and wrapt up the Geese which he had kill'd, and not eaten, very carefully, in the Sail of a Canoe, and folded it several Doubles, and for their better Security, laid them all Night under my Head. In the Morning when I wak'd a Minx had eaten thro' every Fold of the Canoes Sail, and Thro' one of the Geese, most part of which was gone. These are likewise found high up in the Rivers, in whose sides they live; which is known by the abundance of Fresh-Water Muscle-Shells (such as you have in England) that lie at the mouth of their Holes. This is an Enemy to the Tortoise whose Holes in the Sand, where they hide their Eggs, the Minx finds out, and scratches up and eats. The Raccoons and Crows do the same. The Minx may be made domestick, and were it not for his paying a Visit now and then to the Poultry, they are the greatest destroyers of Rats and Mice, that are in the World. Their Skins, if good of that kind, are valuable, provided they are kill'd in Season.

The Water-Rat is found here, the same as in England. The Water-Snakes are often found to have of these Rats in their Bellies.

That which the People in Carolina call a Hare, is nothing but a Hedge-Coney. They never burrough in the Ground, but much frequent Marshes and Meadow Lands. They hide their Young in some Places secure from the Discovery of the Buck, as the European Rabbits do, and are of the same Colour; but if you start one of them and pursue her, she takes into a hollow Tree, and there runs up as far as she can, in which the Hunter makes a Fire, and smokes the Tree, which brings her down and smothers her. At one time of the Year, great Bots or Maggots breed betwixt the Skin and the



Flesh of these Creatures. They eat just as the English ones do; but I never saw one of them fat. We fire the Marshes, and then kill abundance.

The English, or European Coneys are here found, tho' but in one place that I ever knew of, which was in Trent-River, where they borough among the Rocks. I cannot believe, these are Natives of the Country, any other-wise than that they might come from aboard some Wreck; the Sea not being far off. I was told of several that were upon Bodies Island by Roanoke, which came from that Ship of Bodies, but I never saw any. However the banks are no proper Abode Above of Safety, because of the many Minxes in those Quarters. I carried over some of the tame sort from England to South Carolina, which bred three times going over, we having a long Passage. I turn'd them loose in a Plantation, and the young ones, and some of the old ones bred great Maggots in their bodies. At last the great Gale in September, 1700, brought a great deal of Rain, and drown'd them all in their Holes. I intend to make a second tryal of them in North Carolina, and doubt not but to secure them.

The Elk is a Monster of the Venison sort. His Skin is used almost in the same Nature as the Buffalo's. Some take him for the red Deer of America; but he is not. For if brought and kept in Company with that sort of the contrary Sex, he will never couple. His Flesh is not so sweet as the lesser Deers. His Horns exceed (in weight) all Creatures which the new World affords. They will often resort and feed with the Buffalo delighting in the same as they do.

The Stags of Carolina are lodg'd in the Mountains. They are not so large as in Europe, but much larger than any Fallow-Deer. They are always fat, I believe, with some delicate Herbage

that grows on the Hills, for we find all Creatures that graze much tatter and better Meat on the Hills than those on the Valleys, I mean towards the Sea. Some Deer on these Mountains afford the occidental Bezoar, not coming from a Goat as some report. What sort of Beast affords the Oriental Bezoar, I know not. The Tallow of the Hearts makes incomparable Candles. Their Horns and Hide are of the same Value, as others of their kind. Fallow Deer in Carolina, are taller and longer-legg'd, than in Europe; but neither run so fast nor are so well haunch'd. Their Singles are much longer, and their Horns stand forward, as the others incline backward; neither do they beam, or bear their Antlers, as the English do. Towards the Salts, they are not generally so fat and good Meat, as on the Hills. I have known some kill'd on the Salts in January, that have had abundance of Bots in their Throat, which keep them very poor. As the Summer approaches these Bots come out, and turn into the finest Butterfly imaginable, being very large, and having black, white and yellow Stripes. Deer-Skins are one of the best Commodities Carolina affords, to ship off for England, provided they be large.

Of Squirrels we have four Sorts. The first is the Fox-Squirrel, so call'd, because of his large Size, which is the Bigness of a Rabbit of two or three Months old. His Colour is commonly grey; yet I have seen several pied ones, and some reddish and black; his chiefest Haunts are in the Piny land, where the Almond-Pine grows. There he provides his Winter-Store, they being a nut that never fails of bearing. He may be made tame and is very good Meat, when killed.

The next sort of Squirrel is much of the Nature of the English, only differing in Colour. Their Food is Natural of all sorts the Country affords and

Acorns. They eat well, and like the Bear, are never found with young.

The Fly-Squirrel is grey, as well as the others. He is the least of the Three. His Food is much the same with the small grey Squirrels. He has not Wings as Birds and Bats have, there being a fine thin Skin, covered with Hair, as the rest of the parts are. This is from the Fore-Feet to the Hinder-Feet, which is extended and holds so much Air, as buoys him up, from one Tree to another, that are greater distances asunder, than other Squirrels can reach by jumping or Springing. He is made very tame, is an Enemy to a Corn-Field, (as all Squirrels are) and eats only the germinating Eye of that Grain, which is very sweet.

Ground Squirrels are so call'd, because they never delight in running up Trees, and leaping from Tree to Tree. They are the smallest of all Squirrels. Their Tail is neither so long or bushy; but flattish. They are of a reddish Colour, and striped down each side with black Rows, which make them very beautiful. They may be kept tame, in a little Box with Cotton. They and the Fly-Squirrels seldom stir out in Cold Weather, being tender Animals.

The Fox of Carolina is gray, but smells not as the Foxes in Great-Britain, and elsewhere. They have reddish Hair about their Ears, and are generally very fat, yet I never saw any one eat them. When hunted they make a sorry chase, because they run up Trees when pursued. They are never to be made familiar and tame, as the Raccoon is. Their Furs if in Season, are used for Muffs and other Ornaments. They live chiefly on Birds and Fowls, and such small Prey.

I have been informed by the Indians, that on a Lake of Water towards the Head of Neus River, there Haunts a Creature, which frightens them all from hunting thereabouts. They say, he

is the Colour of a Panther, but cannot run up Trees; and that abides with him a Creature like an Englishman's Dog, which runs faster than he can, and gets his Prey for him. They add that there is no other of that Kind that ever they met withal and that they have no other way to avoid him, but by running up a Tree. The Certainty of this I cannot affirm by my own Knowledge, yet they all agree in this Story. As for Lions, I never saw any in America; neither can I imagine, how they should come there.

Of Rats we have two sorts; the House-Rat, as in Europe; and the Marsh-Rat, which differs very much from the other, being more hairy, and has several other Distinctions, too long here to name.

Mice are the same here, as those in England, that belong to the House. There is one sort that poisons a Cat, as soon as she eats of them, which has some times happened. These Mice resort not to Houses.

The Dormouse is the same as in England; and so is the Weasel, which is very scarce.

The Bat or Bearmouse, the same as in England. The Indian Children are much addicted to eating Dirt, and so are some of the Christians. But roast a Bat on a Skewer, then pull the Skin off, and make the child that eats Dirt, eat the roasted Bearmouse, and he will never eat Dirt again. This is held as an infallible Remedy. I have put this among the Beasts, as partaking of both Natures; of the Bird and Mouse-Kind.

Having mention'd all the sorts of Terrestrial or Land Animals, which Carolina affords and are yet known to use, except the Tame and Domestick Creatures (of which I shall give an account of hereafter, when I come to treat of the Ways and Manners of Agriculture in that Province) I shall proceed to the

known Insects of that Place. Not that I pretend to give an ample amount of the whole Tribe, which is too numerous, and contains too great a Diversity of Species, many not yet discovered, and others that have slips my Memory at present; But those that I can remember, I herewith present by Readers withal.

#### INSECTS OF NORTH CAROLINA.

Allegators, Rattle-Snakes, Ground Rattle-Snakes, Horn-Snakes, Water-Snakes, four sorts, Swamp Snakes, three sorts, Red-bellied Land-Snakes, Red-back'd Snake, Black Truncheon Snake, Scorpion Lizard, Frogs, many sorts, Long Black Snake, King-Snake, Green-Snake, Vipers, black and gray, Tortois, Terebin, Land and Water, Brimstone-Snake, Egg, or Chicken-Snake, Eel-Snake or great Loach, Rotten-wood Worm, etc.

The Allegator is the same as the Crocodile, and differs only in name. They frequent the sides of the Rivers, in the Banks of which they make their Dwellings, a great way under Ground; the Hole or Mouth of their Dens lying commonly under two Foot of Water, after which it rises till it be considerably above the surface thereof. Here it is that this amphibious Monster dwells all the Winter, sleeping away his time till the Spring appears, when he comes from his Cave, and Daily swims up and down the Streams. He always breeds in some fresh Stream, or clear Fountain of Water, yet seeks his Prey in the broad Salt Waters, that are brackish, not on the Sea-Side, where I never met with any. He never devours Men in Carolina, but uses all ways to avoid them; he kills Swine and Dogs, the former as they come to feed in the Marshes, the others as they Swim over the Creeks and Waters. They are very mischievous to the Wares made for taking Fish, into which they come to Prey on the Fish

that are caught in the Ware, from which they cannot readily extricate themselves, and so break the Ware in Pieces, being a very strong Creature. This Animal in these Parts sometimes exceeds seventeen Foot long. It is impossible to kill them with a Gun, unless you chance to hit them about the Eyes, which is a much softer Place than the rest of their impenetrable Armour. They roar and make a hideous Noise against bad Weather, and before they come out of their Dens in the Spring. I was pretty much frightened with one of these once; which happened thus: I had built a House about half a mile from an Indian Town, on the Fork of Neus-River, where I dwelt by myself, excepting a young Indian Fellow, and a Bull-Dog that I had along with me. I had not then been so long a Sojourner in America, as to be thoroughly acquainted with this Creature. One of them had got his Nest directly under my House, which stood on pretty high Land, and by a Creek Side, in whose Banks his entering-place was, his Den reaching the Ground directly on which my House stood. I was sitting alone by the Fireside (about nine a Clock at Night, some time in March) the Indian fellow being gone to the Town to see his Relations; so that there was nobody in the House but myself and my Dog; when all of a sudden this ill-favour'd Neighbor of mine, set up such a Roaring, that he made the House shake about my Ears, and so continued, like a Bittern, (but a hundred times louder, if possible) for four or five times. The Dog started, as if he was frightened out of his senses; nor indeed could I imagine what it was, having never heard one of them before. Immediately again I had another Lesson; and so a third. Being at that time amongst nothing but Savages, I began to suspect they were working some piece of



Conjuration under my House, to get away my Goods; not but that, at another time, I have as little Faith in their, or any other working Miracles, by Diabolical Means, as any Person living. At last my Man came in, to whom, when I had told the Story, he laugh'd at me, and presently undeceiv'd me, by telling me what it was that made the Noise. These Allegators lay Eggs, as the Ducks do; only they are larger shap'd, larger and a thicker shell, than they have. How long they are in hatching, I cannot tell; but, as the Indians say, it is most part of the Summer; they always lay by a Spring-Side, the young living in and about the same, as soon as hatched. Their Eggs are laid in nests made in the Marshes, and contain twenty or thirty Eggs. Some of these Creatures afford a great deal of Musk. Their Tail when cut off, looks very fair and white, seemingly like the best of Veal. Some People have eaten thereof, and say it is delicate Meat, when they happen not to be musky. Their Flesh is accounted proper for such as are troubled with the lame Distemper, (a sort of Rheumatism) so is the fat very prevailing to remove Aches and Pains, by Uction. The teeth of this Creature when dead, are taken out, to make Charges for Guns, being of several sizes, fit for all loads. They are white and would make Snuff-Boxes, if Wrought by an Artist. After the Tail of the Allegator is separated from the Body, it will move very freely for four days.

The Rattle-Snakes are found on all the Main of America, that I ever had any Account of; being so call'd from the Rattle at the end of their Tail, which is a Connection of jointed Coverings, of an excrementitious Matter, betwixt the substance of a Nail and a Horn, tho' each Tegmen is very thin. Nature seems to have design'd these,

on purpose to give Warning of such an approaching Danger, as the venomous Bite of these Snakes is. Some of them grow to a very great Bigness, as six Foot in Length, their middle being the thickness of the Small of a lusty Man's Leg. We have an Account of much larger Serpents of this Kind; but I never met them yet, although I have seen and kill'd abundance in my time. They are of an Orange, tawny, and blackish colour on the Back; differing (as all Snakes do) in Colour on the Belly, being of an Ash Colour, inclining to Lead. The Male is easily distinguished from the Female, by a black Velvet-Spot on his Head; and besides his Head is smaller shaped, and long. Their bite is venomous, if not speedily remedied; especially if the wound be in a Vein, Nerve, Tendon, or Sinew; when it is very difficult to cure. The Indians are the best Physicians for the Bite of these and all other venomous Creatures of this Country. There are four sorts of Snake-Roots already discovered, which knowledge came from the Indians, who have performed several great Cures. The Rattle-Snakes are accounted the peaceablest in the World; for they never attack any one, or injure them, unless they are trod upon, or molested. The most danger of being bit by these Snakes, is for those that survey Land in Carolina; yet I never heard of any Surveyor that was kill'd or hurt by them. I have myself gone over several of this Sort, and others; yet it pleased God, I never came to any harm. They have the Power, or Art (I know not which to call it) to charm Squirrels, Hares, Partridges, or any such thing, in such a manner, that they run directly into their Mouths. This I have seen by a Squirrel and one of these Rattle-Snakes; and other Snakes have, in some measure, the same Power. The Rattle-Snakes have many small Teeth,

of which I cannot see they make any use; for they swallow everything whole; but the Teeth which poison, are only four; two on each side of their Upper-Jaws. These are bent like a Sickle, and hang loose as if by a Joint. Towards the setting on of these, there is in each Tooth a little Hole, wherein you may just put in the Point of a Small Needle. And here it is that the Poison comes out (which is as green as grass) and follows the Wound made by the Point of their Teeth. They are much more Venomous in the months of June and July, than they are in March, April or September. The hotter the Weather the more Poisonous. Neither may we suppose, that they can renew their Poison as oft as they will; for we have had a Person bit by one of these who never rightly recovered it and very hardly escaped with Life, a second person bit in the same place by the same Snake, and received no more Harm, than if bitten with a Rat. They cast their Skins every Year, and commonly abide near the Place where the old Skin lies. These cast Skins are used in Physick, and the Rattles are reckon'd good to expedite the Birth. The Gall is made up into Pills, with Clay, and Kept for Use; being given in Pestilential Fevers and the Small-Pox It is accounted a noble Remedy, known to few and held as a great Arcanum. This Snake has two Nostrils on each side of his Nose. Their Venom, I have Reason to believe, effects no Harm, any otherwise than when darted into the Wound by the Serpents Teeth.

The Ground Rattle-Snake, wrong nam'd, because it has nothing like Rattles. It resembles the Rattle-Snake a little in Colour, but is darker, and never grows to any considerable Bigness, not exceeding a Foot, or fifteen inches. He is reckon'd among the worst of Snakes; and stays out the longest of

any Snake I know, before he returns (in the Fall of the Leaf) to his Hole.

Of the Horn Snakes I never saw but two, that I remember. They are like the Rattle-Snake in Colour, but rather lighter. They hiss exactly like a Goose, when anything approaches them. They strike at their Enemy with their Tail, and kill whatsoever they wound with it, which is arm'd at the End with a horny Substance, like a Cock's Spur. This is their Weapon. I have it credibly reported, by those who said they were Eye-Witnesses, that a small Locust Tree, about the thickness of a Man's arm, being struck by one of these Snakes, at Ten a Clock in the Morning, then verdant and flourishing, at four in the Afternoon was dead, and the Leaves red and withered. Doubtless, be it how it will, they are very venomous. I think the Indians do not pretend to cure their Wound.

Of Water-Snakes there are four sorts. The first is of the Horn-Snake Colour, tho' less. The next is a very long Snake, differing in Colour, and will make nothing to swim over a River a League wide. They hang upon Birches and upon Trees by the Water Side. I had the misfortune once to have one of them leap into my Boat, as I was going up a narrow River; the Boat was full of Mats which I was glad to take out, to get rid of him. They are reckon'd poisonous. A third is much of an English Adder's Colour, but always frequents the Salts, and lies under the Drift Sea-Weed, where they are in abundance, and are accounted mischievous, when they bite. The last is of a sooty black Colour, and frequents Ponds and Ditches. What his Qualities are I cannot tell.

Of the Swamp-Snakes there are three sorts, which are very near akin

to the Water-Snakes, and may be rank'd amongst them.

The belly of the first is of a Carnation or Pink Colour; his back a dirty brown; they are large but have not much Venom in them, as ever I learnt. The next is a large Snake, of a brown Dirt Colour, and always abides in the Marshes. The last is mottled, and very poisonous. They dwell in Swamp Sides, and Ponds, and have prodigious wide Mouths, and (though not long) arrive to the Thickness of a Man's Leg.

The Red Bellied frequent the Land altogether, and are so call'd because of their red Bellies, which incline to an Orange Colour. Some have been bitten with these sort of Snakes and not hurt; when others have suffer'd very much by them. Whether there be two sorts of these Snakes, which we make no difference of, I cannot at present determine.

I never saw but one of the Red-Backed, which I stept over, and did not see him till he that brought the chain after me, spy'd him. He has a red Back, as the last has a red Belly. They are a long, slender Snake, and very rare to be met withal. I enquired of the Indian that was along with me, whether they were very venomous, who made Answer, that if he had bitten me, even the Indians could not have cured it.

This sort of snake might very well have been rank'd with the Water Snakes. They lie under Roots of Trees, and on the Banks of Rivers. When any thing disturbs them, they dart into the Water (which is Salt) like an Arrow out of a Bow. They are thick, and the shortest Snake I ever saw. What Good, or Harm, there is in them, I know not. Some of these Water-Snakes will swallow a black Land Snake, half as long again as themselves.

The Scorpion Lizard, is no more like

a Scorpion, than a Hedge-Hog; but they very commonly call him a Scorpion. He is of the Lizard kind, but much bigger; his back is of a Dark Copper-Colour; his Belly an Orange; he is very nimble in running up trees, or on the Land, and is accounted very Poisonous. He has the most sets of teeth in his Mouth and Throat that ever I saw.

Green Lizards are very Harmless and Beautiful, having a little Bladder under their throat, which they fill with wind and evacuate at their pleasure. They are of a most glorious Green and very tame. They resort to the Walls of houses in the Summer Season, and stand gazing on a Man without any concern or fear. There are several other Colours of these Lizards, but none so beautiful as the green ones are.

Of Frogs we have several sorts; the most famous is the Bull Frog, so called because he lows exactly like that beast, which makes Strangers Wonder (When by the side of a Marsh) what's the matter, for they hear the Frogs Low, and can see no Cattle; he is very large. I believe I have seen one with as much meat on him as a Pullet, if he had been dressed. The small Green Frogs get upon Trees and make a noise. There are several other colored small Frogs; but the common land Frog is likest a Toad, only he leaps and is not poisonous. He is a great devourer of Ants, and the Snakes devour him. These Frogs, baked and beat to powder, and taken with Orrice-Root, cure a Tympany.

The long, Black Snake frequents the Land altogether, and is the nimblest creature living. His bite has no more Venom than a prick with a pin. He is the best Mouser that can be; for he leaves not one of that Vermin alive, where he comes. He also kills the Rattlesnake wheresoever he meets him, by twisting his head about the Neck of



the Rattlesnake, and whipping him to death with his Tail. This Whipster haunts the Dairies of careless housewives, and never misses to Skim the Milk clear of Cream. He is an excellent Egg Merchant, for he does not suck the Eggs but swallows them whole (As all Snakes do) He will often swallow all the eggs from under a Hen that sets, and coil himself under the Hen, in the Nest, where sometimes the Housewife finds him. This Snake, with all his agility, is so brittle, that when he is pursued and gets his head in the hole of a tree, if anybody gets hold of the other end he will twist and break himself off in the middle. One of these Snakes, whose neck is no larger than a woman's little finger, will swallow a Squirrel, so much does that part stretch in these Creatures.

The King Snake is the longest of all others and not common; no Snake (they say) will meddle with them. I think they are accounted very venomous. The Indians make girdles and sashes of their skins.

Green Snakes are very small, tho' pretty, (if any Beauty be allowed to Snakes). Everyone makes themselves very familiar with them, and puts them in their bosom, because there is no manner of harm in them.

The Corn Snakes are but small ones; they are of a brown colour, mixed with fawny. There is no more hurt in this than in a green snake.

Of those we call Vipers there are two sorts. People call these Vipers because they spread a very small head at any time they are vexed. One of these is grayish like the Italian Viper, the other black and short; and is reckoned amongst the worst of Snakes for Venom.

Tortoises, vulgarly called Turtle; I have ranked these among the Insects because they lay eggs, and I did not know well where to put them. Amongst

us there are three sorts; the first is the Green Turtle, which is not common, but is sometimes found on our coast. The next is the Hawk's Bill, which is common. These two sorts are extraordinary meaty. The third is the Logger-Head, which kind one scarce ever covets, except for the eggs, which of this and all other Turtles are very good Food. None of these sorts of Creatures' eggs will ever admit the whites to be harder than a jelly; yet the Yelk with boiling becomes as hard as any other egg.

Of Terebins there are divers sorts, all which, to be brief, we will comprehend under the distinction of Land and Water Terebins.

The Land Terebin is of several sizes but, generally round-Mouth'd and not Hawk Bill'd, as some are. The Indians eat them. Most of them are good Meat, except the very large ones; and they are good Food too, provided they are not Musky. They are a bitter Enemy to the Rattle Snake, for when the Terebin meets him he catches hold of him a little below his neck, and draws his head into his shell, which makes the snake beat his Tail, and Twist about with all the strength and Violence Imaginable, to get away, but the Terebin soon dispatches him and there leaves him. These they call in Europe the Land Tortois. Their food is Snails, Tad-poles or young frogs, Mushrooms, and the Dew and Slime of the Earth and Ponds.

Water Terebins are small, containing about as much meat as a Pullet, and are extraordinary good Food; especially, in May and June. When they lay eggs, their Eggs are very good; but they have so many enemies that finds them out that the hundredth part never comes to perfection. The Sun and Sand hatch them, which come out the bigness of a small chestnut, and seek their own living.

We now come again to the Snakes. The Brimstone is so called I believe because it is almost of a brimstone colour. They might as well have called it a glass snake, for it is as brittle as a tobacco pipe, so that if you give it the least Touch of a small Twig, it breaks into several small pieces. Some affirm that if you leave it where you broke it, it will come together again. What harm there is in this brittle ware I cannot tell, but I never knew anybody hurt by them.

The Egg or Chicken Snake is so called because it frequents the chicken yard, and eats Eggs and Chickens; they are of a dusky soot colour, and will roll themselves round and stick 18 or 20 foot high, by the side of a smooth-barked pine, where there is no manner of hold, and there sun themselves and sleep all the sunny part of the day. There is no great matter of poison in them.

The wood worms are of copper, shining colour, scarce so thick as your little finger; are often found in rotten trees. They are accounted Venomous, in case they bite, tho' I never knew anything hurt by them. They never exceed four or five inches in length.

The Reptiles, or smaller Insects, are too numerous to relate here, this Country affording innumerable quantities thereof; as the Flying Stags, with horns; Beetles, Butterflies, Grasshoppers, Locusts, and several hundreds of uncouth shapes, which in the Summer Season are discovered here in Carolina, the description of which requires a large volume, which is not my intent at present. Besides, what the Mountainous part of this land may hereafter lay open to our view, Time and Industry will discover, for we that have settled but a small part of this Province, cannot imagine but that there will be a larger number of Discoveries made by those that shall come here-

after into the back part of this Land, and make inquiries therein, when, at least, we consider, that the Westward of Carolina is quite different in Soil, Air, Weather, Growth of Vegetables, and several Animals too, which at present we are total strangers to, and to seek for. As to a right knowledge thereof I say, when another Age is come, the Ingenious Heads then in being upon the Shoulders of them that went before them, adding their own experiments to what was delivered down by their Predecessors, then there will be something towards a complete Natural History, (which in these days would be no easie undertaking to any author that writes truly and compendiously, as he ought to do.) It is sufficient at present to write an Honest and Fair Account, of any of the Settlements in this new World, without wandering out of the Path of Truth or bespattering any Man's Reputation, any wise concerned in the Government of the Colony; he that mixes Invectives with Relations of this Nature renders himself suspected of Partiality in whatever he writes. For my part I wish all well, and he that has received any severe dealings from the Magistrate or his Superiors, had best examine himself well, if he was not first in the fault; if so he can then justly blame none but himself for what has happened to him.

Having thus gone through the insects as in the table, except the Eel-Snake, (so call'd, though very improperly, because he is nothing but a loach that sucks and cannot bite as the Snakes do). He is very large, commonly sixteen inches or a foot and a half long, having all the properties that other Loaches have, and dwells in pools and waters as they do. Notwithstanding we have the same Loach as you have, in Bigness.

This is all that at present I shall

mention, touching the Insects, and so go on and give and account of the Fowls and Birds, that are properly found in North Carolina, which are these:

#### BIRDS IN NORTH CAROLINA.

Eagle bald, Eagle Gray, Fishing Hawk, Turkey Vulture or Hawk, Herring-Tail Hawk, Goshawk, Falcon, Merlin, Sparrow-hawk, Hobby, Ring-tail, Raven, Crow, Black-Birds, two sorts, Bunting, two sorts, Peasants, Woodcock, Snipe, Partridge, Moorhen, Green Plover, Plover Gray or Whistling, Pigeon, Turtle Dove, Parrakeeto, Thrush, Woodpecker, five sorts, Mocking Bird, two sorts, Cat Bird, Cuckoo, Blue Bird, Blue Finch, Nightingale, Hedge Sparrow, Wren Sparrows, two sorts, Lark, Red Bird, East Indian Bat, Martins, two sorts, Diveling or Swift, Swallow, Humming Bird, the Tom Tit, or OX Eye, Owls, two sorts, Scritch Owl, Baltimore Bird, Thrastle (no singer), Phippoo Will, Reed Sparrow, Weet bird, Rice Bird, Cranes and Storks, Snow-Birds, Yellow Wings.

#### WATER FOWL ARE

Swans, called Thompeters, Swans, called Hoopers, Geese, three sorts, Brant gray, Brant white, Sea-pies or pied Curlens, Willets, Great Gray Gulls, Old Wives, Sea Cock, Curlues, three sorts, Coots, Kings-fisher, Loons, two sorts, Bitterns, three sorts, Hern white, Hern gray, Water Pheasant, Little Gray Gull, Little Fisher, or Dipper, Ducks as in England, Ducks, Black all Summer, Ducks pied, build on Trees, Ducks Whistling, at Sapona, Ducks, Scarlet Eye, at Esaw, Blue-wings, Wid-geon, Teal two sorts, Shovelers, Whistlers, Black Flusterers or Bald Coot, Turkey wild, Fishermen, Divers, Raft Fowl, Bull-necks, Redheads, Tropick birds, Pelican, Cormorant, Gannet, Shearwater, Great black pied Gull, Marsh hens, Blue Peters, Sand-birds, Runners, Tutcocks, Swaddle-bills, Old

Men, Sheldrakes, Bald-Faces, Water-Witch or Ware Coot.

As the Eagle is reckoned the King of Birds I have begun with him. The first I shall speak of is the Bald Eagle; so called because his head to the middle of his neck, and his tail is as white as snow. These Birds continually breed the year around; for when the young Eagles are just downed with a sort of white woolly Feathers, the hen Eagle lays again, which eggs are hatched by the warmth of the young ones in the nest, so that the flight of one brood makes room for the next that are just hatched. They prey on any living thing they can catch. They are heavy of flight and cannot get their food by swiftness, to help which there is a Fishhawk which catches Fishes, and suffers the Eagle to take them from her, altho' she is long-winged and swift flying and can make far better way in her flight than the Eagle can. The Bald Eagle attends the Gunner in Winter, with all the obsequiousness imaginable, and when he shoots and kills any fowl the Eagle surely comes in for his Bird; and besides those that are wounded and escape the Fowler come into the Eagle's share. He is an excellent artist at stealing young Pigs, which prey he carries alive to his Nest, at which time the poor pig makes such a strange noise over-head, that strangers that have heard them cry, and not seen the Bird and his Prey, have thought that there were flying Sows and Pigs in that country. The Eagle's nest is made of twigs, sticks and rubbish. It is big enough to fill a handsome Cart's body, and commonly so full of nasty bones and carcasses that it stinks most offensively. This Eagle is not bald until he is one or two years old.

The gray Eagle is altogether the same sort of a Bird, as the Eagle in Europe,



therefore we shall treat no further of him.

The Fishing Hawk is the Eagle's Jackal, which most commonly (tho' not always), takes his prey for him. He is a large bird, being above two-thirds as large as the Eagle. He builds his Nest as the Eagles do, that is in a young cypress Tree, either standing in, or hard by the Water. The Eagle and this bird seldom sit on a living tree. He is of a gray pied Colour, and the most dexterous Fowl in Nature at Catching of Fish, which he wholly lives on, never eating any flesh.

The Turkey-Buzzard of Carolina is a small Vulture, which lives on any dead carcasses. They are about the Bigness of a Fishing Hawk, and have a nasty smell with them. They are of the Kite's Colour, and are reported to be an enemy to snakes, by killing all that they meet withal of that kind.

The Herring, or Swallow-Tailed Hawk, is about the bigness of a falcon, but a much longer bird. He is of a delicate Aurora Colour. The Pinions of his Wings and End of his Tail are Black. He is a very beautiful bird, and never appears abroad but in the summer. His prey is chiefly Snakes, and he will kill the biggest we have with a great deal of Dexterity and Ease.

Goshawks are very beautiful in Carolina. They are not seemingly so large as those from Muscovy, but appear to be a very brisk bird.

The Falcon is much the same as in Europe, and promises to be a brave bird, tho' I never had any of them in my hand, neither did I ever see any of them in any other posture than on the Wing, which always happened to be in an evening, and flying to the westward; therefore I believe we may expect to find them and several other species that we are at present strangers to.

The Merlin is a small bird in Eu-

rope, but much smaller here; yet he very nimbly kills the smaller sorts of birds, and sometimes the Partridge; if caught alive he would be a great rarity, because of his beauty and smallness.

The Sparrowhawk in Carolina is no bigger than a fieldfare in England. He flies at the Bush and sometimes kills a small Bird, but his chiefest food is reptiles, as Beetles, Grasshoppers and such small things. He is exactly as the same colour as the Sparrowhawk in England, only has a blackish Hood by his Eyes.

Hobbies are the same here as in England and are not often met withal.

The Ringtail is a short-winged hawk, preying on mice and such vermin in the Marshes, as in England.

Ravens the same as in England, though very few. I have not seen above six or eight in a year's time.

Crows are here less than in England. They are as good meat as Pigeons; and never feed on any Carrion; they are great enemies to the cornfields and cry and build almost like rooks.

Of Blackbirds we have two sorts, which are the worst Vermin in America. They fly sometimes in such flocks that they destroy everything before them. They (both sorts) build in hollow trees, as Starlings do. The first sort is near as big as a Dove and is white and delicate food. The other sort is very beautiful and about the bigness of an Ousel. Part of their head next to the bill, and the pinions of the wings, are of an orange and glorious crimson colour. They are as good meat as the former, tho' very few here, (where large fowl are so plenty) ever trouble themselves to kill or dress them.

Of the Bunting-Larks we have two sorts, though the heel of this bird is not so long as in Europe. The first of these often accompany the Black-

birds, and sing as the Bunting-Larks in England do, differing very little. The first sort has an orange colour on the tops of their wings, and are as good meat as those in Europe. The other sort is something less of a lighter colour, nothing differing therein as to colour, bigness and meat.

The Pheasant of Carolina differs some small matter from the English Pheasant, being not so big and having some difference in feather; yet he is not anywise inferior in delicacy, but is as good Meat, or rather finer. He haunts the Backwoods and is seldom found near the Inhabitants.

The Woodcocks live and breed here, though they are not in great plenty as I have seen them in some parts of England and other places. They want one-third of the English Woodcock in bigness; but differ not in shape or feather, save that their breasts are of a carnation Colour; and they make a noise (when they are on the wing) like the bells about a hawk's legs. They are certainly as dainty Meat as any in the world. Their abode in all parts of this country is in low and boggy ground, Springs, Swamps and Percoarsons.

The Snipes here frequent the same places as they do in England, and differ nothing from them. They are the only wild bird that is nothing different from the species of Europe and keeps with us all the year. In some places there are a great many of these Snipes.

Our Partridges in Carolina very often take upon the Trees, and have a sort of whistle and call quite different from those in England. They are a very beautiful bird and great destroyers of the pease in Plantations; wherefore they set traps and catch many of them. They have the same feather as in Europe; only the cock wants the horse-shoe, in lieu of which he has a fair half-circle over each eye. These as well as the Woodcock are less than

the European Bird, but far finer meat. They might be easily transported to any place, because they take to eating after caught.

The Moorhens are of the Blackgame. I am informed that the Gray game haunts the hills. They come not into the settlements, but keep in their hilly parts.

Jays are here common and very mischievous, in devouring our fruit and spoiling more than they eat. They are abundantly more beautiful and finer feathered than those in Europe, and not above half so big.

The Lap-wing or Green Plover are here very common. They cry pretty much as the English Plovers do; and differ not much in feather, but want a third of their bigness.

The Gray or Whistling Plover are very scarce among us. I never saw any but three times that fell and settled on the ground. They differ very little from those in Europe, as far as I could discern. I have seen several great flocks of them fly overhead; therefore believe that they inhabit the Valleys over the Mountains.

Our Wild Pigeons are like the Wood Pigeons or Stock Geese, only they have a longer tail. They leave us in the summer time. This sort of Pigeon, as I said before, is more like the Stock Dove or Wood Pigeon that we have in England; only these differ in their tails, which are very long, much like a Parekeeto's. You must understand that these birds do not breed amongst us, (who are settled at or near the mouths of the rivers, as I have intimated to you before) but come down (specially in hard winters) amongst the Inhabitants in great flocks, as they were seen to do in the year of 1707, which was the hardest winter that ever was known, since Carolina was seated by the Christians. And if that country had such hard winters, what must be ex-

pected of the severe winters in Pennsylvania, New York and New England, where winters are ten times, if possible, colder than with us. Although the flocks are in such Extremities, very numerous, yet they are not to be mentioned in comparison with the great and infinite numbers of the fowls, that are met withal about a hundred or a hundred and fifty miles to the Westward of the places where we at present live; and where the Pigeons come down in quest of a small sort of acorn, which in those parts are plentifully found. They are the same we call Turkey-Acorns, because the wild Turkeys feed very much there on, and for the same reason those trees that bear them are called Turkey Oaks. I saw such prodigious flocks of these pigeons in January and February, 1701-2 (which were in the hilly country between the great nation of the Esaw Indians and the pleasant stream of Sapona, which is the west branch of Clarendon, or Cape Fair River, that they had broke down the limbs of a great many large trees all over those Woods, whereon they chanced to sit and roost; especially the great pines which are more brittle wood, than our sorts of Oak are. These Pigeons, about sunrise, when we were preparing to march on our journey, would fly by us in such Vast Flocks that they would be near a quarter of an hour before they were all passed by; and as soon as that flock was passed another would come, and so successively one after another for a greater part of the Morning. It is observable that wherever these fowl come in such large numbers, as I saw them then, they clear all before them, scarce leaving one acorn upon the ground, which would doubtless be a great prejudice to the planters that would seat there, because their swine would be thereby deprived of the mast. When I

saw such flocks of the Pigeons I now speak of, none of our company had any sort of a shot than that which is cast in Moulds and was so very large that we could not put above ten or a dozen of them into our largest pieces. Wherefore we made but an indifferent hand of shooting them; although we commonly killed a Pigeon for every shot. They were very fat and as good Pigeons as ever I eat. I enquired of the Indians that live in those parts, where it was that those Pigeons bred, and they pointed towards the vast ridge of Mountains and said that they bred there. Now whether they make their nests in the holes of those rocks, or in the mountains, or build in trees I could not learn; but they seem to me to be a wood-pigeon that build in trees, because of their frequent sitting thereon, and their roosting on trees always at night, under which their dung commonly lies half a foot thick, and kills everything that grows where it falls.

Turtle-doves are here very plentiful; they devour the peas, for which reason people make traps and catch them.

The Parrakeetos are of a green colour, and orange-coloured half way up their heads. Of these and the Alleigators there is none found to the northward of this Province. They visit us first when mulberries are ripe, which fruit they love extremely. They peck the apples to eat the kernels, so that the fruit rots and perishes. They are Mischievous to Orchards. They are often taken alive and will become familiar and tame in two days. They have their nests in hollow trees in low swamp ground. They devour the Birch Buds in April, and lie hidden when the weather is frosty and hard.

The Thrushes in America are the same as in England, and red under the wings. They never appear amongst us but in hard weather, and presently leave us again.



Of Wood-Peckers we have four sorts. The first is as big as a pigeon, being of a dark brown colour, with a white cross on his back, his eyes circled with white, and on his head stands a tuft of beautiful scarlet feathers. His cry is heard a long way; and he flies from one rotten tree to another, to get Grubs, which is the Food he lives on.

The second sort are of an Olive Colour, striped with yellow. They eat Worms as well as Grubs, and are about the bigness of those in Europe.

The third is the same bigness as the last. He is pied with black and white and has a crimson head without a toppling, and is a plague to the corn and fruit; especially the apples. He opens the covering of the young corn so that the rain gets in and rots it.

The fourth sort of these Wood-Peckers is a black and white speckled or mottled; the finest I ever saw. The Cock has a red crown; he is not near so big as the others; his food is grubs, corn and other creeping insects. He is not very wild, but will let one come up to him, then shifts on the other side of the tree, from your sight, and so dodges you for a long time altogether. He is about the size of an English Lark.

The Mocking Bird is about as big as the Thristle in England, but longer; they are of a white and gray colour, and are held to be the Choristers of America, as indeed they are. They sing with the greatest diversity of notes that is possible for a bird to change to. They may be bred up and will sing with us tame in cages; yet I never take any of their nests, altho' they build yearly in my fruit trees, because I have their company, as much as if tame to the singing part. They often sit upon our chimneys in summer, there being then no fire in them, and sing the whole evening and most part of the night. They are always at-

tending our dwellings, and feed upon mulberries and other berries and fruits, especially the Mechoacan-berry which grows here very plentifully.

There is another sort called the ground Mocking Bird. She is the same bigness and of a Cinnamon colour. This bird sings excellently well, but is not so common amongst us as the former.

The Cat-Bird, so named because it makes a noise, exactly like young cats. They have a blackish head and an ash-coloured body, and have no other note that I know of. They are no bigger than a Lark, but will fight any other great bird that I know of.

The Cuckoo of Carolina may not properly be so called, because she never uses that cry; yet she is of the same bigness and feather and sucks the Small birds' eggs, as the English Cuckoo does.

A Blue-Bird is of the exact same bigness as a Robin Redbreast. The Cock has the same coloured breast as the Robin has, and his back and the rest of him are of as fine a blue as can possibly be seen in any part of the world. He has a cry and a whistle. They hide themselves all the winter.

Bulfinches in America differ something from those in Europe, in their feathers, tho' not in their bigness. I never knew any one tame, therefore know not what they might be brought to. They are good Birds to turn a Cage with bells, or if taught as the Bullfinch is, I believe would prove very docile.

East India Bats or Musquito Hawks, are the bigness of a Cuckoo, and much of the same colour. They are so called because the same sort is found in the East Indies. They appear only in Summer, and live on Flies, which they catch in the Air, as Gnats, Musquitos, etc., etc.

Martins are here of two sorts. The

first is the same as in England; the other as big as a Black-Bird. They have white throats and Breasts, with black Backs. The planters put Gourds on standing Poles, on purpose for these fowls to build in, because they are a very warlike bird, and beat the Crows from the Plantations. The Swift or Diving, the same as in England. Swallows, the same as in England.

The Humming Bird is the Miracle of all Winged Animals. He is feathered as a Bird and gets his living as the Bees, by sucking the Honey from each Flower. In some of the larger sorts of Flowers he will bury himself, by diving to suck the bottom of it, so that he is quite covered, and oftentimes Children catch them in these flowers, and keep them alive for five or six days. They are of different Colours, the Cock differing from the Hen. The Cock is of a Green, Red, Aurora, and other Colours mixed. He is much less than a Wren and very nimble. His Nest is one of the Greatest pieces of Workmanship the whole tribe of Winged Animals can shew, it commonly hanging on a single Briar, most artistically woven, a small hole being left open to go in and out of. The Eggs are the bigness of Pease.

The Tom Tit or Ox-Eye as in England.

Of Owls we have two sorts; the smaller sort is like ours in England; the other sort is as big as a middling Goose, and has a prodigious head. They make a fearful Hollowing in the Night time, like a man, whereby they often make strangers lose their way in the Woods.

Scritch Owls, much the same as in Europe.

The Baltimore Bird, so called from Lord Baltimore, Proprietor of all Maryland, in which province many of them are found. They are the bigness

of a Linnet, with Yellow Wings and beautiful in other Colours.

Throstle, the same size and Feather as in Europe, but I never could hear any of them sing.

The Weet, so called because he cries always before the rain; he resembles nearest the Fire-Tail.

Cranes use the Savannas and Low Grounds and eat Frogs; they are above five foot high, when extended; are of a Cream Color and have a Crimson Spot on the top of their Heads. Their Quills are excellent for Pens; their flesh makes the best broth, yet it is very hard to digest. Among them frequent Storks, which are here seen, and nowhere besides in America, that I have yet heard of. The Cranes are easily bred up tame, and are excellent in a garden to destroy Frogs, Worms and other Vermin.

The Snow Birds are the most numerous in the North Parts of America, where there are great Snows. They visit us sometimes in Carolina when the Weather is Harder than Ordinary. They are like the Stones Smach, or Wheat Ears, and are delicate Meat.

The Yellow Wings are a very small Bird, of a Linnet's Colour, but Wings are as Yellow as Gold. They frequent high up in our Rivers and Creeks, and keep themselves in the thick bushes, very difficult to be seen in the Spring. They sing very prettily.

Whippoo-Will, so named because it makes those Words exactly. They are the Bigness of a Thrush, and call their notes under a Bush, on the Ground, hard to be seen, though you hear them ever so plain. They are more Plentiful in Virginia than with us in Carolina, for I never heard but one that was near the Settlement, and that was hard by an Indian Town.

The Red Sparrow nearest resembles a sparrow and is the most common

small bird we have, therefore we call them so. They are brown, and red, Cinnamon Colour, striped.

Of the Swans we have two sorts; the one we call Trompeters because of a sort of Trompeting Noise they make. These are the largest sort we have; which come in great Flocks in the Winter, and stay, commonly in the fresh Rivers, until February, when the Spring comes on, when they go to the Lakes to breed. A Cygnet, that is a last year's Swan, is accounted a delicate dish, as indeed it is. They are known by their Head and Feathers, which are not quite so white as Old ones.

The sort of Swans called the Hoopers, are the least. They abide more in the Salt Water and are equally valuable, for Food, with the former. It is observable that neither of these have a black piece of horny Flesh down the Head, and Bill, as they have in England.

Of Geese, we have three sorts, differing from each other only in size. Ours are not the common geese that are in the Fens in England, but the others sorts with black Heads and Necks.

The Gray Brant or Barnicle, is here very plentiful, as all other Water Fowl are, in the Winter Season. They are the same which they call Barnicles in Great Britain, and are a very good Fowl, and eat well.

There is also a White Brant which is very plentiful in America. The Bird is all over as White as Snow, except the tips of his wings and those are Black. They eat the Roots of Sedg and Grass in the Marshes and Savannas, which they tear up like Hogs. The best way to kill these Fowl, is to burn a piece of Marsh or Savanna, and as soon as it is burnt they will come in great flocks to get the roots, where you kill what you please of them. They are

as good meat as the other, only their feathers are stubbed and good for little.

The Sea-Pie, or gray Curlue, is about the bigness of a very large Pigeon but longer. He has a long bill, as other Curlues have, which is the Colour of an English Owsel's, that is yellow, as his Legs are. He frequents the sand beaches of the sea-side, and when killed is inferior to no Fowl that I ever eat.

Willi Willet is so called from his cry, which he very exactly calls Will Willet when he flies. His Bill is like a Curlue's or Woodcock's, and he has much such a body as the other, yet not so tall. He is good Meat.

The great Gray Gulls are Good Meat, and as large as a Pullet. They lay large eggs, which are found in very great quantities, on the Islands in our Sound, in the months of June and July. The young Squabs are very good Victuals and often prove a relief to Travelers by Water, that have spent their Provisions.

Old Wives are a black and White Pied Gull with extraordinary long Wings, and a golden Coloured Bill and Feet. He makes a dismal Noise as he flies, and ever and anon dips his Bill in the Salt Water. I never knew him eaten.

The Sea Cock is a Gull that Crows at break of day, and in the Morning, exactly like a Dunghill Cock, which cry seems very pleasant in those uninhabited Places. He is never eaten.

Of Curlues there are three sorts and vast numbrs of each. They have all long Bills, and differ neither in Colour, nor Shape, only in size. The largest is as big as a Good Hen, the smallest the bigness of a Snipe, or something bigger.

We have three sorts of Bitterns in Carolina. The first is the same as in England; the second of a deep brown, with a great topping, and a Yellowish



white Throat and breast, and is lesser than the former; the last is no bigger than a Wood-cock and near the Colour of the second.

We have the same Herns as in England. White Herns are here very plentiful. I have seen above thirty sit on one tree at a time. They are as white as Milk and fly very slowly.

The Water Pheasant, (very improperly called so) are a Water Fowl of the Duck kind, having a Topping of pretty Feathers, which sets them out. They are a very good Meat.

The little Gray Gull is of a curious Gray Colour, and abides near the Sea. He is about the Bigness of a Whistling Plover, and a delicate food.

We have the Little Dipper or Fisher, that catches fish, so dexterously, the same as you have in the Islands of Scilly.

We have of the same Ducks and Mallards with green heads in great flocks. They are accounted the coarsest sort of Water Fowl.

The Black Duck is fully as large as the other and good Meat. She stays with us all Summer and breeds. These are made tame by some and prove good Domesticks.

We have another Duck that stays with us all the Summer. She has a great Topping, is pied and very beautiful. She builds her nest in a Wood-Pecker's Hole, very often sixty or seventy foot high.

Towards the Mountains, in the hilly country, on the West Branch of the Cape Fear Inlet, we saw great flocks of pretty pied Ducks, that whistled as they flew or as they fed. I did not kill any of them.

We killed a curious sort of Ducks in the Country of the Esaw Indians, which were of many beautiful colours. Their eyes were red, having a red circle of flesh for their Eye-Lids; and were very good to eat.

The Blue Wings are less than a Duck, but fine Meat. These are the first Fowls that appear to us in the fall of the Leaf, coming then in great flocks, as we suppose from Canada, and the Lakes that lie behind us.

Widgeons, the same as in Europe, are here in great plenty.

We have the same Teal as in England, and another Sort that frequents the Fresh Water, and are always nodding their heads. They are smaller than the common Teal, and dainty Meat.

Shovellers (a sort of Duck) are gray with a black head. They are very good Fowl.

Whistlers are so called from the Whistling Noise that they make, as they fly.

Black Flusterers; some call these Old Wives. They are as black as ink. The Cocks have white faces. They always remain in the midst of Rivers, and feed upon Drift Grass, Carnels, or Sea Nettles. They are the fattest Fowl I ever saw, and sometimes so heavy with flesh, that they cannot rise out of the water. They make an odd sort of noise when they fly. What meat they are I could never learn. Some call these the Great Bald Coot.

The Wild Turkeys I should have spoken of when I spoke of the Land Fowl. There are great Flocks of these in Carolina. I have seen about five hundred of these in a Flock; some of these very large. I have never weighed any myself, but have been informed of one that weighed nearly sixty pound. I have seen half a Turkey feed eight hungry men two meals. Sometimes the wild breed with the tame ones, which they reckon breeds them very hardy, as I believe it must. I see no manner of difference betwixt the wild Turkies and the Tame ones; only the wild are ever of one Colour, viz a

dark gray or brown, and are excellent food.

They feed on Acorns, Huckle-Berries, and many other sorts of Berries that Carolina affords. The Eggs taken from the Nest and hatched under a Hen, will yet retain a Wild Nature, and commonly leave you, and run wild at last, and will never be got into a house to roost, but will always perch on some high tree hard-by the House and separate themselves from the tame sort, although (at the same time) they tread and breed together. I have been informed that if you will take these wild eggs just on the point of being hatched, and dip them (for some small time) in a Bowl of Milk-warm Water, it will take off their wild nature and make them as tame and domestic as the others. Some Indians have brought these wild breeds hatched at home to be a Decoy to bring others to roost near their cabins, which they have shot. But to return to the Water-Fowl.

Fishermen are like a Duck, but have a narrow Bill, with Sets of Teeth. They live on very small fish which they catch as they go along. They taste fishy. The best way to order them, is upon occasion, to pull out the oil box from the rump, and then bury them five or six hours underground. Then they become tolerable.

Of Divers there are two sorts, the one pied and the other gray; both good meat.

Raft-Fowl include all the sorts of Ducks and small Teal, that go in Rafts along the Shoar and are of several sorts that we know no name for.

Bull-Necks are a whitish fowl about the bigness of a Brant; they come to us after Christmas in very great flocks in all our Rivers. They are a very good Meat, but hard to kill because hard to come near. They will dive and endure a good deal of shot.

Red Heads, a lesser Fowl than Bull Necks, are very sweet food and plentiful in our Rivers and Creeks.

Tropick-Birds are a white Mew, with a forked Tail. They are so called because they are plentifully met withal under the Tropicks, and thereabouts.

The Pellican of the Wilderness cannot be the same as ours; this being a Water Fowl with a great natural Wen or Pouch under his throat, in which he keeps his prey of fish which he lives on. He is Webb-Footed like a Goose, and shaped like a Duck, but is a very large Fowl, bigger than a Goose. He is never eaten as Food; they make Tobacco Pouches of his Maw.

Cormorants are very well known in some parts of England; we have great flocks of them with us, especially against the Herring run, which is in March and April; then they sit upon Logs of Dry Wood in the Water and catch the Fish.

The Gannet is a large white Fowl, having one part of his Wing black; He lives on Fish as the Pellican. His Fat or Grease is as yellow as Saffron, and the best thing known to preserve Fire-Arms from Rust.

Shear-Waters are a longer Fowl than a Duck; some of them lie on the Coast while others range the Seas all over. Sometimes they are met five hundred Leagues from Land. They live without drinking any fresh water.

We have a great pied Gull, black and white, which seems to have a black Hood over his head; these lay very fair Eggs which are good; as are the young ones in the Season.

Marsh Hen much the same as in Europe, only she makes another sort of Noise and shriller.

Blue-Peters, the same as you call Water Hens in England, are here very numerous and not regarded for eating.

The Sand Birds are about the Big-

ness of a Lark, and frequent our Sand Beaches; they are a dainty food if you will bestow Time and Ammunition to kill them.

Runners are so called because if you run after them they will run along the Sand and not offer to get up; so that you may often drive them together to shoot at as you please. They are a pleasant small bird.

Tutcock is a sort of Snipe, but sucks not his food; they are almost the same as in England.

Swaddle-Bills are a sort of an Ash-Coloured Duck, which have an extraordinary broad bill, and are good meat; they are not common as the others are.

The Mew is the same as in England, being a white slender bird with Red Felt.

The Shel-Drakes are the same as in England.

The Bald, or White Faces are a good Fowl. They cannot dive, and are easily shot.

Water-Witch or Ware-Coots, are a Fowl with Down and no Feathers; they dive incomparably, so that no Fowler can hit them. They can neither fly nor go, but get into the Fish-warens and cannot fly over the Rods, and so are taken.

Thus have we give an account of what Fowl has come to our knowledge, since our abode in Carolina; except some that perhaps have slipped our memory and so are left out of the catalogue. Proceed we now to treat of the Inhabitants of the Watery Element, which tho' we can as yet do very imperfectly, yet we are willing to oblige the Curious with the best Account that it is in our Power to present them withal.

The Fish in the salt, and fresh Waters of Carolina are:

Whales, several sorts. Thrashers, Divil-Fish. Sword Fish. Crampois.

Bottle-Noses. Porpoises. Sharks, two sorts. Dog-Fish. Spanish Mackerel. Cavallies. Boneto's. Blue-Fish. Drum. Red. Drum-Fish, black. Angel Fish. Bass or Rock Fish. Sheeps-Heads. Plaice. Flounder. Soles. Mulletts. Shads. Fat Backs. Guard, white. Guard, Green. Scate or Stingray. Thornback. Congar-Eels. Lamprey-Eels. Eels. Sun-Fish. Toad-Fish. Sea-Tench. Trouts of the Salt Water. Crocus. Herring. Smelts. Breams. Taylors.

Fresh-Water Fish are:

Sturgeon. Pike. Trouts. Gudgeon. Pearch, English. Pearch, White. Pearch, brown or Welsh Men. Pearch, flat and mottled, or Irishmen. Pearch, small and flat with red spots, called Red Robins. Carp. Roach. Dace. Loaches. Sucking-Fish. Cat-Fish. Grindals. Old Wives. Fountain-Fish. White Fish.

The Shell-Fish are:

Large Crabs called Stone Crabs. Small Flat Crarbs. Oysters, Great and Small. Cockles. Clams. Muscles. Conks. Skellop. Man of Noses. Periwinkles or Wilks. Sea-Snail-Horns. Fidlars. Runners. Spanish or Pearl Oysters. Flattings. Tortois and Terebin, accounted for among the Insects. Finger Fish. Shrimps.

Fresh-Water Craw-Fish and Muscles.

Whales are very numerous on the coast of North Carolina, from which they make Oil, Bone, etc., to the great advantage of those inhabiting the Sand Banks, along the Ocean, where these Whales come ashore, none being struck or killed with a Harpoon in this Place, as they are to the Northward or elsewhere; all those Fish being found dead on the Shoar, most commonly by those that inhabit the banks and sea-side where they dwell, for the Intent and for the Benefit of the Wrecks, which sometimes fall in upon that Shoar.



Of these Monsters there are four sorts; the first, which is most choice and rich, is the Sperma-Ceti Whale from which the Sperma-Ceti Oil is taken. These are rich prizes; but I never heard of but one found on this coast, which was near Currituck Inlet.

The other sorts are of a prodigious bigness. Of these the Bone and Oil is made; the Oil being the Blubber or Oily flesh, or Fat of that Fish boiled. These differ not only in Colour, some being pied, others not, but much 'n shape, one being called a Bottle-Nosed Whale, the other a Shovel-Nose, which is as different as a Salmon from a Sturgeon. These Fish seldom come ashore with their Tongues in their heads, the Thrasher, (which is the whale's mortal enemy wheresoever he meets him) eating that out of his head, as soon as he and the Sword-fish have killed him. For when the Whale-catchers (in other parts) kill any of these Fish, they eat the Tongues and esteem it an excellent dish.

There is another sort of these Whales or great Fish, tho' not common. I never knew of above one of that sort, found on the Coast of Carolina, and he was contrary in shape to all others ever found before him; being sixty foot in length and not above three or four foot in diameter. Some Indians in America will go out to Sea, and get upon a Whale's back, and peg or plug his Spouts and so kill him.

The Thrashers are large fish, and mortal enemies to the Whale, as I have said before. They make good Oil; but are seldom found.

The Diver Fish lies at some of our Inlets, and, as near as I can describe him, is shaped like a Scate, or Stingray; only he has on his head a pair of very thick strong Horns, and is of a monstrous Size and Strength; for this Fish has been known to weigh a Sloop's anchor, and run with the

Vessel a league or two and bring her back against Tide, to almost the same Place. Doubtless, they may afford good Oil; but I have no experience of any Profits which arise from them.

The Sword-Fish is another of the Whale's Enemies, and joins with the Thrasher to destroy that Monster. After they overcome him, they eat his Tongue, as I have said before, and the Whale drives ashore.

Crampoils is a large Fish and by some accounted a young Whale; but it is not so; neither is it more than 25 or 30 foot long. They spout as the Whale does, and when taken yield good Oil.

Bottle-Noses are between Crampoils and Porpoises, and lie near the Soundings. They are never seen to swim leisurely, as sometimes all other fish do, but are continually running after their prey in great Shoals, like wild Horses, leaping now and then above the Water. The French esteem them good Food, and eat them both fresh and salt.

Porpoises are frequent, all over the Oceans and Rivers that are Salt; nay, we have a Fresh Water Lake in the Great Sound of North Carolina, that has Porpoises in it. And several other sorts of unknown fish, as the Indians say, that we are wholly strangers to. As to the Porpoises, they make good Oil; they prey upon other fish, as Drums, yet never are known to take a Bait, so as to be caught with a hook.

Of sharks there are two sorts, one called Paracooda-Noses; the other Shovel-Noses; they cannot take their Prey before they turn themselves on their Backs; wherefore some Negroes and others that can swim and dive well, go naked into the Water with a knife in their Hand, and fight the Shark and very commonly kill him, or wound him so that he turns tail and runs away. Their livers make good Oil to dress Leathers withal; the bones

found in their Head are said to hasten the Birth, and ease the Stone, by bringing it away. Their Meat is eaten in scarce times, but I never could away with it, though a great lover of Fish. Their Back-Bone is of one entire thickness. Of the Bones or Joints I have known buttons made, which serve well enough in scarce times or remote places.

The Dog-Fish are a small sort of the Shark kind; and are caught with the Hook and Line, fishing for Drums. They say they are good Meat, but we have so many other sorts of delicate Meat, that I shall hardly ever make Tryal what they are.

Spanish Mackerel are in colour and shape, like the common Mackerel, only much thicker. They are caught with Hook and Line at the Inlets, and sometimes out a little way at sea. They are very fine hard fish and of good taste. They are about two foot long, or better.

Cavallies, are taken in the same places. They are of a brownish colour, having exceedingly small scales, and a very thick skin. They are as firm a Fish as ever I saw, wherefore will keep sweet (in the hot Weather) two days, when others will stink in less than half a day unless salted. They ought to be scaled as soon as taken, otherwise you must pull off the skin and scales when boiled; the Skin being the choicest of the fish. The Meat, which is white and large, is dressed with the fish.

Boneto's are a very palatable Fish, and near a yard long. They haunt the Inlets and Water near the Ocean; and are killed with the Harpoon and Fish-gig.

The Blue-Fish is one of our best fishes, and always very fat. They are as long as a salmon, and indeed I think, full as good meat. These Fish come (in the fall of the year) generally after

there has been one black frost, when there appear great shoals of them. The Hatteras Indians, and others, run into the Sands of the Sea, and strike them, tho' some of these fish have caused Sickness and violent burnings after eating of them, which is found to proceed from the Gall that is broken in some of them, and is hurtful. Sometimes many cartloads of these are thrown and left dry on the sea-side, which comes by their eager pursuit of the small Fish, in which they run themselves ashore, and the Tide leaving them, they cannot recover the Water again. They are called Blue-Fish because they are of that Colour, and have a forked Tail and are shaped like a Dolphin.

The Red Drum is a large fish, much larger than the Blue-Fish. The body of this is good, firm Meat. but the head is beyond all Fish I ever met withal for an excellent dish. We have greater number of these fish than of any other sort. People go down and catch as many barrels full as they please, with Hook and Line, especially at every young flood, when they bite. These are salted up and transported to other colonies, that are bare of Provisions.

Black Drums are a thicker-made fish than the Red Drums, being shaped like a fat pig; they are a very good fish, but not so common with us as to the Northward.

The Angel-Fish is shaped like an English Bream. He is so called for his golden colour which shines all around his head and belly. This is accounted a very good fish, as are most in these parts. The Bermudians have the same sort of fish, and esteem them very much.

Bass or Rock is both in Salt and Fresh Water; when young he much resembles a Grayling, but grows to the size of a large Cod-Fish. They are

very good, firm fish. Their Heads are fouced, and make a noble Dish, if large.

Sheeps-Head has the general Vogue of being the choicest Fish in this place. Indeed it is a very delicate Fish and well relished, yet I think there are several others full as good as the Sheeps-Head. He is much of the bigness of the Angel Fish, and flat as he is. They sometimes weigh two or three pound weight. This Fish has teeth like a sheep and is therefore so called.

Plaice are here very large and plentiful, being the same as in England.

Flounders should have gone amongst the Fresh-Water Fish, because they are caught here in great plenty.

Soles are a fish that we have but lately discovered; they are as good as in any other Part.

Mullets are the same as in England, and great plenty in all places where the water is salt or brackish.

Shads are a sweet fish, but very bony; they are very plentiful at some seasons.

Fat-Backs are a small fish like Mullets, but the fattest ever known. They put nothing into the pan to fry these. They are excellent sweet food.

The white Guard Fish is shaped almost like a Pike, but slender; his Mouth has a long small bill set with teeth, in which he catches small fish; his Scales are knit together like armour. When they dress him they skin him, taking off scales and skin together. His meat is very white and rather looks like Flesh than fish. The English account them no good fish, but the Indians do. The Gall of this fish is green and a violent Cathartick, if taken inwardly.

The Green Guard is shaped, in all respects, like the other save that his scales are very small and fine. He is indifferent Meat. His bones when boiled or fry'd, remain as green as

grass. The same sort of fish comes from before the Mackerel in England.

Scate or Stingray, the same as in England, and very common; but the great plenty of other fish makes these not regarded, for few or none eat them in Carolina, tho' they are almost at every one's door.

Thorn Backs are the same as in England. They are not so common as the Scate and Whip-Rays.

Congar Eels always remain in the Salt-Water; they are much more known in the northern parts of America than with us.

Lampreys are not common; I never saw but one, which was large, and was caught by the Indians in a Ware. They would not eat him but gave him to me.

Eels are nowhere in the World better or more plentiful than in Carolina.

Sun-Fish are flat and rounder than a Bream, and are reckoned a fine-tasted Fish, and not without a reason. They are much the size of Angel-Fish.

Toad Fish are nothing but a Skin full of Prickles, and a few bones; they are as ugly as a Toad and are preserved to look upon, and good for nothing else.

Sea-Tench are taken by a bait near the Inlet, or out at Sea a little Way. They are blackish and exactly like a Tench, except in the Back Fins, which have Prickles like a Pearch. They are as good, if not better than any Tench.

Trouts of the Salt Water are exactly shaped like the Trouts in Europe, having blackish, not red spots. They are in the Salts and are not red within, but white, yet a very good Fish. They are so tender that if they are in or near fresh water, and a sudden frost comes they are benum'd, and float on the Surface of the Water as if dead; and then they take up Canoe-Loads of them. If you put them into Warm Water they presently recover.

The Crocus is a Fish, in shape like a



Pearch, and in shape like a Whiting. They croke and make a noise in your hand when taken with a hook or net. They are very good.

The Herring in Carolina are not so large as in Europe. They spawn there in March and April, running up the fresh rivers, and small fresh runs of water in great shoals, where they are taken. They become red if salted; and dress'd with Vinegar and Oil, resemble an Anchovy very much; for they are far beyond an English Herring when pickled.

Smelts are the same as in England. They lie down a great way in the Sound, towards the Ocean, where, (at some certain seasons) are a great many very fine ones.

The Fresh Water affords no such Bream as in England, that I have as yet discovered; yet there is a Sea Bream which is a flat and thin Fish, as the European Breams are.

The Taylor is a Fish about the bigness of a Trout, but of a bluish green colour, with a forked Tail such as a Mackerel has. They are a delicate fish and plentiful in our salt-waters. Infinite numbers of other species will be hereafter discovered, as yet unknown to us; although I have seen and eaten of several other sorts of fish, which are nowhere mentioned, because as yet, they have no certain names assigned to them. Therefore I shall treat no further of our Salt-Water Fish, but proceed to the Fresh.

The first of these is the Sturgeon, of which we have plenty, all the fresh parts of our rivers being stored with them. The Indians upon and towards the Heads and Falls of our Rivers strike a great many of these and eat them; yet the Indians near the Salt-Waters will not eat them. I have seen an Indian strike one of these Fish seven Feet long, and leave him on the Sands to be eaten by the Gulls. In

May they run up towards the heads of the Rivers, where you see several hundreds of them in one day. The Indians have another way to take them, which is by Nets at the End of a Pole. The bones of these fish make good nutmeg-graters.

The Jack, Pike or Pickerel, is exactly the same in Carolina as they are in England. Indeed I never saw this fish so big and large in America, as I have seen in Europe, these with us being seldom above two foot long, as far as I have yet seen. They are very plentiful with us in Carolina, all our creeks and Ponds being full of them. I once took out of a Ware above three hundred of these Fish at a time.

Trouts, the same in England as in Carolina; but ours are a great way up the Rivers and Brooks that are fresh, having Swift Currents and Stony and Gravelly Bottoms.

The same Gudgeons as in Europe are found in America. The same sort of Pearch as are in England we have likewise in Carolina, tho' I think ours never rise to be so large as in England.

We have a White Pearch, so called because he is of a silver Colour, otherwise like the English Pearch. These we have in great plenty, and they are preferable to the red ones.

The Brown Pearch, which some call Welsh-Men, are the largest sort of Pearches that we have, and very firm, white and sweet fish. These grow to be larger than any Carp, and are very frequent in every Creek and Pond.

The flat or mottled Pearch are shaped almost like a Bream. They are called Irishmen, being freckled or mottled with black or blue spots. They are never taken anywhere but in the fresh water. They are a good fish, but I do not approve of them, no more than of the other sorts of Pearch.

We have another sort of Pearch which is the least sort of all, but as

good meat as any. These are distinguished from the other sorts, by the name of Round-Robins, being flat and very round shaped; they are spotted with red spots, very beautiful, and are easily caught with an Angle, as all the other sort of Pearches are.

We have the same Carp as you have in England, and the same Roach, only scarce so large. Dace are the same as yours, too, but neither of these so large nor plentiful as with you. Loach are the same as in England. Sucking Fish are the nearest in Taste and shape to a Barbel, only they have no barbs.

Catfish are round, blackish fish, with a Great Flat Head, a wide Mouth, and no scales. They sometimes resemble Eels in taste. Both this sort and another, that frequents the salt water, are very plentiful.

Grindals are a long, scaled fish with small eyes; and frequent Ponds, Lakes and Slow Running Creeks and Swamps. They are a soft, sorry Fish, and good for nothing, though some eat them for good Fish.

Old Wives are a Bright, Scaly Fish which frequent the Swamps and Fresh Runs; they seem to be between an English Roach and a Bream, and eat much like the latter. The Indians kill abundance of these and barbakue them, until they are crisp, then transport them in Wooden Hurdles, to their Towns and Quarters.

The Fountain Fish are a white sort which breed in the Clear Running Springs and Fountain waters, where the clearness thereof makes them very difficult to be taken. I cannot say how good they are; because I have never as yet tasted of them.

The White Fish are very large; some being two foot and a half long or more. They are found a great way up in the Freshes of the Rivers; and are firm meat and an extraordinary well relished Fish.

Barbouts and Millers-Thumbs, are the very same here in all respects, as they are in England. What more are in the fresh waters we have not yet discovered, but are satisfied that we are not acquainted with one-third part thereof; for we are told by the Indians of a great many strange and uncouth shapes and sorts of fish which they have found in the Lakes laid down in my charts. However, as we can give no further account of these than by Hear-say, I proceed to treat of the Shell-fish that are found in the Salt Water so far as they have already come to our knowledge.

The large Crabs which we call Stone-Crabs are the same sort as in England, having black tips at the end of their claws. These are plentifully met withal, down in Core Sound, and the South Parts of North Carolina.

The smaller flat Crabs I look upon to be the sweetest of all species. They are the breadth of a lusty man's hand, or rather larger. These are innumerable, lying in most prodigious quantities, all over the Salts of Carolina. They are taken not only to eat, but are the best bait for all sorts of fish, that live in the Salt Water. These Fish are mischievous to night hooks, because they get away all the bait from the Hooks.

Oysters great and small are found almost in every Creek and Gut of Seawater, and are very good and well relished. The large oysters are excellent pickled.

The one Cockle in Carolina is as big as five or six in England. They are often thrown upon the sands on the Sound Side, where the Gulls are always ready to open and eat them.

Clams are a sort of Cockles, only differing in shell, which is thicker and not streaked or ribbed. These are found throughout all the Sound and saltwater Ponds. The meat is the same for Look and Taste as the Cockle. These make

an excellent strong Broth, and eat well either roasted or pickled.

The Muscles in Carolina have a very large shell, striped with dents. They grow by the sides of ponds and creeks in Salt-Water, wherein you may get as many of them as you please. I do not like them so well as the English muscle, which is no good Shell-Fish.

Some of the Shells of the Conks are as large as a man's Hand, but the lesser sort are the best meat, and those not extraordinary. They are shaped like the end of a Horse's Yard. Of their shells the Peak or Wampum is made, which is the richest commodity amongst the Indians. They breed like a long thing shaped like a snake, but containing a sort of joints in the hollowness whereof are thousands of small Conks, no bigger than small grains of pepper.

The Skellops, if well dressed, are a pretty shell fish; but to eat them roasted without any other addition, in my judgment are too luscious.

Man of Noses are a Shell Fish commonly found amongst us. They are valued for increasing vigour in Man, and making barren Women fruitful; but I think they have no need of that fish; for the Women in Carolina are fruitful enough without their help.

Wilks or Periwinkles are not so large here as in the Islands of Scilly, and in other parts of Europe, though very sweet.

The Sea Snail Horn is large and very good Meat; they are excellently shaped, as other Snail Horns are.

Fidlers are a sort of small crabs, that lie in holes in the marshes. The Raccoons eat them very much. I never knew any one try whether they were good meat or not.

Runners live chiefly on the Sand, but sometimes run into the Sea. They have Holes in the Sand Beaches and are a whitish sort of a Crab. Though

small they run as fast as a Man, and are good for nothing but to look at.

Spanish Oysters have a very thin Shell, and rough on the outside. They are very good shell-fish and so large that half a dozen are enough to satisfy an hungry stomach.

The Flatlings are enclosed in a broad thin shell, the whole fish being Flat. They are inferior to no shell-fish this country affords.

Finger Fish are very plentiful in this country; they are of the length of a Man's finger, and lie in the bottom of the Water, about one or two feet deep. They are very good.

Shrimps are here very plentiful and good, and are to be taken with a small box net in great quantities.

The small Cockles are about the bigness of the largest English Cockles, and differ nothing from them, unless in the shells, which are striped cross-wise as well as long-wise.

The Freshwater Shell Fish are:

Muscles, which are eaten by the Indians, after five or six hours' boiling to make them tender, and then are good for nothing.

Craw-Fish in the Brooks and small rivers of water, amongst the Tuskeruro Indians, and up higher, are found very plentifully, and as good as any in the world.

And thus I have gone through the several species of fish, so far as they have come to my knowledge, in the eight years that I have lived in Carolina. I should have made a larger discovery when travelling so far towards the Mountains, and amongst the Hills, had it not been in the Winter Season, which was improper to make any inquiry into any of the species before recited. Therefore, as my intent was, I proceed to what remains of the Present State of Carolina, having already accounted for the Animals and Vegetables as far as this volume should al-



low of; whereby the remainder, though not exactly known, may yet be guessed at if we consider what Latitude Carolina lies in, which reaches from 29 to 36 degrees 30 min. Northern Latitude, as I have before observed. Which Latitude is as Fertile and Pleasant as any in the World, as well for the produce of Minerals, Fruit, Grain and Wine, as other rich Commodities. And indeed, all the experiments that have been made in Carolina, of the Fertility and Natural Advantages of the Country, exceed all expectation, as affording some Commodities, which other places in the same Latitude do not. As for Minerals, as they are subterraneous Products, so, in all new countries, they are the species that are last discovered; and especially in Carolina, where the Indians never look for anything lower than the Superficies of the Earth, being a race of Men the least addicted to delving of any People that inhabit so fine a country as Carolina is. As good, if not better mines than those the Spanish possess in America, lie full west from us; and I am certain that we have as Mountainous Land, and as great probability of having Rich Minerals in Carolina, as any of those parts that are already found to be so rich therein. But, waiving this subject, to some other opportunity, I shall now give you some observations in general, concerning Carolina; which are that first it lies as convenient for Trade as any of the Plantations in America; that we have plenty of Pitch, Tar, Skins of Deer, and Beeves, Furs, Rice, Wheat, Rye, Indian Grain, sundry sort of Pulse, Turpentine, Rozin, Masts, Yards, Planks and Boards, Staves and Lumber. Timber of many common sorts, fit for use, Hemp, Flax, Barley, Oats, Buckwheat, Beef, Pork, Tallow, Hides, Whalebone and Oil, Wax, Cheese, Butter, Etc., besides Drugs, Dyes, Fruit, Silk, Cotton, Indico, Oil and Wine that

we need not doubt of as soon as we make a regular essay, the Country being adorned with Pleasant Meadows, Rivers, Mountains, Valleys, Hills and blessed with wholesome pure Air, especially a little backward from the Sea, where the wild Beasts inhabit, none of which are voracious. The Men are active, the Women fruitful to admiration, every house being full of children, and several women that have come hither barren, have presently proved fruitful. There cannot be a richer Soil, no place abounding more in Flesh and Fowl, both wild and tame, besides Fish, Fruit, Grain, Cider, and many other pleasant Liquors; together with several other necessities for Life and Trade, that are daily found out as new discoveries are made. The Stone and Gout seldom trouble us; the Consumption we are wholly strangers to, no place affording a better remedy for that distemper, than Carolina. For Trade, we lie so near to Virginia that we have the advantage of their Convoys; as also letters from thence at two or three Days at the most; and from some places in a few hours. Add to this that the great number of Ships that come within those Capes for Virginia and Maryland take off our Provisions, and give us Bills of Exchange for England, which is Sterling Money. The Planters in Virginia and Maryland are forced to do the same, the great quantities of tobacco that are planted there making provisions scarce, and Tobacco is a commodity sometimes so low as to bring nothing, whereas provisions and naval stores never fail of a market. Besides, where these are raised, in such plenty as in North Carolina, there always appears good housekeeping, and plenty of all manner of delicate eatables. For instance the Pork of Carolina is very good, the young pigs, fed on Peaches, Maiz, and such other nat-

ural Produce, being some of the sweetest Meat that the World affords, as is acknowledged by all the strangers that have been there. And as for the beef, in Pampticough, and the Southward parts it proves extraordinary. We have not only Provisions plentiful, but Cloaths of our own manufacture, which are made, and daily increase, Cotton, Wool, Hemp and Flax, being of our own growth, and the Women to be highly commended for their Industry in Spinning, and ordering their housewifry to so great advantage as they generally do; which is much more easy by reason this happy Climate, visited with so mild Winters, is much warmer than the Northern Plantations, which saves abundance of Cloaths, fewer serving our necessities, and those of our Servants; but this is not all, for we can go out with our Commodities, to any other Part of the West Indies, or elsewhere in the Depth of Winter; whereas those in New England, New York, Pennsylvania, and the Colonies to the northward of us, cannot stir for ice, but are fast locked in their Harbours. Besides we can trade with South Carolina and pay no duties or customs, no more than their own Vessels, both North and South being under the Lords-Proprietors. We have, as I observed before, another great advantage in not being a Frontier, and so continually being alarmed by the enemy; and what has been accounted a Detriment to us, proves one of the greatest Advantages any people could wish, which is our Country's being faced with a Sound near ten Leagues over in some places, through which, although there be water enough for as large ships to come in at, as in any part hitherto seated in North Carolina; yet the difficulty of that Sound to strangers hinders them from attempting any hostilities against us; and, at

the same time, if we consider the advantages thereof, nothing can appear to be a better situation, than to be fronted with such a Bulwark, which secures us from our Enemies. Furthermore our distance from the sea hinders us from two curses, which attend most other parts of America, viz; Muskeetos, and the Worm-biting, which eats ship's bottoms out, whereas at Bath-Town there is no such thing known, and as for Muskeetos, they hinder us from as little rest as they do in England. Add to this the unaccountable quantities of Fish this Great Water or Sound supplies us withal, whenever we take the Pains to fish for them; Advantages I have no where withal met with in America, except here. As for the Climate, we enjoy a very wholesome and serene sky, a pure and Serene Air, the Sun seldom missing to give us his Daily Blessing, unless now and then on a Winter's Day, which is not so often; and when Cloudy, the first Appearance of a North West Wind clears the Horizon, and restores the Light of the Sun; the Weather in Summer is very Pleasant, the Hotter Months being refreshed with continual breezes of cool reviving Air, and the Spring being as pleasant and beautiful as in any place I ever was in. The Winter, most commonly is so mild, that it looks like an Autumn, being now and then attended with thin North West Winds, that are sharp enough to regulate English Constitutions, and free them from a great many dangerous Distempers, that a single summer afflicts them withal, nothing being wanted as to the natural ornaments and blessings of a country, that conduce to make reasonable men happy. And for those that are otherwise, they are so much their own Enemies, where they are, that they will scarce ever be any one's Friends or

their own, when they are transplanted; so it's much better for all sides that they remain as they are. Not but that there are several Good People, that upon just grounds may be uneasy under their present Burdens; and such I would advise to remove to the place I have been treating of, where they may enjoy their Peace and Religion, and Peaceably eat the Fruits of their Labour, and drink the Wine of their own Vineyards, without the alarms of a troublesome Worldly life. If a man be a botanist, here is a plentiful Field of plants to divert him in. If he be a gardener and delight in that pleasant and happy life, he will meet with a Climate and Soil that will further promote his designs in as great measure, as any man can wish for; and as for the Constitution of this Government, it is so mild and easy in respect to the Properties and Liberties of a Subject, that without rehearsing the Particulars, I say once for all, it is the mildest and best established government in the world, and the Place where any Man may peaceably enjoy his own, without being invaded by another, Rank and Superiority ever giving Place to Justice and Equity, which is the golden rule that every country ought to be built on, and regulated by. Besides, it is worthy our notice, that this province has been settled, and continued the most free from Insults, and Barbarities of the Indians of any Colony that was ever seated in America; which must be esteemed as a particular Providence of God handed down from Heaven to these People; especially when we consider how irregularly they settled North Carolina, yet how undisturbed they have remained, free from any foreign danger or loss even to this very day. And what may be well looked upon for as great a Miracle, this is a Place where no Malefactors are found,

deserving death, or even a Prison for Debtors, there being no more than two persons, as far as I have been able to learn, ever suffered death as criminals, although it has been a settlement near sixty years; one of whom was a Turk that committed Murder, the other an old woman for Witchcraft. These, 'tis true, were on the Stage and acted many years before I knew the Place; but as for the last, I wish it had been undone to this day; although they give a great many arguments to justify the deed, which I had rather they should have a Hand in than myself; seeing I could never approve taking life away upon such accusations, the justice whereof I could never yet understand.

But to return to the subject in Hand; we there make extraordinary good Bricks throughout the Settlement. All sorts of Handicrafts, as Carpenters, Joiners, Masons, Plainsters, Shoemakers, Tanners, Taylors, Weavers and most others, may with small beginnings and God's blessings, thrive very well in this Place and Provide for their Children, Land being sold at a much cheaper rate than at any Place in America, and may as I suppose be purchased of the Lords Proprietors here in England, or of the Governour there for the time being, by any that shall have a mind to transport themselves to that Country. The Farmers that go thither, (for which sort of Men it is a very thriving Place) should take with them some particular seeds of grass, as Tresfoil, Clover-grass, all sorts, Sanfoin, or common grass, that which is a Rarity in Europe, especially what has sprung and rose first from a warm Climate, and will endure the Sun without Flinching. Likewise if there be any extraordinary sort of grain for increase of hardness, and some Fruit Trees of choice kinds, they will be both profitable and pleasant to have with



you, where you may see the fruits of your labour in perfection in a few years. The necessary Instruments of Husbandry I need not acquaint the Husbandman withal; Hoes of all sorts; Axes may be had, with Saws, Wedges, Augurs, Nails, Hammers, and what other things may be necessary for building with brick or stone, which sort your Inclination and Conveniency lead you to. For, after having looked over this Treatise, you must needs be acquainted with the nature of the Country, and therefore cannot but be judges, what it is that you will chiefly want. As for Land, none need want it for taking up, even in the Places there seated on the Navigable Creeks, Rivers and Harbours, without being driven into remoter Holes and Corners of the Country, for settlements, which all are forced to do, who, at this day, settle in most or all of the other English Plantations planted in America; which are already become so populous, that a New Comer cannot get a beneficial and commodious Seat, unless he purchases, when, in most places in Virginia and Maryland, a thousand acres of good Land, seated on a Navigable Water

will cost a thousand Pounds; whereas with us, it is at present obtained for the fiftieth part of the money. Besides our Land pays to the Lords but an easy Quit-Rent, or yearly Acknowledgement, and the other Settlements pay two shillings per Hundred. All these things duly weighed, any rational man that has a mind to purchase Land in the Plantations for a settlement of himself and family will soon discover the advantages that attend the Settlers and purchasers of Land in Carolina, above all other Colonies in the English Dominions in America. And as there is a free exercise of all Persuasions amongst the Christians, the Lords Proprietors to encourage Ministers of the Church of England, have given free Lands towards the Maintenance of a Church and especially for the Parish of St. Thomas in Pampticough, over-against the Town, is already laid out for a Glebe of two hundred and twenty-three acres of rich well-situated Land, that a Parsonage House may be built upon. And now I shall proceed to give an account of the Indians, their Customs and Ways of Living, with a short Dictionary of their Speech.

## CHAPTER IV.

The Indians, which were the Inhabitants of America, when the Spaniards and other Europeans discovered the several Parts of that Country, are the people which we reckon the Natives thereof; as indeed they were, when we first found out those Parts, and appeared therein. Yet this has not wrought in me a full satisfaction, to allow these People to have been the Ancient Dwellers of the New World, or the Tract of Land we call America. The reasons that I have to think otherwise, are too many to set down here; but I shall give the Reader a few, before I proceed; and some others he will find scattered in my writings elsewhere.

In Carolina (The Part I now treat of) are the fairest Marks of a Deluge (that at some time has probably made strange Alterations, as to the Station that Country was then in) that ever I saw, or I think, read of, in any History. Amongst the other Subterraneous Matters, that have been discover'd, we found, in digging of a Well that was 26 foot deep, at the Bottom thereof, many large Pieces of the Tulip-Tree, and several other sorts of Wood, some of which were cut and notch'd and some squared, as the Joices of a House are, which appear'd (in the Judgment of all that saw them) to be wrought with Iron Instruments; it seeming impossible for anything made of Stone, or what they were found to make use of, to cut wood in that manner. It cannot be argued that the Wood so cut, might float from some other Continent; because Hickory and the Tulip-Tree are spontaneous in America, and in no other places, that I could ever learn. It is to be acknowl-

edged that the Spaniards give us relations of magnificent Buildings, which were raised by the Indians of Mexico and other Parts, which they discovered and conquered; amongst whom no Iron Instruments were found; but 'tis a great misfortune that no Person in that Expedition was so curious, as to take an exact Draught of the Fabricks of those People, which would have been a discovery of great Value, and very acceptable to the Ingenious; for as to the Politeness of Stones, it may be effected by Collision, and Grinding, which is of a contrary Nature, on Several Accounts, and disproves not my Arguments in the least.

The next is, the Earthen Pots that are often found under Ground, and at the Foot of the Banks where the Water has often washed them away. They are for the most part broken in pieces; but we find them of a different sort of comparison of those the Indians use at this day, who have had no other ever since the English discovered America. The Bowels of the Earth cannot have altered them, since they are thicker, of another Shape, and Composition, and nearly approach to the Urns of the Ancient Romans.

Again, the Peaches, which are the only tame Fruit, or what is Foreign, that these people enjoy, which is an eastern Product, and will keep and retain its vegetative and growing Faculty, the longest of anything of that nature, that I know of. The Stone, as I elsewhere have remarked, is thicker than any other sort of Peaches in Europe, or of the European sort now growing in America, and is observed to grow if planted, after it has been

for several Years laid by; and it seems very probable that these people might come from some Eastern Country; for when you ask them whence their forefathers came, that first inhabited the Country, they will point to the Westward and say, Where the Sun Sleeps, our Forefathers came Thence, which at that distance may be reckoned among the Eastern Parts of the World. And to this day they are a shifting, wandering People, for I know some Indian Nations that have changed their settlements many Hundred Miles, sometimes no less than a thousand, as is proved by the Savanna Indians, who formerly lived on the banks of the Mississippi, and removed thence to the Head of one of the Rivers of South Carolina; since which (for some dislike) most of them are removed to live in the quarters of the Iroquois or Sinnagars, which are on the Heads of the Rivers that Disgorge themselves into the Bay of Chesapeak. I once met with a young Indian Woman that had been brought from beyond the Mountains, and was sold for a Slave into Virginia. She spoke the same language as the Coranine Indians, that dwell near Cape-Look-Out, allowing for some few words, which were different, yet no otherwise, than they might understand one another very well.

The Indians of North Carolina are a well-shaped, clean-made People, of different Statures, as the Europeans are, yet chiefly inclined to be tall. They are a very straight People, and never bend forwards, or stoop in the shoulders, unless overpowered by Old Age. Their limbs are exceedingly well-shaped. As for their Legs and Feet they are generally the handsomest in the World. Their Bodies are a little Flat, which is occasioned by their being Laced hard down to a Board in their Infancy. This is all the Cradle they have, which I shall describe at

large elsewhere; their Eyes are black or of a Dark Hazel; The White is marbled with red Streaks, which is ever common to these people, unless when sprung from a white Father or Mother. Their Colour is of a Tawny, which would not be so dark, did they not dawb themselves with Bear's Oil and a Colour like burnt Cork. This is begun in their Infancy and is continued for a long time, which fills the Pores, and enables them better to endure the Extremity of the Weather. They are never bald on their Heads, although never so old, which I believe proceeds from their Heads being always uncovered, and the Greasing their Hair (so often as they do) with Bear's Fat, which is a great Nourisher of the Hair, and causes it to grow very fast. Amongst the Bear's Oil, (when they intend to be fine) they mix a certain red powder that comes from a Scarlet Root, which they get in the hilly country, near the foot of the great ridge of Mountains, and it is no where else to be found. They have this Scarlet Root in great esteem, and sell it for a great Price, one to another. The reason of its Value is, because they not only go a long way for it, but are in great danger of the Sinnagars or Iroquois, who are mortal Enemies to all our Indians, and very often take them Captives, to kill them before they return from their Voyage. The Tuskeruros and other Indians have often brought this seed with them from the Mountains, but it would never grow in our Land. With this and Bear's Grease they anoint their Heads and Temples, which is esteemed as ornamental, as sweet Powder to our Hair. Besides this Root has the Virtue of Killing Lice and suffers none to abide or breed in their Heads. For want of this Root they sometimes use Pecoon-Root, which is of a Crimson Colour, but it is apt to dye the Hair of an ugly Hue.



Their Eyes are commonly full and manly, and their Gate sedate and majestic. They never walk backward and forward as we do, nor contemplate on the Affairs of Loss and Gain; the things which daily perplex us. They are dexterous and steady both as to their Hands and Feet, to Admiration. They will walk over deep Brooks, and Creeks, on the smallest Poles, and that without any Fear or Concern. Nay an Indian will walk on the ridge of a Barn or House and look down the Gable-end and spit upon the Ground, as unconcerned as if he were walking on Terra Firma. In Running, Leaping or any such other exercise, their Legs seldom miscarry and give them a fall; and as for letting any thing fall out of their hands, I never yet knew one Example. They are no Inventors of any Arts or Trades worthy of mention; the reason of which I take to be that they are not possessed with that Care and Thoughtfulness how to provide for the Necessaries of Life as the Europeans are; yet they will learn anything very soon. I have known an Indian stock Guns better than most of our Joiners, although he never saw one stocked before, and besides his Working-Tool was only a sorry Knife. I have also known several of them that were Slaves to the English, learn Handicraft Trades very handily and speedily. I never saw a Dwarf among them nor one that was Hump-backed. Their teeth are yellow with Smoking Tobacco, which both Men and Women are much addicted to. They tell us, that they had Tobacco amongst them, before the European made any discovery of that Continent. It differs in the Leaf from the sweet-scented, and Oroonoko, which are the Plants we raise and cultivate in America. Theirs differs likewise much in the Smell, when green, from our Tobacco before cured. They do not use the same

way to cure it as we do; and therefore the Difference must be very considerable in Taste; for all Men (that know Tobacco) must allow, that it is the Ordering thereof which gives a Hogoo to that Weed, rather than any natural relish it possesses when green. Although they are great Smokers, yet they never are seen to take it in Snuff or chew it.

They have no hairs on their Faces (except some few,) and those but little. They are continually plucking it away from their Faces, by the Roots. . . . Although we reckon these a very smooth People, and free from Hair; yet I once saw a middle-aged Man, that was hairy all down his back, the Hairs being above an inch long. As there are found very few or scarce any, Deformed or Cripples, amongst them, so neither did I ever see but one Blind Man, and then they would give me no account how his Blindness came. They had a Use for him, which was to lead him with a Girl, Woman, or Boy, by a string; so they put what burden they pleased upon his back and made him very serviceable upon all such occasions. No people have better Eyes, or see better in the Night or Day, than the Indians. Some allege, that the Smoke of the Pitch-Pine, which they chiefly burn, doth both preserve and strengthen the Eyes, as perhaps it may do, because that Smoke never offends the Eyes, tho' you hold your Face over a Great Fire thereof. This is occasioned by the volatile Part of the Turpentine which rises with the Smoke, and is of a friendly, balsamick Nature; for the Ashes of the Pine Tree afford no fix'd salt in them. They let their Nails grow very long, which, they reckon, is the Use nails are design'd for, and laugh at the Europeans for pairing theirs, which they say, disarms them of that which Nature design'd for them.

They are not of so robust and strong bodies, as to lift great Burdens and endure Labour and Slavish work, as the Europeans are, yet some that are Slaves prove very good and laborious; but of themselves, they never work as the English do, taking care for no further what is than absolutely necessary to support life. In Travelling and Hunting they are very indefatigable; because that carries a Pleasure along with the Profit. I have known some of them very strong; and as for Running and Leaping they are extraordinary Fellows, and will dance for several Nights together with the greatest Briskness imaginable, their Wind never failing them.

Their Dances are of Different Natures and for every sort of Dance they have a tune which is allotted for that Dance; as, if it be a War-Dance they will have a War-Like Tune, wherein they express with all the passion and Vehemence imaginable what they intend to do with their Enemies; how they will kill, roast, scalp, beat and make Captive, such and such numbers of them, and how many they have destroyed before. All these Songs are made New for every Feast, nor is one and the same song sung at two several Festivals. Some one of the Nation (which have the best Gift of expressing their Design) is appointed by the King, and War-Captains, to make these Songs.

Others are made for Feasts of another Nature; as, when several Towns, or different Nations have made Peace with one another; then the Song suits both Nations and relates, how the Bad Spirit makes them go to War, and Destroy one another; but it shall never be so again, but that their Sons and Daughters shall marry together, and the two Nations love one another and become as one People.

They have a third sort of Feasts and Dances, which are always when the Harvest of corn is ended, and in the Spring. The one to return thanks to the Good Spirit for the Fruits of the Earth, the other to beg the same blessings for the succeeding Year. And, to encourage the Young Men to labour stoutly, in Planting their Maiz and Pulse, they set a sort of an idol in the field, which is dressed up exactly like an Indian, having all the Indian habits, besides abundance of Wampum, and their Money, made of Shells, that hang about his Neck. The Image none of the young Men dare approach; for the Old Ones will not suffer them to come near him, but tell them that he is some famous Indian Warrior, that died a great while ago, and now is come amongst them to see if they work well, which, if they do, he will go to the good Spirit and speak to Him to send them Plenty of Corn and make all the young Men expert hunters and Mighty Warriors. All this While, the King and Old Men sit around the Image, and seemingly pay a profound Respect to the same. One great Help to these Indians in carrying on these Cheats, and inducing the Youths to do what they please is the uninterrupted silence which is ever kept and observed, with all the Respect and Veneration imaginable.

At these Feasts, which are set out with all the magnificence their fare allows of, the Masquerades begin at night and not Before. There is commonly a Fire made in the Middle of the House, which is the largest in the Town, and is very often the Dwelling of their King, or War-Captain, where sit two men on the Ground, upon a Mat; one with a rattle made of a Gourd, with some Beans in it; the other with a Drum made of an Earthen Pot, covered with a dressed

Deer Skin, and one Stick in his Hand to beat thereon, and so they both begin the Song appointed. At the same time one Drums and the other Rattles, which is all the artificial Music of their own Making I ever saw among them. To these two Instruments they sing, which carries no Air with it, but is a sort of unsavory Jargon; yet their Cadences and raising of their Voices are formed with that Equality and Exactness, that (to us Europeans) it seems admirable how they should continue their Songs, without once missing to agree, each with the other's Note and Tune.

As for their Dancing, were there Masters of the Profession amongst them, as there are with us, they would dearly earn their money; for these Creatures take the most pains with it that Men are able to endure. I have seen thirty odd together a-dancing until every one dropp'd down with Sweat, as if Water had been poured down their Backs. They use those hard Labours to make them able to endure Fatigue, and improve their Wind, which indeed is very long and durable, it being a hard matter, in any exercise, to dispossess them of it.

At these Feasts they meet from all the Towns within Fifty or Sixty Miles around, where they buy and sell several Commodities, as we do at Fairs and Markets. Besides, they game very much, and often strip themselves of all they have in the World, and what is more, I have known several of them sell themselves away, so that they have remained the Winner's Servants, till their Relations or themselves could raise the money to redeem them; and when this happens the Loser is never dejected or melancholy at the loss, but laughs and seems no less contented than if he had won. They never differ at Gaming, nor did I

ever see a Dispute about the Legality thereof, so much as rise amongst them.

The chiefest Game is a sort of Arithmetic, which is managed by a Parcel of small split Reeds, the thickness of a small Bent; these are made very nicely, so that they part and are tractable in their Hands. They are fifty-one in number, their length about seven inches; when they play they throw part of them to their Antagonist; the art is to discover, upon sight, how many you have, and what you throw to him that plays with you. Some are so expert with their numbers that they will tell ten times together what they threw out of their Hands. Although the whole Play is carried on with the quickest Motion its possible to use, yet some are so expert at this game as to win great Indian Estates by this Play. A good set of these reeds, fit to Play withal, are valued and sold for a dressed Doe Skin.

They have several other Plays and Games, as with the Kernels or Stones of Persimmons, which are in effect the same as our Dice, because Winning or Losing depend on which side appears uppermost, and how they happen to fall together.

Another Game is managed with a Batoon and a Ball, and resembles our Trap-ball; besides several Nations have several Games and Pestimes which are not used by others.

These Savages live in Wigwams, or Cabins built of Bark, which are made round like an Oven to prevent any danger by hard Gales of Wind. They make the Fire in the middle of the House, and have a Hole at the top of the Roof, right above the Fire, to let out the smoke. These Dwellings are as Hot as Stoves, where the Indians sleep and Sweat all night. The Floors thereof are never paved nor swept, so that they have always loose earth on them.



They are often troubled with a multitude of Fleas, especially near the Places where they dress their Deer-Skins, because that Hair harbours them, yet I have never felt any ill, unsavory Smell in their Cabins, whereas, should we live in our Houses as they do, we should be poisoned with our own Nastiness; which confirms these Indians to be, as they really are, some of the sweetest People in the world.

The Bark they make their Cabins withal is generally Cypress, or red or white Cedar, and sometimes when they are a great way from any of these Woods, they make use of Pine Bark, which is the Worser sort. In building these fabricks they get very long Poles of Pine, Cedar, Hickory or any other Wood that will bend; these are the thickness of the small of a Man's Leg, at the thickest end of which they generally strip off the bark, and warm them well in the fire, which makes them tough and fit to bend; afterwards they stick the thickest ends of them in the ground, above two yards asunder, in a circular form, the distance they design the Cabin to be (which is not always round but sometimes oval); then they bend the tops and bring them together and bind their ends with bark of trees, that is proper for that use, as Elm is, or sometimes the Moss that grows on the Trees, and is a yard or two long and never Rots; then they brace them with other poles, so that they are very warm and tight, and will keep firm against all the Weathers that blow. They have other sorts of Cabins without Windows, which are for their Granaries, Skins, and Merchandizes; and others that are covered overhead and the rest left open for air. These have Reed Hurdles like Tables, to lie and sit on in summer, and serve for pleasant Banqueting Houses in the Hot Season of the Year. The Cabins they dwell in have Benches all around, ex-

cept where the door stands. On these they lay Beasts-Skins and Mats made of Rushes, whereon they sleep and loll. In one of these several Families commonly live, though all related to one another.

As to the Indians Food, it is of several sorts, which are as follows:

Venison, and Fawns in the Bag, cut out of the Doe's Belly; Fish of all sorts, the Lamprey-Eel excepted, and the Sturgeon our Salt-Water Indians will not touch; Bear and Beaver; Panther; Pole-Cat; Wild-Cat; Possum; Raccoon; Hares and Squirrels roasted with their Guts in; Snakes, all Indians will not eat them, tho' some do; all wild Fruits that are Palatable, some of which they dry and keep against Winter, as all sorts of Fruits, and Peaches which they dry, and make Quiddonies, and Cakes, that are pleasant, and a little tartish; young Wasps when they are white in the Combs before they can fly, this is esteemed a dainty; All sorts of Tortoise and Terebins; Shell-Fish and Stingray or Scate, dried; Gourds; Melons; Cucumbers; Squashes; Pulse of all sorts; Rockahomine Meal, which is their Maiz, parched and pounded into powder; Fowl of all sorts, that are eatable; Ground-Nuts or Wild Potatoes; Acorns and Acorn Oil; Wild-Bulls; Beef, Mutton, Pork, etc., from the English; Indian Corn, or Maiz, made into several sorts of Bread; Ears of Corn roasted in the Summer or preserved against the Winter.

The Victuals is Common, throughout the whole Kindred Relations, and often to the whole Town; especially, when they are in Hunting-Quarters, then they all fare alike, whichsoever of them kills the Game. They are very kind and charitable to one another, but more especially to those of their own Nation; for if any one of them has suffered any Loss by Fire or otherwise, they order the grieved persons to make

a Feast, and invite them all thereto, which, on the day appointed, they come to, and after every Man's mess of Victuals is dealt to him, one of their Speakers or grave old Men, makes an Harangue, and acquaints the Company That that Man's House has been burnt, wherein all his Goods were destroyed; That he and his Family very narrowly escaped; That he is every Man's friend in that Company; and, That it is all their Duties to help him, as he would do to any of them, had like Misfortune befallen them. After this Oration is over, every Man, according to his quality, throws him down upon the Ground some Present, which is commonly Beads, Ronoak, Peak, Skins or Furs, and which very often amounts to treble the amount he has suffered. The same assistance they give to any Man that wants to build a Cabin, or make a Canoe. They say it is our Duty thus to do; for there are several Works that one Man cannot effect, therefore we must give him our help, otherwise our Society will fall, and we shall be deprived of those urgent Necessities which life requires. They have no Fences to part one anothers Lots in their Corn-Fields; but every Man knows his own, and it scarce ever happens that they rob one another of so much as an Ear of Corn, which if any is found to do, he is sentenced by the Elders to work, and plant for him that was robbed, till he is recompensed for all the damage he has suffered in his Corn-Field; and this is punctually performed, and the Thief held in Disgrace that steals from any of his Country-Folks. It often happens that a Woman is destitute of her Husband, and has a great many Children to maintain; such a Person they always help, and make their young men plant, reap and do everything for her that she is not capable of doing for herself; yet they do not allow any one to be idle, but to em-

ploy themselves in some Work or other.

They never fight with one another, unless Drunk, nor do you ever hear any scolding amongst them. They say the Europeans are always wrangling and uneasy, and wonder they do not go out of this World, since they are so uneasy and discontented in it. All their Misfortunes and Losses end in Laughter; for if their Cabins take fire, and all their Goods are burnt therein, (indeed all will strive to prevent further Damage whilst there is any possibility) yet such a misfortune ends in a hearty fit of laughter, unless some of their Kinsfolk and Friends have lost their Lives; but then the Case is altered and they become very pensive, and go into deep Mourning, which is continued for a considerable time; sometimes longer or shorter, just according to the Dignity of the Person, and the Number of Relations he had near to him.

When an Indian is dead the greater person he is the more expensive is his Funeral. The first thing which is done is, to place the nearest Relations near the Corps, who mourn and weep very much, having their hair hung down their Shoulders, in a very forlorn manner. After the dead Person has laid a Day and a Night in one of their Hurdies of Canes, commonly in some out-House made for that purpose, those that officiate about the Funeral go into Town, and the first young Men they Meet withal that have Blankets or Match Coats on, whom they think fit for their Turn, they strip them from their Backs, who suffer them to do so without any Resistance. In these they wrap the dead Bodies, and convey them with two or three Mats which the Indians make of Rushes or Cane; and last of all they have a long Web of woven Reeds, or hollow Canes, which is the Coffin of the Indians, and is

brought around several times and is tied fast at both ends, which indeed looks very decent and well. Then the Corps is brought out of the House into the Orchard of Peach-Trees, where another Hurdle is made to receive it, about which comes all the Relations and Nation that the dead person belonged to, besides several from other Nations in Alliance with them; all which sit down on the Ground, upon Mats spread there for that purpose; where the Doctor or Conjurer appears, and, after some time, makes a sort of O-yes, at which all are very silent. Then he begins to give an account who the dead person was, and how stout a man he approved himself; how many Enemies and Captives he had killed and taken; how strong, tall and nimble he was; that he was a great Hunter, a lover of his Country, and possessed of a great many beautiful Wives and children, esteemed the greatest of Blessings among these Savages, in which they have a true Notion. Thus this Orator runs on, highly extolling the dead Man, for his Valour, Conduct, Strength, Riches and Good Humour; and enumerating his Guns, Slaves and almost everything he was possess'd of, when living. After which, he addresses himself to the People of that Town or Nation, and bids them Supply the Dead Man's Place, by following his steps, who he assures them, is gone into the Country of Souls (which they think lies a great way off, in this World, which the Sun visits, in his ordinary Course) and that he will have the enjoyment of handsome young Women, great Store of Deer to hunt, never Meet with Hunger, Cold or Fatigue, but everything to answer his Expectation and Desire. This is the Heaven they propose to themselves; but on the contrary, for those Indians that are lazy, thievish amongst themselves, bad Hunters and no Warriours, nor of

much use to the Nation, to such they allot in the next World, Hunger, Cold, Troubles, Ugly Old Women for their Companions, with Snakes and all sorts of Nasty Victuals to feed on. Thus is marked out their Heaven and Hell. After all this Harangue, he diverts the People with some of their Traditions, as when there was a Violent hot Summer or very hard Winter; when any notable Distempers raged amongst them; when they were at War with such and such Nations; how victorious they were, and what were the Names of their War-Captains. To prove the times more exactly, he produces the Records of the Country, which are a Parcel of Reeds of different lengths, with several distinct marks known to none but themselves; by which they seem to guess, very exactly, at Accidents that happened many years ago; nay two or three Ages or more. The reason I have to believe what they tell me, on this Account, is because I have been at the meetings of several Indian Nations; and they agree in relating the same Circumstances, as to Time, very exactly; as, for example they say, there was so hard a winter in Carolina 105 years ago, that the great Sound was frozen over and the Wild geese came into the Woods to eat Acorns and they were so tame (I suppose through Want) that they were killed abundantly in the Woods by knocking them on the Head with Sticks.

But, to return to the dead Man. When this Long Tale is ended by him that spoke first; perhaps a second begins another long Story; so a third and fourth if there be so many Doctors present; which all tell one and the same thing. At last the Corps is brought away from that Hurdle to the Grave, by four young Men, attended by the Relations, the King, Old Men and all the Nation. When they come



to the Sepulchre, which is about six foot deep, and eight foot long, having at each end, (that is, at the Head and Foot) a Light-Wood or Pitch-Pine Fork driven close down the sides of the Grave, firmly into the Ground; (these two forks are to contain a Ridge-Pole, as you shall understand presently) before they lay the Corps into the Grave they cover the bottom two or three times over with Bark of Trees, then they let down the Corps (with two Belts, that the Indians carry their Burdens withal very leisurely upon the said Barks; then they lay over a Pole of the Same Wood, in the two Forks, and having a great many Pieces of Pitch-Pine logs, about two foot and a half long, they stick them in the sides of the Grave down each end, and near the top thereof, where the other Ends lie on the Ridge-Pole, so that they are declining like the roof of a House. These being very thick-plac'd they cover them (many times double) with Bark; then they throw the Earth thereon, that came out of the Grave, and beat it down very firm, by this means the Dead Body lies in a Vault, nothing touching him; so that when I saw this way of burial, I was mightily pleased with it, esteeming it very pleasant and decent, as having seen a great many Christians buried without the tenth part of that Ceremony and Decency. Now when the Flesh is rotten and Moulder'd from the Bones they take up the Carcass and clean the Bones, and joint them together; afterwards they dress them up in pure white dressed Deer-Skins, and lay them amongst their Grandees and Kings in the Quigozon, which is their royal Tomb or Burial-Place of their Kings and War-Captains. This is a very large Magnificent Cabin, (according to their Building) which is raised at the Publick Charge of the Nation, and maintained in a great deal of form

and Neatness. About seven foot high is a Floor or Loft made, on which lie all their Princes and great Men, that have died for several Hundred years, all attired in the dress I have before told you of. No person is to have his bones lie here and be thus dressed, unless he gives a round sum of their Money to the Rulers, for Admittance. If they remove never so far, to live in a Foreign Country, they never fail to take all these dead Bones with them, tho' the Tediousness of their short daily Marches keeps them never so long on their Journey. They reverence and adore this Quigozon, with all the Veneration and Respect that is possible for such a People to discharge, and had rather lose all than have any Violence or Injury offer'd thereto. These Savages differ some small matter in their Burials; some burying right upwards, and otherwise, as you are acquainted withal from my Journal from South to North Carolina. Yet they all agree in their Mourning, which is to appear every night at the Sepulchre, and howl and weep in a very dismal manner, having their Faces dawb'd over with Light-Wood Soot, (which is the same as Lamp-Black) and Bears Oil. This renders them as black as it is possible to make themselves, so that theirs very much resembles the Faces of Executed Men boil'd in Tar. If the Dead Person was a Grandee, to carry on the Funeral Ceremonies, they hire people to cry and Lament over the Dead Body. Of this sort, there are several that practice this for a livelihood, and are very expert at shedding Abundance of Tears, and howling like Wolves and so discharging their office with abundance of Hypocrisy and Art. The Women are never Accompanied with these Ceremonies after Death; and to what World they allot that sex I never understood, unless to wait on their dead Husbands; but they have more

wit than some of the Eastern Nations; who sacrifice themselves to accompany their Husbands into the next World. It is the Dead Man's relations, by Blood, as his Uncles, Brothers, Sisters, Cousins, Sons and Daughters, that mourn in good earnest; the Wives thinking their Duty is discharged, and that they are become free, when their Husband is dead; so, as fast as they can, look out for another, to supply his Place.

As for the Indian Women, which now happen in my Way; when young, and at Maturity, they are as fine-shap'd Creatures (take them generally) as any in the Universe. They are of a tawny Complexion, their Eyes very brisk and amorous; their Smiles afford the finest Composure a face can possess; their Hands are of the finest make, with small long Fingers, and as soft as their Cheeks; and their Whole bodies of a Smooth Nature. They are not so uncouth or unlikely, as we suppose them. They are most of them mercenary, except the married Women, who sometimes bestow their favors also to some or other, in their Husband's absence, For which they never ask any reward. As for the Report that they are never found unconstant, like the Europeans, it is wholly false; for were the Old World and the new one put into a Pair of Scales (in point of constancy) it would be a hard Matter to discern which was the heavier. . . . The Indian Traders are those which travel and abide amongst the Indians for a long space of time; sometimes for a Year, two, or three. These Men commonly have their Indian Wives, whereby they soon learn the Indian Tongue and keep a friendship with the Savages. They find these Indian Girls very serviceable to them, on account of dressing their Victuals and instructing 'em in the Affairs and Customs of the Country. Moreover such a Man gets a great trade with the Savages; for when a person that lives

amongst them is reserv'd from the Conversation of their Women, 'tis impossible for him ever to accomplish his Designs amongst that People. It is a certain rule and Custom, amongst all the Savages of America that I was ever acquainted withal, to let the children always fall to the Women's lot. And therefore, on this Score, it ever seems impossible for the Christians to get their Children (which they have by these Indian Women) away from them; whereby they might bring them up in the Knowledge of the Christian Principles. Nevertheless, we often find, that English Men and other Europeans that have been accustom'd to the Conversation of these Savage Women and their Way of Living, have been so allur'd with that careless sort of Life, as to be constant to their Indian Wife and her relations, so long as they Liv'd, without ever desiring to return again amongst the English, altho' they had very fair Opportunities of Advantages amongst their Countrymen, of which sort I have known several. As for the Indian Marriages, I have read and heard of a great deal of Form and Ceremony used, which I never saw, nor yet could learn in the time I have been amongst them, any otherwise than I shall here give an Account of; which is as follows. When any young Indian has a mind for such a Girl to his Wife, he, or some one for him, goes to the Young Woman's Parents, if living; if not to her nearest Relations; where they make Offers of the Match betwixt the Couple. The Relations reply, they will consider of it, which serves for a sufficient Answer, till there be a second meeting about the Marriage which is generally brought into Debate before all the Relations (that are Old People) on both Sides; and sometimes the King with all his great Men give their Opinions therein, if it be agreed on, and the young Woman approves thereof (for

these Savages never give their children in Marriage without their own consent) the man pays so much for his Wife; and the Handsomer she is, the greater Price she bears. Now, it often happens that the Man has not so much of their Money ready as he is to pay for his Wife; but if they know him to be a good Hunter, and that he can raise the Sum, agreed for, in some few Moons, or any little time, they agree, she shall go along with him as betroth'd. Yet the Women are quite contrary, and those Indian Girls that have convers'd with the English and other Europeans never care for the conversation of their own Countrymen afterwards. The Indian men are not so vigorous and impatient in their Love as we are. They never marry so near as a first Cousin; and although there is nothing more coveted amongst them than to marry a Woman of their own Nation, yet when the Nation consists of a very few People (as nowadays it often happens, so that they are all of them related to one another) then they look out for Husbands and Wives amongst strangers. An Indian is allowed to marry two Sisters, or his Brother's Wife. The Marriages of these Indians are no farther binding than the Man and Woman agree together. Either of them has Liberty to leave the other upon any frivolous excuse they can make, yet whoever takes the Woman that was another Man's before, and bought by him, as they all are, must certainly pay to her former Husband, whatsoever he gave for her. Nay, if she be a Widow and her Husband died in debt, whoever takes her to Wife, pays all her Husband's Obligations, tho' never so many; yet the Woman is not required to pay anything (unless she is willing) that was owing from her Husband, so long as she keeps single. You may see Men selling their Wives as Man do horses in a Fair, a Man being allow'd not only to

change as often as he pleases, but likewise to have as Many Wives as he is able to Maintain. I have often seen very Old Indian Men (that have been Grandees in their Own Nation) have three or four very likely young Indian Wives, which I have much wondered at. They are never to boast of their Intrigues with the Women. This proceeds not on the score of Reputation, for there is no such thing known amongst them; yet they retain and possess a Modesty which requires those passions never to be Divulged. . . . The Indians say, that the Woman is a weak creature, and easily drawn away by the Man's Persuasions; for which reason they lay no blame upon her, but the Man (who ought to be the master of his Passion) for persuading her to it.

They are of a very hale Constitution, their breaths are as sweet as the air they breathe in, yet their Love is never of that Force and Continuance that any of them ever runs Mad or makes away with themselves on that score. They never love beyond retrieving their first indifferences and when slighted are as ready to untie the knot at one end as you are at the other. Yet I knew an European man who after living with one of these Indian women married a Christian, and when he went to visit his Indian Mistress she made answer that she then had forgot she ever knew him, so fell a crying and went out of the Cabin (away from him) in great disorder.

The Indian Women's work is to cook the Victuals for the Whole family, and to make Mats, Baskets, Girdles, of Possum-Hair and such like. They never plant the Corn amongst us, as they do amongst the Iroquois, who are always at war and hunting. Therefore, the Plantation Work is left for the Women and Slaves to perform, and look after; whilst they are wand'ring all over the



Continent betwixt the two Bays of Mexico and St. Lawrence.

The Mats the Indian Women make are of Rushes, and about five Foot high and two fathom long, and sew'd double, that is, two together; whereby they become very commodious to lay under our Beds or to sleep on in the Summer Season in the day-time and for our Slaves in the Night. There are other Mats made of Flags, which the Tuskeruro Indians make and sell to the Inhabitants. The Baskets our Neighboring Indians make are all made of a very fine sort of bulrushes, and sometimes of Silk-Grass, which they work with figures of Beasts, Birds, Fishes, etc. A great way up in the Country both Baskets and Mats are made of the Split Reeds, which are only the outward shining part of the Cane. Of these I have seen Mats, Baskets, and Dressing-Boxes, very artificially done. . . .

The Indian Wife never fails of proving so good a Nurse as to bring her child up free from the Rickets and Distempers that proceed from the Teeth, with many other Distempers which attack our Infants in England and other Parts of Europe. They always Nurse their own children themselves, unless Sickness or Death prevents. The Husband takes care to provide a Cradle, which is soon made, consisting of a piece of flat wood, which they hew with their Hatchets to the likeness of a Board; It is about two foot long and a foot broad; to this they brace and tie the child down very close. Some Nations have very flat Heads, which is made whilst tied on this Cradle. These Cradles are apt to make the body flat; yet they are the most portable things that can be invented; for there is a string which goes from one Corner of the Board to the other, whereby the Mother flings her Child on her Back; so the infant's back is toward's hers and its face looks up towards the sky.

If it rains, she throws her Leather or Woolen Match-Coat over her head, which covers the Child all over, and secures her and it from the injuries of rainy Weather. I never knew any of their Women, that had not children when Married. The Womens Dress is, in severe Weather, a hairy Match-Coat in the Nature of a Plaid, which keeps out the cold, and (as I said before) defends their Children from the Prejudices of the Weather. At other times they have only a sort of Flap or Apron containing two Yards in Length, and better than half a Yard Deep. Sometimes, it is a Deer-Skin, dressed white, and pointed or slit at the bottom, like fringe. When this is clean, it becomes them very well. Others wear Blue or Red Flaps made of Bays and Plains, which they buy of the English, of both which they tuck in the corners, to fasten the garment, and sometimes make it fast with a belt. Sometimes, they wear Indian Shoes, or Moggizons, which are made after the same manner as the Men's are. The Hair of their Heads is made into a long Roll like a Horse's Tail, and bound around with Ronoak or Porcelan, which is a sort of Beads they make of the Conk-Shells. Others that have not this, make a Leather-String serve.

The Indian Men have a Match-Coat of Hair, Furs, Feathers, or Cloth, as the Women have. Their Hair is rolled up, on each Ear, as the Women's, only much shorter, and oftentimes a roll on the Crown of the Head or Temple, which is just as they fancy; there being no Strictness in their Dress. They wear a Loin-Cloth, that is tuck'd in by a Belt, both before and behind, which decency they never Practised before the Christians came amongst them.

They wear Shooes, of Bucks, and sometimes Bears-Skin, which they tan in an Hour or two; with the Bark of

Trees Boiled, wherein they put the Leather whilst Hot, and let it remain a little while, whereby it becomes so qualified, as to endure water and Dirt without growing Hard. These have no Heels and are made as Fit for the Feet as a Glove for the Hands, and are very easy to travel in when one is used to them. When these Savages live near the Water, they frequent the Rivers in summer time very much, where both Men and Women very often in a day go in Naked to wash themselves, tho' not both sexes together.

Their Feather Match-Coats are very pretty, especially some of them, which are made extraordinary charming, containing several pretty figures wrought in Feathers, making them seem like a fine Fower Silk-Shag, and when new and Fresh, they become a Bed very well instead of a Quilt. Some of another sort are made of Hare, Raccoon, Bever or Squirrel-Skins, which are very warm; others again are made of the Green part of the Skin of a Mallard's Head, which they sew very prettily together, their Thread being either the Sinews of a Deer divided very small, or Silk Grass. When these are finished they look very finely, tho' they must needs be very troublesome to make. Some of their Great Men, as Rulers and Such, that have plenty of Deer Skins by them, will often buy the English-made Coats, which they wear on Festivals and other Days of Visiting. Yet none ever buy any Breeches, saying that they are too much confined in them, which prevents their speed in running, etc.

We have some Indians that are more civilized than the rest, which wear Hats, Shoes, Stockings and Breeches, with very tolerable linnen Shirts, which is not common amongst these Heathens. The Paspitank Indians did

formerly keep Cattle and make Butter.

These are them that wear the English Dress. Whether they have Cattle now or no I am not certain; but I am of the Opinion that such Inclinations in the Savages should meet with Encouragement, and every Englishman ought to do them justice, and not defraud them of their land, which has been allotted them formerly by the Government, for if we do not show them examples of Justice and Virtue, we can never bring them to believe us to be a worthier Race of Man than themselves.

The Dresses of these People are so different, according to the Nation that they belong to, that it is impossible to recount all the whimsical figures that they sometimes make by their Antick Dresses. Besides Carolina is a warm Country, and very Mild in its Winters, to what Virginia, Maryland, Pennsylvania, New York and the Jerseys, and New England are; wherefore our Indian habit very much differs from the dresses that appear among the Savages who inhabit those cold Countries; in regard to their cheapest cloathing for the Winter Season is made of Furs of Bever, Raccoon and other Northern Furs, that our Climate is not acquainted withal, they producing some Furs, as the Monack, Moor, Marten, Black Fox, and others, to us unknown.

Their Dress in Peace and War is quite different. Besides when they go to War, their Hair is combed out by the Women, and done over very much with Bears Grease, and Red Root, with Feathers, Wings, Rings, Copper and Peak, or Wampum, in their Ears. Moreover, they buy Vermillion of the Indian Traders, wherewith they paint their faces all over red, and commonly make a Circle of Black about one eye, and another Circle of white about the

other, whilst others bedawb their Faces with Tobacco-Pipe Clay, Lamp-Black, Black Lead, and divers other Colours, which they make with the several sorts of Minerals and earths that they get in their Different Parts of the Country, where they Hunt and Travel. When these Creatures are thus painted, they make the most frightful Figures that can be imitated by men, and seem more like Devils than Humane Creatures. You may be sure that they are about some Mischief, when you see them thus painted; for in all the Hostilities which have ever been acted against the English at any time in several of the Plantations of America, the Savages appeared in the Disguise whereby they might never be discovered, or known by any of the Christians, that should happen to see them after they had made their escape; for it is impossible ever to know an Indian under these colours, although he has been at your home a thousand times, and you know him at other times as well as you do any Person living. As for their Women they never use any paint on their Faces; neither do they ever carry them along with them into the field, when they intend any Expedition, leaving them at home with the old Men and Children.

Some of the Indians wear great Bobs in the Holes thereof they put Eagles and other Birds Feathers for a Trophy. When they kill any Fowl they commonly pluck off the downy Feathers, and stick them all over their Heads. Some (Both Men and Women) wear great Necklaces of their Money, made of Shells. They often wear Bracelets made of Brass, and sometimes of Iron Wire.

Their Money is of different sorts, but all made of Shells, which are found on the Coast of Carolina, which are very large and Hard, so that they are very difficult to cut. Some English smiths

have tried to drill this sort of shell money, and thereby thought to get advantage, but it proved so hard that nothing could be gained. They oftentimes make of this shell a sort of Gorge, which they wear about their Neck in a String; so it hangs on their Collar, whereon sometimes is engraven a Cross, or some odd sort of figure which comes next in their fancy. There are other sorts, valued at a Doe-Skin, yet the Gorges will sometimes sell for three or four Buck-Skins ready dress'd. There be others, that eight of them go readily for a Doe-Skin, but the general and Current Species of all the Indians in Carolina, and, I believe, all over the Continent, so far as the Bay of Mexico, is that which we call Peak and Ronoak, but Peak more especially. This is that which at New York they call Wampum, and have used it as Current Money among the Inhabitants for a great many years. This is what many writers call Porcelan, and is made at New York in great quantities, and with us in some Measure. Five Cubits of this purchase a Dressed Doe-Skin, and seven or eight make so much of this Wampum, for five or ten times the Value; for it is made out of a vast great Shell, of which the Country affords Plenty; where it is ground smaller than the small end of a Tobacco-Pipe, or a large Wheat-Straw. Four or five of these make an inch, and every one is to be drilled through and made as smooth as Glass, and so strung as Beads are, and a cubit of the Indian measure contains as much in length, as will reach from the elbow to the end of the little finger. They never stand to question whether it is a tall man or a short one, that measure it; but if this Wampum Peak be black or Purple, as some part of that Shell is, then it is twice the Value. This the Indians grind on stones and other



things until they make it Current, but the drilling is the most difficult to the Englishmen, which the Indians manage with a Nail stuck in a Cane or Reed. Thus they roll it continually on their Thighs, with their Right Hand, holding the Bit of Shell with their Left, so in time they drill a Hole quite, through it, which is very tedious work; but especially in making their Ronoak, four of which will scarce make one Length of Wampum. The Indians are a People that never value their Time, so that they can afford to make them, and never need to fear the English will take the trade out of their Hands. This is the Money with which you may buy Skins, Furs, Slaves or anything the Indians have; it being the Mammon (as our Money is to us) that entices and persuades them to do anything, and part with everything they possess, except their Children, for Slaves. As for their Wives they are often sold, and their Daughters Violated for it. With this they buy off murders; and whatsoever a Man do that is ill, this Wampum will quit him of, and make him, in their opinion, good and virtuous, though never so black before.

All the Indians give a Name to their Children, which is not the same as the Fathers or Mothers, but what they Fancy. This name they keep (if Boys) until they arrive to the age of a Warrior, which is 16 or 17 years; then they take a name to themselves, sometimes Eagle, Panther, Allegator, or some such wild creature; esteeming nothing on earth worthy to give them a name, but these Wild Fowl and Beast. Some again take the name of a Fish, which they keep as long as they live.

The King is the Ruler of the Nation, and has others under him to assist him, as his War Captains and Coun-

sellors, who are pick'd out and chosen among the ancientest Men of the Nation he is King of. These meet him in all general Councils and Debates, concerning War, Peace, Trade, Hunting and all the Adventures and Accidents of Humane Affairs, which appear within their Verge; where all affairs are discoursed of and argued pro and con, very deliberately, (without making any manner of Parties or Divisions for the Good of the Publick; for, as they meet there to treat, they discharge their duty with all the Integrity imaginable, never looking towards their own interest before the Publick Good. After every Man has given his Opinion, that which has most Voices, or, in Summing up, is found most reasonable, that they make use of without any Jars and Wrangling, and put it in Execution, the first Opportunity that offers.

The Succession falls not to the King's Son, but to his Sister's Son, which is a sure Way to prevent Imposters in the Succession. Sometimes they Poison the Heir to make way for another, which is not seldom done, when they do not approve of the Youth that is to succeed them. The King himself is commonly Chief Doctor in that Cure.

They are so well versed in Poison, that they are often found to poison whole families; nay, most of a town; and which is most to be admired, they will poison a running Spring, or Fountain of Water, so that whosoever drinks thereof, shall infallably die. When the Offender is discovered, his very Relations Urge for Death, whom nothing will appease but the most cruel Torture imaginable, which is executed in the most Publick manner that is possible to act such a Tragedy in. For all the whole Nation, and all the Indians within a hundred Mile (if it is possible to send for them), are sum-

moned to come and appear at such a place and time, to see and rejoice at the Torments and Death of such a Person, who is the common and profess'd Enemy to all the friendly Indians thereabouts, who now lies under the Condemnation of the whole Nation, and accordingly is to be put to death. Then all appear (Young and Old) from all the adjacent Parts, and meet with all the Expressions of Joy, to consummate this Horrid and Barbarous Feast, which is carried on after this Dismal manner. First they bring the Prisoner to the place that is appointed for his Execution, where he is set down on his Breech on the Ground. Then they all get around him and you shall not see one sorrowful or dejected Countenance amongst them, but all very merrily disposed, as if some comedy was to be acted, instead of a Tragedy. He that is appointed to be the Chief Executioner, takes a Knife and bids him to hold out his Hands, which he does, and then cuts around the Wrist through the Skin, which is Drawn off like a Glove, and flead quite off at the Fingers Ends; then they break his Joints and Bones and torment him after a very inhumane Manner, till some Violent Blow perhaps ends his days; then they burn him to Ashes and throw them down the River. Afterwards they Eat, Drink and are Merry, repeating all the Actions of the Tormentors and the Prisoner, with a great deal of mirth and satisfaction. This accusation is laid against an Indian Heroe sometimes wrongfully, or when they wish to get rid of a Man that has more Courage and Conduct than his neighbouring Kings or Great Men; then they allege the Practice of poisoning Indians against him, and make a Rehearsal of every Indian that died for a year or two, and say that they were poisoned by such an Indian; which re-

ports stir up all the Relations of the deceased against the said Person, and by such means make him away presently. In some Affairs, these Savages are very reserv'd and politick, and will attend a long time with a great deal of Patience, to bring about their Designs; they being never impatient or hasty in bringing about any of their Designs of Revenge.

Now I am gone so far in giving an account of the Indian's Temper, I will proceed; and can give you no other character of them, but that they are a very wary People, and are never hasty or impatient. They will endure a great many Misfortunes, Losses and Dissappointments without shewing themselves, in the least vex'd or uneasy. When they go by Water, if there proves a Head Wind, they never vex and fret as the Europeans do, and let what Misfortune come to them, as will or can happen, they never relent. Besides there is one Vice very common everywhere, which I never found amongst them, which is envying other Men's Happiness, because their station is not equal to, or above their Neighbours. Of this Sin, I cannot say I ever saw an Example, though they are a People that set as great a Value upon themselves, as any sort of Men in the World; upon which account they find something valuable in themselves above Riches. Thus, he that is a good Warriour, is the proudest Creature living, and he that is an expert Hunter is esteemed by the People and himself; yet all these are Natural Vertues and Gifts, and not Riches, which are as often in possession of a Fool as a Wise Man. Several of the Indians are possessed of a great many Skins, Wampum, Ammunition and what other things are esteemed riches amongst them; yet such an Indian is no more esteemed among them, than any other

ordinary Fellow, provided he has no personal endowments, which are the ornaments that must gain him an esteem among them; for a great Dealer amongst the Indians, is no otherwise respected and esteemed, than as a Man that strains his Wits, and fatigues himself, to furnish others with the Necessaries of life, that live much easier and enjoy more of the World, than he himself does with all his Pelf. If they are taken Captives, and expect a Miserable exit they Sing; if Death approaches them in Sickness they are not afraid of it, nor are any heard to say, Grant me some time. They know by instinct and daily example that they must die, wherefore they have that great and noble Gift to submit to everything that happens, and value nothing that attacks them.

Their Cruely to their Prisoners of War is what they are seemingly Guilty of an Error in, (I mean as to a natural Failing) because they strive to invent the most inhumane Butcheries for them, that the Devils themselves could invent, or hammer out of Hell, they esteeming Death no punishment, but rather an Advantage to him, that is exported out of this into another world. Therefore they inflict on them Torments, wherein they prolong life in that Miserable state as long as they can, and never miss skulping of them, as they call it, which is to cut off the Skin from the Temples, and taking the whole Head of Hair with it, as if it were a Night-Cap. Sometimes they take the top of the Head along with it, all which they preserve and carefully keep by them, for a Trophy of their Conquest over their Enemies. Others keep their Enemies Teeth, which are taken in War, while others split the Pitch-Pine into Splinters, and stick them into the Prisoner's Body yet alive. Thus they light them, which

burn like so many torches; and in this manner they make him dance around a great Fire, every one buffeting and deriding him, till he expires, when every one strives to get a bone or some relic of this unfortunate Captive. One of the Young Fellows that has been at the Wars, and has had the fortune to take a Captive, returns the Proudest Creature on the Earth, and sets such a Value on Himself that he knows not how to retain his Senses. The Iroquois, or Sinnagars, are the most War-like Indians that we know of, being always at War and not to be persuaded from that Way of living by any Argument that can be used. If you go to persuade them to live peaceably with the Tuskeruros, and let them be one People, in case those Indians desire it and will submit to them, they will answer you, that they cannot live without War, which they have been ever used to; and that if Peace be made with the Indians they now war withal, they must find out some others to Wage War against; for, for them to live in Peace is to live out of their element, War, Conquest and Murder being what they delight in, and value themselves for. When they take a Slave, and intend to keep him to work in their Fields, they cut the Skin from the setting of his Toes to the middle of his Foot, so cut off one-half of his Feet, wrapping the Skin over the Wounds and healing them. By this cruel Method the Indian Captive is hindered from making his escape, for he can neither run fast nor go anywhere, but his Feet are more easily traced and discovered. Yet I know one Man who made his escape from them, tho' they had thus disabled him, as you will see in my Journal.

The Indians ground their Wars on Enmity, not on Interest, as the Europeans do; for the Loss of the Meanest



person in the Nation they will go to War and lay all at Stake, and Prosecute their design to the utmost; till the Nation they were injured by, be wholly Destroyed or make them that Satisfaction which they demand. They are very Politick in Waging and carrying on their Wars, first by advising with all the ancient Men of Conduct and Reason, that belong to their Nation, such as superannuated War-Captains, and those that have been Counsellors for many years, and whose advice has commonly succeeded very well. They have likewise their Field Counsellors, who are accustomed to Ambuscades, and Surprises, which Methods are commonly used by the Savages, for I scarce ever heard of a field battle fought amongst them.

One of their expeditions afforded an Instance, worthy of Mention, which was thus: Two Nations of Indians here in Carolina were at War with each other, and a Party of each were in the Forest, ranging to see what Enemies they could take. The lesser Number found they were discovered, and could not well get over a River (that lay betwixt them and their home) without engaging the other Party, whose number was much the greater; so they called a Council, which met, and having weighed their Present Circumstances with a great deal of Argument and Debate, for a considerable time, and found their enemies' Advantage and that they could expect no Success in Engaging such an unequal number, they at last concluded on this Stratagem, which, in my opinion, carried a great deal of Policy with it. It was, that the same Night, they should make a great Fire, which they were certain would be Discovered by the adverse Party, and then dress up logs of Wood in their Cloaths, and make them exactly seem like Indians, that were asleep by the

Fireside; (which is their way when in the Woods) so, said they, our Enemies will fire upon these Images, supposing them to be us, who will lie in Ambuscade, and, after their Guns are unloaded, shall deal well enough with them. This result was immediately put in Execution, and the fire was made by the Side of a Valley, where they lay perdu very advantageously. Thus, a little before break of day, (which is commonly the Hour they surprise their Enemies) the Indians came down to their Fire and at once fired in upon those Logs in the Indians' Cloaths, and run up to them, expecting they had killed every Man dead; but they found themselves mistaken, for then the other Indians, who had lain all the night stark naked in the Bottom, attacked them with their Loaded Pieces, which so Surprised them that every man was taken Prisoner and brought in bound to their Town.

Another Instance was betwixt the Machapunga Indians, and the Coranines, on the Sand-Banks; which was as follows: The Machapungas were invited to a Feast by the Coranines; (which two Nations had been a long time at War together, but had lately concluded a Peace) Thereupon, the Machapunga Indians took the advantage of coming to the Coranine's Feast, which was to avoid all suspicion, and their King, who, of a Savage, is a great Politician and very stout, ordered all the Men to carry their Tomahawks along with them, hidden under their Match Coats; which they did, and being acquainted when to fall on, by the Word given, they all (upon this design) set forward for the Feast, and came to the Coranine town, where they had gotten Victuals, Fruit and such things as make an Indian Entertainment, all ready to make these new Friends welcome, which they did, and after Dinner, towards the Evening, (as

it is customary amongst them) they went to dancing, altogether; so when the Machapunga King saw the best opportunity to offer, he gave the Word and their Men pulled their Tomahawks from under the Match Coats and killed several and took the rest Prisoners, except some few that were not present and four or five that escaped. The Prisoners they sold as Slaves to the English. At the time this was done, those Indians had nothing but bows and Arrows, neither side having Guns.

The Indians are very Revengeful, and never forget an Injury done, till they have received Satisfaction. Yet they are the freest People from Heats and Passions (which possess the Europeans) of any I ever heard of. They never call any Man to an account of what he did when he was Drunk; but say it was the Drink that caused his misbehaviour; therefore he ought to be forgiven. They never frequent a Christian's House that is given to Passion, nor will they ever buy or sell with him, if they can get the same Commodities of any other Person; they say such Men are Mad Wolves and no more Men.

They know not what Jealousy is, because they never think their Wives are Inconstant, unless they are Eye-witnesses thereof. They are generally very bashful, especially the young Maids, who when they come into a strange Cabin, where they are not acquainted, never ask for anything, though never so hungry or thirsty, but sit down without speaking a word (be it ever so long) till some of the House asks them a question, or falls into Discourse, with the Stranger. I never saw a Scold amongst them, and to their Children they are extraordinary tender and indulgent. Neither did I ever see a Parent correct a Child, excepting one Woman Who was the Kings Wife, and she, indeed, did possess a temper

that is not commonly found amongst them. They are free from all manner of Compliments, except shaking of Hands, and Scratching on the Shoulder, which two are the greatest marks of friendship, that can be shewed one to another. They cannot express fare you well, but when they leave the House will say, I go straightway, which is to intimate their Departure; and if the Man of the House has any Message to send by the going Man, he may acquaint him therewith. Their Tongues allow not to say, Sir, I am your servant, because they have no different titles for Man, only King, War-Captain, Old Man or Young Man, which respects the Stations and Circumstances Men are employed in, and arrived to, and not Ceremony. As for Servant, they have no such thing, except Slave, and their Dogs, Cats, Tame or Domestick Beasts, and Birds, are called by the same Name; for the Indian Word for Slave includes them all. So when an Indian tells you he has got a Slave for you, it may (in general Terms, as they use) be a young Eagle, a Dog, Otter, or any other thing of that nature, which is obsequiously to depend on the Master for its Sustainance.

They are never fearful in the night, nor do the thoughts of spirits trouble them; such as the many Hobgoblins and Bugbears as that we suck in with our milk, and the foolery of our Nurses and Servants suggest to us; who, by their idle Tales of Fairies and Witches, Make impressions on our tender Years, that at Maturity we carry Pigmies' Souls in Giant Bodies and ever after are thereby so much deprived of reason, and Unmann'd, as never to be Masters of half the Bravery Nature designed for us.

Not but what the Indians have as Many Lying Stories of Spirits and Conjurers as any people in the World;

but they tell it with no disadvantage to themselves; for the great esteem which the old Men bring themselves to is by making the others believe their Familiarity with Devils and Spirits and how great a Correspondence they have therewith, which if it once gains credit, they are ever after held in the greatest Veneration, and whatever they after impose on the People, is received as Infallible. They are so little Startled at the thoughts of Another World that they not seldom murder Themselves, as for instance a Bear River Indian, a very likely young Fellow, about 20 years of Age, whose Mother was angry at his drinking of too much Rum, and chid him for it, thereupon he replied he would have her satisfied, and he would do the like no more; upon which he made his Words good, for he went aside and shot himself dead. This was a son of the Politick King of the Machapunga, I spoke of before, and was the most Cunning of any Indian I ever Met withal.

Most of the Savages are much addicted to Drunkenness and Vice they never were acquainted with, till the Christians came amongst them. Some of them refrain from drinking strong liquors, but very few of that sort are found amongst them. Their chief Liquor is Rum, without any mixture. This the English bring amongst them, and buy Skins, Furs, Slaves and other of their Commodities therewith. They never are contented with a little, but when once begun, they must make themselves quite drunk; otherwise they will never rest, but sell all they have in the World, rather than not have their full dose. In these drunken Frolics, which are always carried on in the Night, they sometimes murder one another, fall into the Fire, fall down Precipices, and break their Necks. with several other Misfortunes which

this drinking of Rum brings upon them; and tho' they are sensible of it, yet they have no Power to refrain from this Enemy. About five years ago, when Landgrave Daniel was Governor, he summoned all the Indian Kings and Rulers to Meet, and in a full meeting of the Government and Council with those Indians, they agreed upon a firm Peace, and the Indian Rulers desired no Rum might be sold them, which was granted and a Law made, that inflicted a Penalty to those that sold Rum to the Heathens; but it was never strictly observed, and besides the young Indians were so disgusted at that article, that they threatened to kill the Indians that made it, unless it was laid aside, and they might have Rum sold them, when they went to the Englishmen's houses to buy it.

Some of the heathens are so very poor that they have no manner of Cloaths, save a Wad of Moss to hide their Nakedness. They are either lusty and will not work; otherwise they are giving to Gaming and Drunkenness, yet these get Victuals as well of the rest, because that is common amongst them. If they are caught in Theft, they are slaves until they repay the Person (as I mentioned before) but to steal from the English they reckon no harm. Not but that I have known some few Savages that have been as free from theft as any of the Christians. When they have a desire to lie with a Woman, which they cannot obtain any otherwise than by a larger reward than they are able to give, then they strive to make her drunk, which a great many of them will be, then they take the advantage to do with them what they please, and sometimes in their Drunkenness cut off their Hair and sell it to the English, which is the greatest affront that can be offered them. They never value



time, for if they be going out to Hunt, Fish, or any other indifferent Business you may keep them in talk as long as you please, so you but keep them in Discourse, and seemed pleased with their Company; yet none are more expeditious and safer Messengers than they, when any extraordinary Business that they are sent about requires it.

When they are upon traveling the Woods, they keep a constant Pace, neither will they stride over a tree that lies across the Path, but always go round it, which is quite contrary to the custom of the English and other Europeans. When they cut with a Knife, the edge is toward them, whereas we always cut and whittle from us. Nor did I ever see one of them left-handed. Before the Christians came amongst them, not knowing the use of Steel and Flints, they got their fire with Sticks, which by vehement collision, or Rubbing together, take Fire. This method they will sometimes practise now, when it has happened thro' rainy weather, or some other accident, that they have wet their spunk, which is a sort of soft, corky substance, generally of a Cinnamon Colour, and grows in the Concave part of an Oak, Hickory, and several other Woods, being dug out with an Ax, and always kept by the Indians, instead of Tinder or Touch-Wood, both which it exceeds. You are to understand that the two sticks which they use to strike fire withal, are never of one sort of Wood, but always differ from each other.

They are expert Travellers, and tho' they have not use of our artificial Compass, yet they understand the North Point exactly, let them be in never so great a wilderness. One Guide is a short Moss, that grows upon some trees, exactly on the north side thereof.

Besides they have names for eight of the thirty-two points; and call the Winds by their Several Names, as we

do, but indeed more properly, for the North-Wind is called the Cold Wind; the Northeast the Wet Wind; the South the Warm Wind; and so agreeably to the rest. Sometimes it happens, that they have a large River or Lake to pass over, and the Weather is very foggy, as it often happens in the Spring and fall of the Leaf, so that they cannot see which course to steer. In such Case they, being on one side of the River, or Lake, know well enough what Course such a Place, (which they intend for) bears from them. Therefore they get a great many sticks and chunks of wood, in their Canoe, and then set off directly for their Port, and now and then throw over a Piece of Wood, which directs them by seeing how the stick bears from the Canoe stern, which they always observe to keep right aft; and this is the Indian compass by which they will go over a broad Water of ten or twenty Leagues wide. They will find the head of any River, though it is five or six hundred miles off, and they were never there in their lives before; as is often proved by their appointing to meet on the Head of such a River, where perhaps none of them ever was before, but where they shall rendezvous exactly at the prefixed time, and if they meet with any obstruction, they shall leave certain marks in the way, where they that come after will understand how many have passed by already, and which way they have gone. Besides, in their War expeditions they have very certain Hieroglyphicks, whereby each party informs the other of the success or Losses they have met withal; all of which is so exactly performed by their Sylvan Marks and Characters that they are never at a loss to understand one another. Yet there was never found any letters among the Savages of Carolina; nor, I believe,

among any other natives of America, that were possessed of any Manner of Writing or Learning, throughout all the Discoveries of the New World. They will draw Maps very exactly of all the Rivers, Towns, Mountains, and Roads, or what you shall inquire of them, which you may draw by their Directions and come to a small Matter of Latitude, reckoning by their day's Journeys. These maps they will draw in the Ashes of the Fire, and sometimes upon a Mat or piece of Bark. I have put a Pen and Ink into a Savage's Hand, and he has drawn the Rivers, Bays and other parts of the Country, which afterwards I have found to agree with a great deal of Nicety. But you must be very much in their favour, otherwise they will never make these Discoveries to you, especially if it be in their own Quarters. And as for Mines of Silver and other Metal, we are satisfied we have enow, and those very rich, in Carolina, and its adjacent Parts; some of which the Indians are acquainted withal, although no inquiries thereof are made, but what came and were discovered by Chance. yet they say, it is this metal that the English covet, as they do their Peak and Ronoak, and that we have gained Ground for them wherever we have come. Now, say they, if we should discover these Minerals to the English, they would settle at or near these Mountains, and bereave us of the best Hunting Quarters we have, as they have already done whereever they have inhabited; so by that means we shall be driven into some unknown country, to live, hunt, and get our bread in. These are the reasons that the Savages give, for not making known what they are acquainted withal, of that Nature. And, indeed, all Men that have ever gone upon those Discoveries, allow them to be good; more especially my ingenious Friend,

Mr. Francis Louis Mitchell, of Bern, in Switzerland, who has been for several years, very indefatigable and strict in his discoveries amongst those vast Ledges of Mountains, and spacious Tracts of Land, lying towards the Heads of the Great Bays and Rivers of Virginia and Maryland, and Pennsylvania, where he has discovered a spacious Country inhabited by none but the Savages, and not many of them; who yet are of a very friendly nature to the Christians. This Gentleman has been employed by the Canton of Bern, to find out a tract of Land in the English America, where that Republick might settle some of their People, which Proposal, I believe, is now in a fair way toward a Conclusion, between Her Majesty of Great Britain and that Canton. Which must needs be of a great advantage to us both, and as for ourselves, I believe, no Man that is in his Wits, and understands the Situation and affairs in America, but will allow, nothing can be of more security, and advantage to the Crown and Subjects of Great Britain, than to have our Frontiers secured by a War-Like People, and our Friends, as the Switzers are; especially, when we have more Indians than we can civilize, and so many Christian enemies lying on the back of us, that we do not know how long or short a time it be before they may visit us. Add to these, the Effects and Products that may be expected from those Mountains, which may hereafter prove of great advantage to the British Monarchy, and none more fit than an industrious people, bred in a Mountainous Country, and inur'd to all the Fatigues of War and Travel, to improve a Country. Thus we have no room to doubt, but as soon as any of these Parts are seated by the Switzers, a great many Britains will strive to live amongst them, for the benefit

of the sweet air and healthful Climate which that country affords, were it only for the cultivation of Hemp, Flax, Wine and other valuable Staples, which those People are fully acquainted withal; not to mention the advantages already discovered by that worthy gentleman I just now spoke of, who is highly deserving of the conduct and Management of such an affair, as that Wise Canton has entrusted him withal.

When these Savages go a hunting, they commonly go out in great Numbers, and oftentimes a great many days journey from home, beginning at the coming in of Winter; that is when the Leaves are fallen from the Trees, and are becoming Dry. 'Tis then they burn the Woods, by setting fire on the Leaves, and wither'd Bent and Grass, which they do with a Match made of the Black Moss that hangs on the Trees in Carolina, and is sometimes above six foot long. This, when dead, becomes black, (tho' of an Ash-Colour before) and will then hold fire as well as the best match we have in Europe. In Places where this Moss is not found, (as towards the Mountains) they make Lintels of the Bark of Cypress beaten, which serves as well. Thus they go and fire the Woods for Many Miles, and drive the Deer and other Game into small Necks of Land and Isthmus's, where they kill and destroy what they please. In these Hunting-Quarters they have their Wives and Ladies of the Camp, where they Eat all the Fruits and Dainties of that Country and live in all the Mirth and Jollity, which is Possible for such People to entertain themselves withal. Here it is that they get their Complement of Deer-Skins and Furs to trade with the English, (the Deer Skins being in Season in Winter, which is contrary to England.) All small game, as Turkeys,

Ducks and small Vermine, they commonly kill with bow and arrow, thinking it not worthy throwing Powder and Shot after them. Of Turkeys they have abundance, especially in Oak-Land, as most of it is that lies any distance backwards. I have been often in their Hunting-Quarters, where a roasted or barbakued Turkey, eaten with Bear's Fat, is held a good Dish; and indeed I approve of it very well; for the Bear's Greese is the sweetest and least offensive to the stomach (as I said before) of any Fat of animals I ever tasted. The Savage Men never beat their corn to make bread; but that is the Woman's work, especially the Girls, of whom you shall see four beating with long great pestils in a narrow wooden mortar; and every one keeps her stroke so exactly, that 'tis worthy of admiration. Their Cookery continues from Morning until Night. The Hunting makes them Hungry and the Indians are a People that eat very often, not seldom getting up at midnight to eat. They Plant a great many sorts of Pulse, part of which they keep green in Summer, keeping great quantities of their Winter store, which they carry along with them into the Hunting-Quarters, and eat them.

At their setting out, they have Indians to attend their Hunting Camp, that are not good and expert Hunters; therefore are employ'd to carry burdens, to get Bark for the Cabins and other servile work; also to go backward and forward to their Towns, to carry News to the old People, whom they leave behind them. The Women are forced to carry their Loads of Grain and other Provisions, and get Fire-Wood; for a good Hunter or Warrior in these expeditions, is employ'd in no other business than the Affairs of Game and Battle. The Wild Fruits, which are dry'd in Summer



over Fires, on Hurdles and in the Sun, are now brought into the Field; as are likewise the Cakes and Quid-donies of Peaches, and that Fruit and Bilberries dry'd, of which they stew and make Fruit, Bread and Cakes. In some parts where Pigeons are plentiful, they get of their Fat enough to supply their Winter Stores. Thus they abide in these quarters all the Winter long, till the time approach for planting their Maiz and other fruits. In these quarters at spare hours the Women make Baskets and Mats to lie upon, and those that are not extraordinary Hunters, make Bowls, Dishes and spoons of Gum-Wood, and the Tulip-Tree, others (where they find a vein of White Clay fit for that purpose) make Tobacco-Pipes, all which are often transported to other Indians that have perhaps greater Plenty of Deer and other Game; so they buy, (with these Manufactures) their Raw-Hides with the Hair on, which our neighbouring Indians bring to their Towns, and, in the summertime make the Slaves and sorry Hunters dress them, the Winter Sun being not strong enough to dry them; and those that are dry'd in the Cabins are black and nasty with the Light-Wood Smoke, which they commonly burn. Their way of dressing their Skins is by soaking them in Water, so they get the Hair off with an Instrument made of the Bone of a Deer's Foot; yet some use a sort of Iron Drawing Knife, which they purchase of the English, and after the Hair is off they dissolve Bear's Brains, (which before-hand are made in a Cake and baked in the Embers) in a Bowl of Water, so soak the Skins therein, till the Brains have sucked up the Water; then they dry it gently and keep working it with an Oyster Shell, or some such thing, to scrape withal, till it is dry; whereby it becomes soft and pliable. Yet those

so dress'd will not endure wet, but becomes hard thereby; which to prevent they either cure them in Smoke, or tan them with Bark, as before observed; not but that the young Indian Corn, beaten to a Pulp, will effect the same as the Brains. They are not only good Hunters of the Wild Beasts and Game of the Forest, but very expert in taking Fish of the Waters and Rivers near which they inhabit, and are acquainted withal. Thus they that live a great way up the Rivers practise striking Sturgeon and Rock-Fish, or Bass, when they come up the Rivers to spawn; besides the vast shoals of Sturgeon which they kill and take with Snares, as we do Pike in Europe. The Herrings in March and April run a great way up the Rivers and fresh Streams to spawn, where the Savages make great Wares, with Hedges, and hinder their passage only in the Middle, where an artificial Pond is made to take them in; so that they cannot return. This method is in use all over the fresh Streams, to catch Trout and the other species of Fish which those streams afford. Their taking of Craw-Fish is so pleasant that I cannot pass it without mention: When they have a mind to get these Shell-Fish, they take a piece of Venison, and half barbakue or roast it; then they cut it into thin Slices, which slices they stick through with reeds about six inches asunder, betwixt piece and piece; then the Reeds are made sharp at one end; and so they stick a great many of them down in the Water (thus baited) in the small Brooks and Runs, which the Craw-Fish frequent. Thus the Indians sit by and tend those baited Sticks, every now and then taking them up to see how many are at the bait; where they generally find abundance, so take them off and put them in a Basket for the purpose, and stick the reeds down

again. By this Method, they will, in a little time, catch several bushels, which are as good as any I ever eat. Those Indians that frequent the Salt-Waters, take abundance of Fish, some very large, and of several sorts, which to preserve, they first barbakue them, then pull the Fish to pieces, so dry it in the Sun, whereby it keeps for Transportation; as for Scates, Oysters, Cockles, and several sorts of Shell-Fish they open and dry them upon Hurdles, having a constant fire under them. The Hurdles are made of Reeds or Canes, in the shape of a Gridiron. Thus they dry several Bushels of these Fish, and keep them for their Necessities. At the time when they are on the Salts, and Sea-Coast, they have another Fishery, that is for a little Shell-Fish, which those in England call Blackmoors Teeth. These they catch by tying Bits of Oysters to a long String, which they lay in such places as they know those Shell-Fish haunt. These Fish get hold of the Oysters and suck them in, so that they pull up those long strings and take great Quantities of them, which they carry a great way into the Main-Land, to trade with the remote Indians, where they are of great value; but never near the Sea, where they are common; therefore not esteemed. Besides the Youth and Indian Boys go in the night, and one holding a Light-Wood torch, the other has a Bow and Arrow, and the fire directing him to see the Fish, he shoots them with the Arrows; and thus they kill a great many of the smaller Fry and sometimes pretty large Ones. It is an established Custom amongst all these Natives that the young Hunter never eats of that Buck, Bear, Fish or any other game, which happens to be the first they kill of that sort; because they believe if they eat thereof, they would never thereafter be for-

tunate in Hunting. The like foolish ceremony they hold, when they have made a Ware to catch these fish withal; if a big belly'd Woman eat of the first fish that is caught in it, they say that Ware will never take much Fish; and as for killing of Snakes, they avoid it, if they lie in their Way, because their opinion is that some of the Serpents Kindred would kill some of the Savages Relations that should destroy him. They have thousands of these foolish Ceremonies and Beliefs which they are strict observers of. Moreover several Customs are found in some Families, which others keep not; as for example two families of the Machapunga Indians, use the Jewish customs of Circumcision, and the rest do not; neither did I ever know any others amongst the Indians that practis'd any such thing; and perhaps, if you ask them, what is the reason they do so, they will make you no manner of Answer; which is so much as to say, I will not tell you. Many other Customs they have for which they will render no reason or Account; and to pretend to give a true Description of their Religion, it is impossible, for there are a great many of their Absurdities, which, for some reason, they reserve as a secret amongst themselves; or otherwise they are jealous of their Weakness in the practising of them; so that they never acquaint any Christians with the Knowledge thereof, let Writers pretend what they will; for I have known them amongst their Idols and Dead Kings in their Quiogozon for several Days, where I could never get admittance, to see what they were doing, though I was at great friendship with the King and Great Men; but all my Persuasions availed me nothing. Neither were any but the King, with the Conjurer, and some old Men, in the House; as for the

young Men and chiefest Numbers of the Indians, they were kept as Ignorant of what the Elders were doing as myself.

They all believe that this World is round, and that there are two Spirits, the Good and the Bad one; The Good one they reckon to be the Author and Maker of everything, and say that it is he that gives them the Fruits of the Earth, and taught them to Hunt, Fish and be wise enough to overpower the Beasts of the Wilderness and all other Creatures, that they may be assistant, and beneficial to Man; to which they add that the Quera or Good Spirit, has been very kind to the Englishmen, to teach them to make Guns and Ammunition, besides a great many other Necessaries that are helpful to man, all which they say will be delivered to them when the Good Spirit sees fit. They do not believe that God punishes any Person, either in this Life, or that to come; but that he delights in doing good, and in giving the Fruits of the Earth, and in instructing us in making several useful and ornamental things. They say it is a bad Spirit (who lives separate from the good one) that torments us with Sicknesses, Disappointments, Losses, Hunger, Travel, and all the Misfortunes that Human Life is incident to. How they are treated in the next World I have already mentioned, and, as I said before, they are very resolute in dying, when in the hands of Savage Enemies; yet I saw one of their young Men, a very likely Person, condemn'd on a Sunday for killing a Negro, and burning the House. I took good notice of his behaviour when he was brought out of the House to die, which was the next Morning after Sentence, but he changed his Countenance with Trembling, and was in the greatest Fear and Agony. I never saw

any Person under his Circumstances, which perhaps might be occasioned by his being delivered up by his own Nation (which was the Tuskeruro's) and executed by us, that are not their Common Enemies, though he met with more favor than he would have received at the Hands of the Savages; for he was only hanged on a Tree, near the place where the Murder was committed; and the three Kings that just the Day before showed such a Reluctancy to deliver him up (but would have given another in his room) when he was Hanged, pulled him by the Hand and said, Thou wilt never play any more Rogues Tricks in this World; whither art thou gone to shew thy Tricks now? Which shows these Savages to be what they really are, (viz) a People that will save their own Men if they can, but if the Safety of all the People lies at Stake, they will deliver up the most innocent Person living, and be so far from Concern'd when they have made themselves easy thereby, that they will laugh at their Misfortunes, and never pity or think of them more.

The Priests are the Conjurers and Doctors of the Nation. I shall mention some of their Methods and Practises; and so leave them to the judgment of the People. As I told you before, the Priests make their Orations at every Feast or other Great Meeting of the Indians. I happened to be at one of these great Meetings, which was at the Funeral of one of these Tuskeruro Indians, that was slain with lightning at a Feast, the day before, where I was amongst the rest. It was in July and a very Fair Day, where in the afternoon, about six or seven a Clock, as they were dealing out their Victuals, there appeared a little Black Cloud to the Northwest, which spread and brought with it Rain, Wind and Lightning; so we went out from the



Place where we were all at Victuals, and went down to the Cabins, where I left the Indians and went to lie in my Canoe, which was convenient enough to keep me dry. The Lightning came so terrible, and down in long streams, that I was afraid it would have taken hold of a Barrel of Powder I had in my Vessel, and so blow me up; but it pleased God that it did me no harm; yet the Violence of the Storm had blown all the Water away, where I rid at Anchor, so that my Canoe lay dry, and some Indian Women came with Torches in their Hands to the side of the Canoe, and told me an Indian was killed with Lightning. The next day, (I think) he was buried, and I stayed to see the Ceremony, and was very tractable to help the Indians to trim their Reeds, and make the Coffin, which pleased them very much, being because I had a Mind to see the Interment. Before he was interr'd according to their Custom, they dealt every one some hot Victuals, which he took and did what he would with. Then the Doctor began to talk and told the people what Lightning was, and that it kill'd everything that dwelt upon the Earth; nay the very Fishes did not escape, for it often reach'd the Porpoises and other Fish, and destroyed them; that everything strove to shun it except the Mice, who, he said were the busiest in eating the Corn in their Fields when it was lightning the Most. He added that no Wood or Tree could withstand it, except the Black Gum, and that it would run around that Tree a great many times, to enter therein, but could not effect it. Now you must understand, that sort of Gum will not split or rive; therefore I suppose the story must arise from thence. At last he began to tell the most ridiculous absurd Parcel of Lyes about Lightning that could be; as that an

Indian of that Nation had once got Lightning in the Likeness of a Part-ridge; That no other Lightning could harm him, whilst he had that about him; and that after he had kept it for several years it got away from him; so that he then became as liable to be struck as any other person. There was present at the same time an Indian that had liv'd from his youth chiefly in an English house; so I call'd him and told him what a Parcel of Lyes the Conjurer told, not doubting that he thought so as well as I, but found to the contrary: For he replied that I was much mistaken, for that Old Man (who I believe was upwards of an Hundred Years old) did never tell Lyes; and, as for what he said, it was very true, for he knew it himself to be so. Thereupon, seeing the Fellow's Ignorance, I talked no more about it. Then the Doctor proceeded to tell a long Tale of a Rattle-Snake, which, a great while ago, lived by a Creek in that River (which was Neus) and that it kill'd abundance of Indians, but last a Bald Eagle killed it and they were rid of a Serpent that used to devour Great Canoes full of Indians, at a time. I have been something tedious upon this subject, on purpose to shew what strange ridiculous stories these Wretches are inclinable to believe. I suppose these Doctors understand a little better themselves, than to give credit to any such Folleries; for I reckon them amongst the cunningest Knaves in all the Pack. I will therefore begin with their Phys'ick and Surgery, which is next. You must know that the Doctors or Conjurers, to gain a greater Credit amongst these People, tell them that all Distempers are the effects of Evil Spirits, or the Bad Spirit which has struck them with this or that Malady; therefore none of these Physicians undertakes any Distemper, but that he comes, to an

Exorcism, to effect the Cure, and acquaints the sick party's friends that he must converse with the Good Spirit, to know whether the patient will recover or not; if so, then he will drive out the Bad Spirit, and the Patient will become well. Now the general way of their behaviour in curing the Sick, (a great deal of which I have seen and shall give some account thereof, in as brief a manner as possible) is, when as Indian is Sick, if they think there is much Danger of Life, and that he is a great Man or hath good friends, the Doctor is sent for. As soon as the Doctor comes to the Cabin the sick Person is sat on a Mat or Skin, stark-naked, lying on his back, and all uncovered except some small trifle that covers their Nakedness when ripe, otherwise, in very young Children, there is nothing about them. In this manner the Patient lies when the Conjurer appears; and the King of that Nation comes to attend him with a Rattle made of a Gourd with Pease in it. This the King delivers into the Doctor's hand, whilst another brings a Bowl of Water and sets it down; then the Doctor begins and utters some few Words very softly: afterwards he smells of the Patients Navel and Belly, and sometimes scarifies him a little with a flint, or an instrument made of rattlesnake's skin for that purpose; then he sucks the wounds and gets a mouthful of Blood and Serum, but Serum chiefly; which, may perhaps be a better Method in many cases, than to take away great quantities of Blood, as is commonly practised, which he spits into the Bowl of Water. Then he begins to mutter and talk a space, and at last to cut Capers and clap his hands on his breech and sides, so that he gets into a sweat, so that a Stranger would think he was running Mad; now and then sucking the Patient, and so, at times, keeps sucking till he has got

a great quantity of ill-coloured matter out of the Belly, Arms, Breast, Forehead, Temples, Neck and most parts, still continuing his Grimaces, and antick postures, which are not to be matched in Bedlam. At last you will see the Doctor all over a dropping Sweat and scarce able to utter one Word, having quite spent himself; then he will cease for a while and so begin again, till he comes in the same Pitch of Raving and Seeming Madness, as before (all this time the sick Body never so much as moves, though doubtless the Lancing and Sucking must be a great punishment to them; but they certainly are the patientest and most steady people under any Burden that I have ever saw in all my Life.) At last the Conjurer makes an end and tells the Patient's Friends, whether the Person will Live or Die, and then one that waits at this ceremony takes the blood away (which remains in a Lump in the middle of the Water) and buries it. Now, I believe a great deal of imposture in these fellows; though I have never seen their judgment fail, and I have seen them give their opinion after this Manner several times: Some affirm that there is a smell of Brimstone in the Cabins when they are Conjuring, which I cannot contradict. Which way it may come, I will not argue, but proceed to a relation or two which I have from a great many persons, and some of them worthy of credit.

The first is of a certain Indian that one rainy night undermined a House made of Logs (such as the Swedes in America very often make, and are very strong) which belonged to Seth Southwell, Esq., Governor of North Carolina, and one of the Proprietors. There was but one place the Indian could get in at and that was very narrow; the rest was secured by having barrels of Pork and other provisions set against the

side of the house, so that if this Indian had not exactly hit the place he undermined, it would have been impossible for him to have got therein, because of the full barrels that stood around the house, and barricaded it within. The Indian stole 60 or 80 dressed deers skins, besides Blankets, Powder, Shot and Rum, (this being the Indian storehouse where the Trading Goods were kept.) Now the Indian had made his escape, but dropped some of his goods by the way, and they tracked his footsteps and found him to be an Indian, then they guessed who it was, because none but that Indian had lately been near the house. Thereupon the Governor sent to the Indian town that he belonged, to which was the Tuskeruros, and acquainted them that if they did not deliver up the Indian who had committed the Robbery, he would take a course with them that would not be very agreeable. Upon, this, the Indians in the town he belonged to, brought him in, bound, and delivered him up to the Governor, who laid him in Irons. At the same time it happened that a Robbery was committed among themselves, at the Indian Town, and their prisoner was one of their Conjurors; so the Indians came down to the Governor's house and acquainted him what had happened amongst them, and that a great quantity of Peak was stolen away out of one of the cabins, and no one could find out the thief, unless he let the Prisoner conjure for it, who was the only man they had at making such discoveries. The Governor was content he should try his skill for them, but not to have the Prisoner's Irons taken off, which was very well approved of. The Indian was brought out in his fetters, where were the Governor's Family, and several others of the Neighborhood,

now living, to see this experiment; which he performed thus:

The Conjuror ordered three fires to be made, in a Triangular Form, which was accordingly done, then he was hood-winked very securely with a dressed deer-skin, two or three doubles over his face. After he had made some motions, as they always do, he went directly out of one of the three Gaps, as exactly as if he had not been blindfolded, and kept muttering to himself, having a stick in his hand, with which after some time, he struck two strokes very hard upon the ground, and made thereon a Cross, after which he told the Indian's name that had stolen the goods, and said that he would have a Cross on his back; which proved true; for when they took and searched him, there appeared two great Wheals on his back, one across the other; for the thief was at Governor Southwell's house, and was under no apprehension of being discovered. The Indians professed to sell him as a slave to the Governor, but he refused to buy him, so they took him bound away.

Another instance of the like Nature happened at the same House. One of the Tuskeruro Kings had brought in a slave to the same Governor, to whom he had sold him' and before he returned fell sick at the Governor's House; upon which the Doctor that belong'd to this King's Nation, was sent for, being a Man that was held to be the greatest Conjuror amongst them. It was three days before he could arrive, and he appeared (when he came) to be a very little Man, and so old that his hair was as white as ever was seen. When he approached the sick King he ordered a bowl of Water to be brought him, and three Chunks of Wood, which was immediately done. Then he took the



Water and set it by him, and spurted a little on him, and with the three pieces of Wood he made a Place to stand on, whereby he was raised higher; (he being a very low-statured Man) then he took a String of Ronoak, which is the same as a small string of beads; this he held by one end between his fingers; the other end touched the King's Stomach, as he stood on the Logs. Then he began to talk and at length the by-standers thought really, that they had heard somebody talk to them, but saw no more than what first came in. At last, this String of Beads which hung thus perpendicular, turn'd up as an Eel would do, and without any motion of his they came all up (in a lump) under his Hand, and hung so for a considerable time, he never closing his Hand, and at length returned to their pristine Length and Shape, at which the spectators were much frightened. Then he told the Company that he would recover, and that his distemper would remove into his Leg, all which happened to be exactly as the Indian Doctor had told. These are Matters of Fact, and I can, at this day, prove the truth thereof by several substantial Evidences, that are Men of Reputation, there being more than a dozen present when it was performed; most of whom are now alive.

There are a great many other Stories, of this Nature, which are seemingly true, being told by persons that affirm that they were eye-witnesses thereof; as, that they have seen one Roncommock, (a Chuwon Indian and a great Conjuror) take a reed about two foot long in his mouth, and stand by a Creek-Side, where he called twice or thrice with the Reed in his mouth, and at last, has opened his Arms and fled over the Creek, which might be near a quarter of a Mile wide or more;

but I shall urge no Man's belief, but tell my own, which is: that I believe the two first accounts, which were acted at Mr. Southwell's Plantation, as firmly as any Man can believe any thing of that which is told him by honest Men, and he has not seen; not at all doubting the credit of my Authors.

The Cures that I have seen performed by the Indians are too many to relate here. So I shall only mention some few and their methods. They cure Scald-Head infallibly and never miss. Their Chief Remedy, that I have seen them make use of, is, the Oil of Acorns, cut from which sort of Oak, I am not certain. They cure Burns beyond credit. I have seen a Man burnt in such a manner (when drunk) by falling into a fire, that I did not think he would ever recover, yet they cured him in ten days so that he went about. I knew another blown up with Powder and they cured him to admiration. I never saw an Indian have an Ulcer or foul Wound in my life; neither is there any such thing to be found amongst them. They cure the Pox by a berry, that salivates as Mercury does; yet they use Sweating and Decoctions very much with it; as they do almost on every occasion; and when they are thoroughly heated they leap in the Water. The Pox is frequent in some of these Nations; amongst which I knew one Woman to die of it; and they could not, or would not cure her. Before she died she was worn away to a skeleton, yet she walked up and down to the last. We had a planter in Carolina who had got an Ulcer in his Leg, which had troubled him a great many years; at last he applied himself to one of these Indian Conjurors, who was a Pampticough Indian, and was to give the value of fifteen shillings for the cure. Now, I am not positive whether he

washed the Ulcer with anything, before he used what I am now going to speak of; which was nothing but the rotten doated Grains of Indian Corn, beaten to a Powder and the soft down growing on a Turkey's Rump. This dried up the Ulcer immediately, and no Fontanel was made to discharge the matter, he remaining a healthful Man until the time he had the Misfortune to be drowned, which was many years after. Another instance, (not of my knowledge, but I had it confirmed by several dwellers in Maryland, where it was done, was of an honest Planter, that had been possessed with a strange lingering Distemper, not usual amongst them, under which he emaciated, and grew every month worse than another, it having held him several years, in which he had made Tryal of several Doctors, as they call them, which, I suppose, were ship-surgeons. In the beginning of this distemper the patient was very well to pass, and was possessed of several slaves, which the Doctors purged all away and the Poor Man was so far from mending that he grew worse and worse every day. But it happened that one day as his Wife and he were commiserating his miserable Condition, and that he could not expect to recover, but looked for Death very speedily, and condoling the Misery he should leave his Wife and Family in, since all his Negroes were gone. At that time, I say, it happened, that an Indian was in the same room, who had frequented the House for many years and so had become as one of the Family, and would sometimes be at this Planter's house, and at other times amongst the Indians.

This Savage, hearing what they talked of, and having a great Love for the Sick Man, made this reply to what he had heard. Brother, you have been a long time sick; and, I know you have

given away your Slaves to your English Doctors; what made you do so and now become poor? They do not know how to cure you; for it is an Indian Distemper, which your People know not the Nature of. If it had been an English disease probably they would have cured you; and had you come to me at first I would have cured you for a small matter, without taking away your Servants, that made Corn for you and your Family to eat; and yet if you will give me a blanket to keep me warm, and some Powder and Shot to kill Deer withal, I will do my best to make you well still. The Man was low in Courage and Pocket too, and made the Indian this reply. Jack, my Distemper is past cure, and if our English Doctors cannot cure it, I am sure the Indians cannot. But his wife accosted her Husband in very mild terms, and told him he did not know but that God might be pleased to give a blessing to that Indian's undertaking, more than he had done to the English; and farther added if you die, I cannot be much more miserable, by giving this small matter to the Indian, so I pray you my Dear, take my advise and try him, to which by her persuasions he consented. After the bargain was concluded the Indian went into the Woods, and brought in Herbs and Roots, of which he made a Decoction, and gave it to the Man to drink, and bade him go to bed, saying it should not be long before he came again, which the patient performed as he was ordered; and the potion he had administered made him Sweat after the most violent manner that could be, whereby he smelt very offensive both to himself and they that were about him; but in the Evening, towards Night, Jack came with a great Rattle-Snake in his hand, alive, which frightened the People almost out of

their senses; and he told his Patient that he must take that to bed to him; at which the Man was in a great Consternation, and told the Indian he was resolved to let no Snake come into his Bed; for he might as well die of the Distemper that he had as to be killed by a bite of that Serpent. To which the Indian replied that he could not bite him now, nor do him any harm; for he had taken out his Poison-Teeth, and shewed him that they were gone. At last, with much Persuasion, he admitted the Snake's Company, which the Indian put about his Middle, and ordered no body to take him away upon any account, which was strictly observed, although the Snake Girded him as hard (for a great while) as if he had been drawn in by a Belt, which one pulled at with all his might. At last the Snakes Twitches grew weaker and weaker, till by degrees he felt him not; and opening the Bed he was found dead, and the Man thought himself better. The Indian came in the morning and seeing the Snake dead, told the Man that his Distemper was dead, along with that Snake, which proved so as he said, for the Man speedily recovered his Health, and became perfectly well.

They cure the Spleen (which they are much addicted to), by burning with a reed. They lay the Patient on his Back, so put a hollow cane into the fire, where they burn the End thereof till it is very hot, and on Fire at the end. Then they lay a piece of thin leather on the Patient's Belly, between the Pit of the Stomach and the Navel, so press the hot reed on the Leather, which burns the Patient so that you may ever after see the impression of the Reed where it was laid on, which mark never goes off so long as he lives. This is used for the Bellyache some-

times. They can color their hair black, tho' sometimes it is reddish, which they do with a seed of a Flower that grows commonly on their Plantations. I believe this would change the reddest Hair into perfect Black. They make use of no Minerals in their Physick, and not much of Animals; but chiefly rely on Vegetables. They have several Remedies for the Tooth-ache, which often drives away the Pain; but if they fail, they have recourse to punching out the Tooth, with a small cane set against the same, on a bit of Leather. Then they strike the Reed and so drive out the Tooth; and however it may seem to the Europeans, I prefer it before the common way of drawing Teeth by those Instruments, that endanger the Jaw and a Flux of Blood often follows, which this Method of Punching never is attended withal; neither is it half the pain. The Spontaneous Plants of America the Savage is well acquainted withal: and a Flux of Blood never follows any of their operations. They are wholly strangers to Amputation, and for what natural issues of blood happen immediately, they are not to seek for a certain speedy cure. Tears, Rozins, and Gums I have not discovered that they make much use of; and as for the Purging and Emeticks, so much in fashion with us, they never apply themselves to, unless in drinking vast quantities of their Yaupon Tea, and vomiting it up again, as clear as they drink it. This is a custom amongst all those that can produce that Plant, in which manner they take it every morning or oftener; by which Method they keep their Stomachs clean without pricking the Coats, and straining Nature, as every Purge is an Enemy to. Besides, the great Diuretick Quality of



their Tea carries off a great deal, that perhaps might prejudice their Health by Agues, and Fevers, which all Watery Countries are addicted to; for which reason, I believe it is, that the Indians are not so much addicted to that Distemper, as we are, they preventing its seizing upon them by this Plant alone. Moreover I have remarked that it is only those Places bordering on the Ocean and Great Rivers, that this distemper is frequent in, and only on and near the same places this evergreen is to be found; and none up towards the Mountains where this Ague seldom or never appears, Nature having provided suitable Remedies in all Countries, proper for the Maladies that are common thereto. The Savages of Carolina have this Tea in Veneration, above all the Plants they are acquainted withal, and tell you the discovery thereof was by an infirm Indian, that laboured under the Burden of many rugged Distempers, and could not be cured by all their Doctors: so one day he fell asleep and dreamt that if he took a Decoction of the Tree that grew at his Head he would certainly be cured; upon which he awoke and saw the Yaupon or Cassena Tree, which was not there when he fell asleep. He followed the directions of his dream and became well in a short time. Now, I suppose no Man has so little sense as to believe this Fable, yet it lets us see what they intend thereby, and that it has doubtless, worked Feats enough to gain it such an esteem amongst these Savages, who are too well versed in Vegetables, to be brought to a continual use of any one of them, upon a mere Conceit or Fancy, without some apparent Benefit they found thereby; especially when we are sensible they drink the Juices of Plants, to free

Nature of her Burdens, and not out of Foppery and Fashion, as other Nations are oftentimes found to do. Amongst all the discoveries of America by the Missionaries of the French and Spaniards, I wonder none of them was so kind to the World as to have kept a Catalogue of the Distempers they found the Savages capable of Curing, and their Method of Cure; which might have been of some advantage to our Materia Medica at home, when delivered by Men of Learning, and other Qualifications, as most of them are. Authors generally tell us that the Savages are well enough acquainted with those Plants which their Climates afford, and that some of them effect great Cures. but by what means and by what Form we are left in the dark.

The Bark of the Root of the Sassafras Tree, I have observed is much used by them. They generally torrefy it in the Embers, so strip off the Bark from the Root, beating it to a consistence fit to spread, so lay it on the grieved part; which both cleanses a foul Ulcer, and after Sacrificiation, being applied to a Contusion or Swelling, draws forth the Pain, and reduces the part to its Pristine state of Health, as I have often seen effected. Fats and Unguents. never appear in their Chirurgery, when the Skin is once broken. The Fats of Animals are used by them to render their Limbs pliable, and when wearied to relieve the Joints, and this not often, because they approve of the Sweating House (in such cases) above all things. The Salts they mix with their Bread and Soups, to give them a Relish, are Alkalis, (viz) Ashes, and calcined Bones of Deer and other Animals. Salads. they never eat any; as for Mustard and Pepper, they reckon us little bet-

ter than Madmen to make use of it amongst our victuals. They are never troubled with the Scurvy, Dropsy, nor Stone. The Phthisick, Asthma, and Diabetes, they are wholly Strangers to; neither do I remember I ever saw one Paralytick among them. The Gout, I cannot be certain whether they know what it is, or not. Indeed, I never saw any Nodes or Swellings, which attend the Gout in Europe; yet they have a sort of Rheumatism or Burning of the Limbs, which tortures them grievously, at which time, their Legs are so hot that they employ the young people continually to pour Water down them. I never saw but one or two thus afflicted. The Struma is not uncommon amongst these Savages, and another Distemper, which is in some respects like the Pox, but is attended with no Gonorrhea. This not seldom bereaves them of their Nose. I have seen three or four of them rendered most miserable spectacles by this Distemper. Yet, when they have been so negligent, as to let it run on so far without curbing it; at last they may shift to patch themselves up, and live for many Years: and such Men commonly turn Doctors. I have known two or three of these no-nose Doctors in great esteem among the Savages. The Juice of the Tulip Tree is used as a proper remedy for this Distemper. What knowledge they have in Anatomy, I cannot tell, neither did I ever see them employ themselves therein, unless as I told you before, when they make the Skeletons of their Kings and Great Men.

The Indians are very careless and negligent of their Health, as by Drunkenness and by Wading in the Water, irregular Diet and Lodging, and a thousand other disorders, (that would kill an European), which they daily

use. They boil and roast their Meat extraordinary much and eat abundance of Broth, except the Savages, whom we call the naked Indians, who never eat any Soupe. They travel from the banks of the Mississippi to war against the Sinnagars or Iroquois, and are (if equal Numbers) commonly too hard for them. They would lie and sleep in the Woods without fire, being inured thereto. They are the hardiest of all Indians, and run so fast, that they are never taken, neither do any Indians outrun them, if they are pursued. Their Savage Enemies say their Nimbleness and Wind proceeds from their never eating any Broth. The Small-Pox has been fatal to them; they do not often escape, when they are seized with that Distemper, which is a contrary one to what they ever knew. Most certain it had never visited America before the Discovery thereof by the Christians. Their running into the Water in the Extremity of this Disease, strikes it in, and kills all that use it. Now they are become a little wiser, but formerly it destroy'd whole Towns, without leaving one Indian alive in the whole village. The Plague was never known amongst them, that I could learn by what enquiry I have made. These Savages use Scarrification almost in all Distempers. Their chief Instrument for that operation is the Teeth of Rattlesnakes, which they poison withal. They take them out of the Snake's Heads and suck out the Poison with their Mouths, (and so keep them for use) and spit out the Venom, which is green, and are never damaged thereby. The Small-Pox and Rum have made such a destruction among them, that on good grounds, I do not believe there is the sixth Savage living within two hundred Miles of our Settlement as there were fifty years ago. These poor Creatures have so many Enemies to destroy

them, that it is a wonder one of them is left alive amongst us. The Small-Pox I have acquainted you withal above, and so I have of Rum, and so I shall only add, that they have got a way to carry it back to the Westward Indians, who never knew what it was till within a very few years. Now they have it brought them by the Tuskeruros and other Neighbour Indians, but the Tuskeruros chiefly, who carry it in Rundlets several hundred Miles, amongst other Indians. Sometimes they cannot forebear breaking their Cargo, but sit down in the Woods and drink it all up, and then hollow and shout like so many Bedlamites. I accidentally once met with one of these drunken Crews, and was amazed to see a Parcel of Drunkards so far from any Englishman's house, but the Indians I had in company informed me that they were Merchants, and had drunk all their stock, as is very common for them to do. But when they happen to carry it safe (which is seldom without drinking some part of it, and filling it up with water) and come to an Indian Town, those that buy rum of them have so many Mouthfulls for a Buck-Skin, they never using any other Measure; and for this purpose the Buyer always makes choice of his Man, which is one that has the greatest Mouth, whom he brings to the Market with a Bowl to put it in. The Seller looks narrowly to the Man's Mouth that measures it, and if he happens to swallow any down, either through wilfulness or otherwise, the Merchant or some of the other Party does not scruple to throw the Fellow down, exclaiming against him for false

Measure. Thereupon, the Buyer finds another Mouthpiece to measure the rum by; so that this trading is very agreeable to the Spectators, to see such a deal of quarreling and controversy, as often happens about it, and is diverting.

Another Destroyer of them is the Art they have, and often practise, of poisoning one another, which is done by a large white spongy Root, that grows in the Fresh-Marshes, which is one of their Poisons; not but that they have many other Drugs, which they poison one another withal.

Lastly the continual Wars these Savages maintain, one Nation against another, which sometimes hold for some ages, killing and making Captives until they become so weak thereby, that they are forced to make Peace for want of Recruits to supply their Wars; and the Differences of Languages that is found amongst these Heathens, seems altogether strange. For it often appears that every dozen Miles you meet with an Indian Town, that is quite different from the others you last parted withal; and what a little supplies this Defect is, that the most powerful Nation of these Savages scorns to treat or Trade with any others (of fewer numbers and less power) in any other Tongue but their own, which serves for the Lingua of the Country, with which we travel and deal; as for example we see that the Tuskeruro's are most numerous in North Carolina, therefore their Tongue is understood by some in every Town of all the Indians near us. And here I shall insert a small dictionary of every Tongue, though not alphabetically digested.



# CHAPTER V.

ENGLISH.	TUSKERURO.	PAMPITCOUGH.	WOCCON.
One .....	Unche .....	weembot .....	Tonne
Two .....	Necte .....	neshinnauh .....	Num-perre
Three .....	Ohf-fah .....	nish-wonner .....	Nam-mee
Four .....	Untoc .....	Yau-Ooner .....	Pannum-punne
Five .....	Ouch-whe .....	umperren .....	Webtau
Six .....	Houeyoc .....	Who-yeoc .....	Is-sto
Seven .....	chauc-noc .....	Thap-po-osh .....	Nommis-fau
Eight .....	nec-kara .....	Nauhaushohoo .....	Nupsau
Nine .....	wearah .....	Nach-ic-conk .....	Weihere
Ten .....	wartsaus .....	Cosh .....	Soone noponne
Eleven .....	unche seauwhau .....	.....	Tonne hauk pe
Twelve .....	nectec seaukhau .....	.....	Soone nomme
Twenty .....	wartsau seaukhau .....	.....	Winnop
Thirty .....	ossa te wartsau .....	.....	.....
Hundred .....	youch fe .....	.....	.....
Thousand .....	qi you se .....	.....	.....
Rum .....	oonaquod .....	Weesaccon .....	Yup-fe
Blankets .....	Oorewa .....	Mattosh .....	Roo-inne
White .....	Ware-occa .....	Wopposhaumosh .....	Waurraupa
Red .....	Cotcoo-rea .....	Mish-cosk .....	Yauta
Black or Blue the same .....	Caw-hunshe .....	Mow-cottowosh .....	Yah-te-stea
Gunpowder .....	Ouku .....	Pungue .....	Roceyam
Shot .....	Cauna .....	Ar-rounser .....	Week
Axe .....	Au-nika .....	Tomma-hick .....	Tau-unt-a winnik
Knife .....	Oosocks-nauh .....	Rig-cosa .....	Wee
Tobacco .....	Charho .....	Hooch-pau .....	uucoone
Shirt .....	Ough-tre's .....	.....	Tacca-pitteneer
Hat .....	Oo-roso-so .....	.....	Wee-kessoo
Fire .....	Trossa .....	Mottau-quahanu .....	Intome-possawa
Water .....	Utchar .....	Tinda .....	Yau
Goat .....	Awoo .....	Umpe .....	Ejau
Awl or Needle .....	Ouswax or Ka-whitchra .....	Taus-won .....	Rummissau
A Hoe .....	Oose-waure .....	Moc-cose .....	Woonshe-shee
Salt .....	Wauche-wocnoc .....	Rosh-shocquon .....	Roce-pau
Paint .....	Cheek-ha .....	.....	Whooyeonne
Ronoak .....	Quaunt .....	Chuwon .....	Rummaer
Peak .....	Nauh-hou-eot .....	Mis-kis-su .....	Erroco
Gun .....	Chu-teche .....	Ronoak .....	Wittape
Gun-Locks .....	Auk-noc .....	Gau-hooptop .....	Nookossa
Flints .....	Ooteste .....	Gun-tock-Seike .....	Matt-teer
A Flap .....	Ou-negh-ra .....	Hinds .....	Roseyau
Belt .....	Oonoa-teste .....	Rappatoc .....	Wee-kau
Scissors and Tobacco Tongues .....	Cheh-ra .....	Maachone .....	Toc-koor
A Kettle .....	Oowaiana .....	.....	Toosewan
A Pot .....	Ocnock .....	.....	.....
Acorns .....	Kooawa .....	.....	Roosomme
A Pine Tree .....	Heigta .....	Ooonossa .....	Hooheh
Englishman .....	Nickreruroh .....	Tosh-Sronte .....	Wintshohore
Indians .....	Unqua .....	Nuppinn .....	Yauh-he

ENGLISH.	TUSKERURO.	WOCO.
A Horse .....	A ñots .....	Yenwetoa
Swine .....	Watsquerre .....	Nommewarraupau
Moss .....	Auoona hau .....	Itto
Raw skin undress'd .....	Ootahawa .....	Teep
Buck-Skin .....	Ocques .....	Rookau
Fawn-Skin .....	Ottea .....	Wisto
Bear-Skin .....	Occhegara .....	Ourka
Fox-Skin .....	Che-chou .....	Hannatockore
Raccoon-Skin .....	Roo-Sotto .....	Auher
Squirrel-Skin .....	Sost .....	Yehau
Wildcat-Skin .....	Cauhauawa-ana .....	.....
Panther-Skin .....	Caunerex .....	Wattau
Wolf .....	Squarrena .....	Tire Kiro
Mink .....	Chau-Kauene .....	Soccon
Otter .....	Chaunoc .....	Wetkes
A Mat .....	Ooyethne .....	Soppepepor
Basket .....	Ooyaura .....	Rookeappa
Feathers .....	Ooshooqua .....	Soppe
Dress'd Skin .....	Cotcoo .....	Rauhau
A Turkey .....	Coona .....	Yauta
A Duck .....	Sooeau .....	Welka
A King .....	Teethha .....	Reamore
Fat .....	Ootsaure .....	Yendare
Soft .....	Utsauwanne .....	Roosomme
Hard or Heavy .....	Waucots nlo .....	Itte teraugh
A Rope .....	Utsera .....	Trauhe
A Possum .....	Che-ra .....	.....
A Day .....	Ootauh-ne .....	.....
A Pester .....	Tic-caugh-ne .....	Miyau
A Mortar .....	Ootic caught-ne .....	Yossoo.
Stockings .....	Wayhaushe .....	.....
A Creek .....	Wackena .....	.....
A River .....	Abunt wackena .....	Yossoo
A Man .....	Entequos .....	.....
Old Man .....	Ocoonahawa .....	.....
Young Man .....	Quottis .....	.....
Woman .....	Con-noowa .....	.....
Old Woman .....	Cusquerre .....	Yicau
Wife .....	Kateocca .....	Yeccauan
A Child .....	Woccanookne .....	.....
A Boy .....	Wariaugh .....	.....
Infant .....	Usterosta .....	.....
Ears .....	Ooethnat .....	.....
Fishgig .....	Ootosne .....	Weetipsa
A Comb .....	Oonaquitchra .....	Sacketoome posswa
A Cake Baked .....	Ooneck .....	.....
A Head .....	Ootaure .....	Poppe
Hair .....	Oowaara .....	Tumme
Brother .....	Caunotka .....	Yaukauhe
I .....	Ek .....	.....
Thou .....	Eets .....	.....
There .....	Ka .....	.....
Homine .....	Cotquerre .....	Roocauwa
Bread .....	Cotocnare .....	Ikettau
Broath .....	Ook-heo .....	.....
Corn .....	Oonaha .....	Cose
.....	Oonave .....	.....

ENGLISH.	TUSKERURO.	WOCCO.
.....	Oofare .....	.....
Pease .....	Oosha .....	.....
A Bag .....	Saugh-he .....	Coosauk
Fish .....	Uittaqua .....	Ekoorryomon
A Louse .....	Cunshe .....	Yacunne
A Flea .....	Cheecq .....	Eppeyau
Potatoes .....	Nauocq .....	.....
A Stick .....	Unto ne.....	Wauk
Wood .....	Chinqua .....	.....
House .....	Ouyunkgue .....	Yonne
A Cow .....	Oinouse .....	Ouke
A Snake ..	Ous-sarunt .....	Nappinjure
A Rat .....	Us-quauh-ne .....	Yau-hauk
A Goose .....	Rusquine .....	Wittau
A Swan .....	Au-hoohaha .....	Auhaun
Allegator .....	Oorhast .....	Atter
A Crab .....	Utsererauh .....	Monwittetau
A Canoe .....	Rouare cou .....	Wunneau
A Box .....	Ooshunnawa .....	Watt
A Bowl .....	Ooanoo .....	Yopoonitsa
A Spoon .....	Ortse .....	Cotsoo
A Path .....	Oughquere .....	Cotsau
Sun or Moon .....	Wauh-hauhne .....	Yauh
Wind .....	Heita .....	Wittapare
A Star .....	Hoonoch .....	Yuncor
Rain .....	Uttewiraratse .....	Wattapi-Untakeer
A Rundlet .....	Untuch .....	Yawowa
An Eel .....	Oosottoo .....	Yantoha
A Cable .....	Oohunawa .....	.....
Small Ropes .....	Cuhna-na .....	Ynpyupseunne
A Button .....	Utquichra .....	.....
Breeches .....	Utsera utquichra .....	.....
Stockings .....	Tic-hah .....	Rummissauwouna
Day .....	Wahunshe .....	Rooyaukitte
Mad .....	Oowissera .....	Roosoo possoo
Angry .....	Wouwoc-hook .....	Waukhaway
Afraid .....	Cosserunte .....	Rockcumme
Smoke .....	Cotcherore .....	Roocheha
A Thief or Rogue .....	Werricauna .....	Reheshiwau
A Dog .....	Oo-teighne .....	Too-she
A Reed .....	Katichhei .....	.....
Lightwood .....	Cheeth .....	Tauh-he
Tomorrow .....	Cauna .....	Weekwonne
Now .....	Kakoo .....	Sek
To-day .....	Jureha .....	Kittape
A Little while ago .....	Kahunk .....	.....
Yesterday .....	Kawa .....	.....
How many .....	Kakwoowa .....	Yauka
How far .....	Oousooto .....	Yottoha
Will you go .....	Ut-tewots .....	Tontarinte
Will you go along with me .....	Untateawa .....	.....
Go you .....	Unta hah .....	Quauke
Give it me .....	Its warko .....	Yuppa me
That's all .....	Cotshau .....	Mothei
A Cubit Length .....	Ut chat .....	Cuttaune
Dead .....	Kihoosocca .....	Ishewounaup
.....	Whaharia .....	Caure



ENGLISH.	TUSKERURO.	WOCO.
A Gourd or Bottle .....	Utchaawa .....	Wattape
A Laxy Fellow .....	Wattatoo watse .....	Tontaunete
Englishman is thirsty ....	Oukwockaninniwock .....	
I will sell you goods very cheap .....	Wausthanocha .....	Nau hau hoore ene
All the Indians are drunk .....	Connaugh jost twane ....	Nonnupper
Have you got anything to eat .....	Utta-ana-wox .....	Noccoo Eraute
I am sick .....	Connauwox .....	Waurepa
A Fish hook .....	Oos-skinna .....	
Don't loose it .....	Oon est nonne it quost ....	
A Tobacco Pipe .....	Oosquaana .....	Intone
I remember it .....	Oonutsuka .....	Aucommanto
Let it alone .....	Thot-saur-auweek .....	Sauhau
Peaches .....	Roo-ooe .....	Yonne
Walnuts .....	Rootau-ooe .....	
Hicerry nuts .....	Rootau .....	Nimmia
A Jews Harp .....	Ooratsa .....	Wottiyau
I forgot it .....	Merrauka .....	
Northwest wind .....	Hothooka .....	
Snow .....	Acaunque .....	Wawawe

To repeat more of this Indian Jar-gon, would be to trouble the reader; and as an account of how imperfect they are in their Moods and Tenses, has been given by several already, I shall only add that their Languages or Tongues are so deficient, that you cannot suppose the Indians ever could express themselves in such a Flight of style, as Authors would have you believe. They are so far from it, that they are just able to make one another understand readily what they talk about. As for the two Consonants D and F, I never knew them in any Indian Speech, I have met withal; yet I must tell you that they have such a way of abbreviating their speech when in their great Councils and Debates, that the young Men do not understand what they treat about when they hear them argue. It is wonderful, what has occasion'd so many different Speeches as the Savages have. The three Nations I now mention do not live over ten Leagues distant, and two of them, viz, the Tus-

keruro's and the Woccon, are not two Leagues asunder, yet in their Speech differs in every word thereof, except one, which is Tsaure Cockles, which is in both Tongues the same, and nothing else. Now this difference of Speech causes Jealousies and Fears amongst them, which bring Wars, wherein they destroy one another; otherwise the Christians had not (in all possibility) settled America so easily as they have done, had these Tribes of Savages united themselves into one People or general Interest, or were they so but every Hundred Miles. In short, they are an odd sort of People, under the Circumstances they are at present, and have some such uncouth Ways in their Management and Course of living that it seems a Miracle to us, how they bring about their Designs, as they do when their Ways are commonly quite contrary to ours. I believe they are (as to this life) a very Happy People; and were it not for the Feuds amongst themselves, they would enjoy the happiest State,

(in this World) of all Mankind. They met with Enemies when we came amongst them; for they are no nearer Christianity now, than they were at the first Discovery, to all appearances. They have learnt several vices of the Europeans, but not one Vertue as I know of. Drunkenness was a Stranger when we found them out, and Swearing their speech cannot express; yet those that speak English, learn to swear the first thing they talk of. Its true they have some Vertues and some Vices; but how the Christians can bring these People into the Bosom of the Church, is a Proposal that ought to be formed and followed by the wisest Heads and best Christians. After I have given one remark or two further, of some of their Strange Practices and Notions, I will give my Opinion, how I think in all probability it may be possibly be effected, and so shall conclude this Treatise of Carolina.

They are a very craving People, and if a Man give them anything of a Present, they think it obliges him to give them another; and so until he has given them all he has; for they have no Bounds of Satisfaction in their way, and if they give you anything it is to receive twice the value of it. They have no Consideration that you will want what you give them; for their way of Living is so contrary to ours, that neither we nor any one can fathom one another's designs and Methods. They call Rum and Physick by one name, which implies that Rum makes People sick, as when they have taken any Poisonous Plant, yet they cannot forbear Rum. They make offerings of their First-Fruits, and the more serious sort of them throw into the Ashes, the first bit or spoonful of every Meal they sit down to, which, they say is the same to them, as the pulling off our Hats, and

talking when we go to Victuals is to us. They name the Months very agreeably, as one is the Herring-Month, another the Strawberry-Month, another the Mulberry-Month. Others name them by the Trees that blossom; especially the Dog-Wood Tree; or they say, we will return when Turkies gobble, that is in March and April. The age of the Moon they understand, but know no different Name for the Sun and Moon. They can guess well at the time of the Day, by the Sun's Height. Their Age they number by Winters, and say such a Man or Woman is so many Winters old. They have no Sabbath, or Day of Rest. Their Slaves are never over-burdened with work, and so not driven by Severity to seek for that Relief. Those that are acquainted with the English and speak the Tongue, know when Sunday comes; besides the Indians have a distinct Name for Christmas, which they call Winnick Keshuse, or the Englishman's Gods Moon. There is one most abominable custom amongst them, which they call Husquenawing, their Young Men; which I have not made any mention of as yet, so will give you an account of it here. You must know, that most commonly, once a Year, or at farthest once in two Years, these People take up so many of their Young Men, as they think are able to undergo it, and Husquenaugh them, which is to make them obedient and respective to their superiors, and (as they say) is the same to them, as it is to send our Children to School, to be taught good Breeding and Letters. This House of Correction is a large strong Cabin, made on purpose for the Reception of the Young Men and Boys, that have not passed their graduation already; and it is always at Christmas that they Husquenaugh their Youth, which is by bringing them into this House

and keeping them dark all the time, where they more than half starve them. Besides they give them Pellytory Bark and several intoxicating Plants, that make them go raving Mad as ever were an" People in this World; and you may hear them make the most dismal and Hellish cries, and Howlings, that ever Human Creatures ever expressed; all which continues about five or six weeks, and the little Meat they eat is the nastiest loathsome stuff, and mix'd with all manner of filth it's possible to get. After the time expires they are brought out of the Cabin, which never is in Town, but always a distance off, and guarded by a Jaylor or two, who watch them by turns; now when they first come out they are as poor as any Creatures ever were; for you must know several die under this diabolical Purgation. Moreover, they either really are, or pretend to be, dumb and do not speak for several Days; I think twenty or thirty; and look so ghastly, and so changed that it's next to an impossibility to know them again, although you were ever so well acquainted with them before. I would fain have gone into the Mad-House and seen them in their time of Purgatory, but the King would not suffer it, because he told me they would do me, or any other white man, an injury, that ventured in amongst them, so I desisted. They play this Prank with Girls as well as Boys, and I believe it a miserable Life they endure, because I have known several of them to run away at that time and thus avoid it. Now, the Savages say, if it was not for this they could never keep their Youth in Subjection, besides that it hardens them hereafter to the Fatigues of War, Hunting, and all Manner of Hardship, which their Way of living exposes them to. Besides, they add, that it carries off those

infirm weak Bodies, that would have been only a disgrace and burden to their Nation, and saves the Victuals and Cloathing for better People, that would have been expended on such useless Creatures. These Savages are described in their proper Colours but by a very few; for those that generally write Histories of this new World are such as Interest, Preferment, and Merchandize, drew thither, and know no more of the People than I do of the Laplanders, which is only by Hear-Say. And if we will make just Remarks, how near such Relations generally approach Truth and Nicety, we shall find very few of them worthy of Entertainment; and as for the other part of the Volume, it is generally stuffed with Invectives against the Government they lived under, on which Stage is commonly acted greater Barbarities, in Murdering worthy Men's Reputations, than all the Savages in the new World are capable of equaling, or so much as imitating.

And since I hinted at a regulation of the Savages, and to propose a Way to convert them to Christianity, I will first particularize the several Nations of Indians that are our Neighbours, and then proceed to what I promised.

Tuskeruro Indians, are fifteen Towns viz. Haruta, Waqui, Contah-nah, Anna Ooka, Conauh-Kare, Harooka, Una Nauhan, Kentanuska, Chunaneets, Kenta, Eno, Naur-hegh-ne, Oonossoora, Tosneoc, Nonawharitse, Nursoorooka; Fighting Men 1,200. Waccon Towns 2, Yupwarereman, Tooptatmeer, Fighting Men 120. Machapunga, Town 1, Maramiskeet, Fighting Men 30. Bear River, Town 1, Raudauqua-quank, Fighting Men 50. Maherring Indians, Town 1, Maherring River, Fighting Men 50. Chuwon Indians, Town 1, Bennets Creek, Fighting Men 15. Paspatank Indians, Town 1, Paspatank River, Fighting Men 10. Poeskeit,



Town 1, North River, Fighting Men 30. Nottaway Indians, Town 1, Winoack Creek, Fighting Men 30. Hatteras Town, 1, Sand-Banks, Fighting Men 16. Connamox Indians, Towns 2, Coranine, Raruta, Fighting Men 25. Neus Indians, Towns 2, Chattooka, Roucconk, Fighting Men 15. Jaupin Indians, 6 People. Pampticough Indians, Town 1, Island, Fighting Men 15. These five Nations of the Totero's, Saponas, Keiauwee's, Aconeches, and Schoccories, are lately come amongst us, and may contain, in all, about 750 Men, Women and Children. Total 4,780. Now there appear to be one thousand, six hundred and twelve Fighting Men, of our Neighbouring Indians; and probably there are three-Fifths of Women and Children, not including Old Men, which amounts to four thousand and thirty Savages, besides the five Nations lately come. Now, as I before hinted, we will see what grounds there are to make these People serviceable to us, and better themselves thereby.

On a fair Scheme, we must first allow these Savages, what really belongs to them, that is what good Qualities and Natural Endowments they possess, whereby they being in their proper Colours, the Event may be better guessed at, and fathom'd.

First they are as apt to learn any Handicraft as any People that the World affords; I will except none, as is seen by their Canoes and Stauking Heads, which they make themselves; but to my purpose the Indian Slaves in South Carolina, and elsewhere, make any argument good.

Second we have no disciplin'd Men in Europe, but what have at one time or another, been branded with Mutining and Murmuring against their Chiefs. These Savages are never found Guilty of that Crime in a Soldier; I challenge all Mankind to tell me one instance of it; besides they never

prove Traitors to their Native Country, but rather chuse Death than partake and side with the Enemy.

They naturally possess the Righteous Man's Gift; they are Patient under all Afflictions, and have a great many other Natural Vertues, which I have slightly touched on throughout the Account of these Savages.

They are really better to us than we are to them; they always give us Victuals at their Quarters and take care that we are armed against Hunger and Thirst; we do not so by them (generally speaking) but let them walk by our Doors Hungry and do not often relieve them. We look upon them with Scorn and Disdain, and think them little better than Beasts in Human Shape, tho' if well examined, we shall find that for all our Religion and Education, we possess more moral Deformities, and Evils than these Savages do, or are acquainted withal.

We reckon them slaves in comparison to us, and Intruders, as oft as they enter our Houses, or Hunt near our Dwellings. But if we will admit Reason to be our Guide, she will inform us that these Indians are the freest People in the World, and so far from being Intruders among us that we have abandoned our own Native soil, to drive them out, and possess theirs; neither have we any true balance in judging of these Poor Heathens, because we neither give allowance for their Natural Disposition, nor the Sylvian Education, and strange Customs (uncouth to us) they lie under and have ever been trained up to; these are false Measures for Christians to take, and indeed no man can be reckon'd a Moralist only, who will not make choice and use of better Rules to walk and act by. We trade with them, 'tis true. But to what End? Not to show them the steps of Vertue, and the Golden Rule, to do

as we would be done by. No, we have furnished them with the vice of Drunkenness, which is the open Road to all others, and daily cheat them in everything we sell and esteem it a Gift of Christianity not to sell them so cheap as we do to the Christians, as we call ourselves. Pray let me know where there is to be found one Sacred Command or Precept of our Master, that counsels us to such behaviour? Besides, I believe it will not appear but that all the Wars which we have had with the Savages, were occasioned by the unjust dealings of the Christians towards them. I can name more than a few which my own Enquiry has given me a right Understanding of, and I am afraid the remainder (if they come to the test) will prove themselves Birds of the same Feather.

As we are in Christian Duty bound, so we must act and behave ourselves to these Savages, if we either intend to be serviceable in converting them to the Knowledge of the Gospel, or discharge the Duty which every Man, within the Pale of the Christian Church, is bound to do. Upon this score, we ought to show a Tenderness for these Heathens under the weight of Infidelity; let us cherish their Good Deeds, and, with Mildness and Clemency, make them sensible and forewarn them of their ill ones; let our Dealings be just with them in every Respect, and show no ill Example whereby they may think we advise them to practice that which we will not be conformable to ourselves; Let them have cheap penniworths, (without Guile in our Trading with them), and learn them the Mysteries of our Handicrafts, as well as our Religion, otherwise we deal unjustly by them. But it is highly necessary to be brought in Practice, which is to give Encouragement to the Ordinary People, and those of a lower Rank, that

they might marry with these Indians, and come into Plantations, and Houses, where so many Acres of Land and some Gratuity of Money (out of a public stock) are given to the new-married couple, and that the Indians might have encouragement to send their Children Apprentices to proper Masters that would be kind to them, and make them Masters of a Trade, whereby they might be drawn to live amongst us, and become members of the same Ecclesiastical and Civil Government we are under; then we should have great advantages to make daily Conversions amongst them, when they saw that we were kind and just to them in all our Dealings. Moreover, by the Indians Marrying with the Christians, and coming into Plantations with their English Husbands, or Wives, they would become Christians, and their Idolatry would be quite forgotten, and in all probability, a better Worship come in its Stead; for were the Jews engrafted thus, and alienated from the Worship and Conversation of Jews their abominations would Vanish and be no more.

Thus we should be let into a better understanding of the Indian Tongue by our new Converts; and the whole body of these people would arrive to the Knowledge of our Religion and Customs and become as one People with us. By this Method also, we should have a true knowledge of all the Indian's skill in Medicine and Surgery; they would inform us of the Situation of our Rivers, Lakes and Tracts of Lands in the Lords' Dominions, where by their Assistance, greater Discoveries may be made than has been hitherto found out, and by their Accompanying us in our Expeditions, we might Civilize a great many other Nations of the Savages, and daily add to our strength in Trade and Interest; so that we might be suf-

ficiently enabled to conquer or maintain our Ground against all the Enemies to the Crown of England in America, both Christian and Savage.

What Children we have of theirs to learn Trades, etc., ought to be put into those Hands, that are Men of the best Lives and Characters, and that are not only strict Observers of their Religion, but also of a mild, winning and sweet Disposition, that these Indian Parents may often go and see how well their Children are dealt with, which would much win them to our Ways of Living, Mildness being a Vertue that Indians are in love withal, for they do not practice beating and correcting their Children as we do. A general Complaint is that it seems impossible to convert these People to Christianity, as, at first sight it does; and as for those in New Spain, they have the prayers of that Church in Latin by Rote, and know the external Behavior of Mass and Sermons; yet scarce any of them are steady and abide with Constancy in Good Works, and the Duties of the Christian Church. We find that the Fuentes and several other of the noted Indian Families about Mexico, and in other parts of New Spain, had given several large Gifts to the Altar, and outwardly seem'd fond of their New Religion; yet those that were the greatest Zealots outwards, on a strict En-

quiry were found guilty of Idolatry and Witchcraft; and this seems to proceed from their co-habiting, which, as I have noted before, gives opportunities of Cabals to recall their ancient pristine Infidelity and Superstitions. They never argue against our Religion, but with all imaginable indifference own, that it is most proper for us that have been brought up in it.

In my Opinion, its better for Christians of a mean fortune to marry with the Civilized Indians, than to suffer the Hardships of four or five Years Servitude, in which they meet with Sickness and Seasonings amidst a Crowd of other afflictions, which the Tyranny of a bad Master lays upon such poor Souls, all which those acquainted with our Tobacco Plantations are not Strangers to.

This seems to be a more reasonable Method of converting the Indians, than to set up our Christian Banner in a Field of Blood, as the Spaniards have done in New Spain, and baptise one hundred with the Sword for one at the Font. Whilst we make way for a Christian Colony, through a field of blood, and defraud, and make away with those that one day may be wanted in this World, and in the next appear against us, we make way for a more potent Christian Enemy to invade us hereafter, of which we may repent, when too late.

(THE END.)











# Col. Wm. Byrd's Survey of Dividing Line.

*The Colonies of Virginia and North Carolina Set Off From Each Other—The Virginia Gentleman's Humorous and Caustic Comments on Men and Manners—First Expedition Sent Out by Sir Walter Raleigh to These Shores—Queen Elizabeth's First Experience With the "Bewitching Weed" (Tobacco)—Tribute to Presbyterians—"Secret History" of William Penn—Pays Respects to Saints of New England—Hard on North Carolinians.*

Raleigh, Oct. 2.—A number of persons have written me, expressing a desire for the republication of Col. William Byrd's History of the Dividing Line between Virginia and North Carolina." While the book is not a large one, it will not be necessary to republish it, but merely to give some extracts from it. The book is of very great interest and is rare. The copy of it from these extracts are made is the property of Bishop Joseph Blount Ches-hire, who purchased it in 1873 and it bears this inscription: "With the respects of Ed Ruffin." Mr. Ruffin and his brother, Julian, publishes what are known as the Westover Manuscripts in 1841, at Petersburg. Edmund Ruffin was the man who fired the first gun at Fort Sumter.

The manuscripts of Col. William Byrd, of Westover, Va., date from 1723 to 1736, and are in a large folio volume, bound in parchment. The manuscripts show that they were written for the amusement of the author, his family and friends, and not with any view to their being printed, Col. Byrd in his "History of the Dividing Line," run in the year 1728, begins by a recital of the formation of the various British colonies fronting on the Atlantic Ocean, showing how one after another they

were carved out of Virginia, by royal grants. All that part of the continent stretching as far as the Cape of Florida, went at first under the general name of Virginia, the only distinction in those early days being that all the coast south of Chesapeake Bay was called South Virginia, and all to the north of that bay was called North Virginia, Col. Byrd says: "The first settlement of this foreign country was owing to that great ornament of the British nation, Sir Walter Raleigh, who obtained a grant thereof from Queen Elizabeth, of ever-glorious memory, by letters patent, dated March 25, 1584, but whether the gentleman ever made a voyage hither himself is uncertain, because those who have favored the public with an account of his life mention nothing of it. However, this much may be depended on, that Sir Walter invited sundry persons of distinction to share his charter and join their purses with his in the laudable project of fitting out a colony to Virginia. Accordingly two ships were sent away that very year, under the command of his good friends Amidas and Barlow, to take possession of the country in the name of his royal mistress, the Queen of England. These worthy commanders, for the advantage of the

trade winds, shaped their course first to the Charibbe, (Carribean) Islands, thence stretching away by the Gulf of Florida, dropped anchor not far from Roanoke inlet. They ventured ashore near that place, upon an island now called Colleton Island, where they set up the arms of England and claimed the adjacent country in right of their sovereign lady, the Queen, and this ceremony being duly performed, they kindly invited the neighboring Indians to traffic with them. These poor people at first approached the English with great caution, having heard much of the treachery of the Spaniards, and not knowing but these strangers might be as treacherous as they. But, at length, discovering a kind of good nature in their looks, they ventured to draw near and barter their skins and furs for the bawbles and trinkets of the English. These first adventurers made a very profitable voyage, raising at least 1,000 per cent. on their cargo. Among other Indian commodities they brought over some of that bewitching vegetable, tobacco. And this being the first that ever came to England, Sir Walter thought he could not do less than make a present of some of the brightest of it to his royal mistress, for her smoking! The Queen graciously accepted it, but finding her stomach sicken after two or three whiffs, it was presently whispered by the Earl of Leicester's faction that Sir Walter had certainly poisoned her. But her majesty soon recovering her disorder, obliged the Countess of Nottingham and all her maids to smoke a whole pipe out among them. As it happened some ages before to the fashion to saunter to the Holy Land, and go upon other Quixote adventures, so it was now grown the humor to take a trip to America. The Spaniards had lately discovered rich

mines in their part of the West Indies, which made their maritime neighbors eager to do so too. This modish frenzy being still more inflamed by the charming account of Virginia by the first adventurers, made many fond of removing to such a paradise. Happy was he, and still happier she, that could get themselves transported, fondly expecting their coarsest utensils in that happy place would be of massive silver. This made it easy for the company to produce as many volunteers as they wanted for their new colony; but, like most other undertakers who have no assistance from the public, they starved the design by too much frugality, for, unwilling to launch out at first in too much expense, they shipped off but few people at a time and those but scantily provided. The adventurers were besides idle and extravagant, and expected they might live without work in so plentiful a country. These wretches were set ashore not far from Roanoke Inlet, but by some fatal disagreement, or laziness, were either starved or cut to pieces by the Indians. Several repeated misadventures of this kind did, for some time, allay the itch of sailing to this new world, but the distemper broke out again about the year 1666. Then it happened that the Earl of Southampton and several other persons, eminent for their quality and estates, were invited into the company, who applied themselves once more to people the then almost abandoned colony. For this purpose they embarked about a hundred men, most of them reprobates of good families, and related to some of the company, who were men of quality and fortune. The ships that carried them made a shift to find a more direct way to Virginia and ventured through the capes into the bay of Chesapeake. The same night they

came to an anchor at the mouth of the Powhatan, the same as James river, where they built a small fort at a place called Point Comfort. This settlement stood its ground from that time forward, in spite of all the blunders and disagreements of the first adventurers, and the many calamities that befell the colony afterwards. These found the first adventurers in a very starving condition, but relieved their wants with the fresh supply they brought with them. From Kiquotan they extended themselves as far as Jamestown where, like true Englishmen, they built a church that cost no more than fifty pounds, and a tavern that cost five hundred. They had now made peace with the Indians, but there was one thing wanting to make that peace lasting. The natives could by no means persuade themselves that the English were heartily their friends, so long as they disdained to intermarry with them. And, in earnest, had the English consulted their own security and the good of the colony; had they intended either to civilize or convert these gentiles, they could have brought their stomachs to embrace this prudent alliance. The Indians are generally tall and well-proportioned, which may make full amends for the darkness of their complexion. Add to this, they are healthy and strong, with constitutions untainted by lewdness, and not enfeebled by luxury. Besides, morals and all considered, I cannot think the Indians were much greater heathens than the first adventurers, who, had they been good Christians, would have had the charity to take this only method of converting the natives to Christianity. For, after all that can be said, a sprightly lover is the most prevailing missionary that can be sent amongst these, or any other infidels.

Besides, the poor Indians would have less reason to complain that the English took away their lands if they had received it by way of portion with their daughters. Had such affinities been contracted in the beginning how much bloodshed would have been prevented, and how populous would the country have become, and consequently, how considerable. Nor would the shade of the skin been any reproach at this day, for if a Moor may be washed white in three generations, surely an Indian might have been blanched in two. The French for their parts have not been so squeamish in Canada, who upon trial find an abundance of attraction in the Indians. Their late grand monarch though it not below even the dignity of a Frenchman to become one flesh with these people, and therefore ordered 100 livres for any of his subjects, man or woman, that would intermarry with a native. By this piece of policy we find the French interest very much strengthened amongst the natives, and their religion, such as it is, propagated just as far as their love. And I heartily wish this well-contracted scheme does not hereafter give the French an advantage over his majesty's good subjects on the northern continent of America. About the same time New England was pared off from Virginia by letters patent, bearing date April 10, 1608. Several gentlemen of the town and neighborhood of Plymouth obtained this grant, with the Lord Chief Justice Popham at their head. Their bounds were specified to extend from 38 to 45 degrees of northern latitude, with a breadth of one hundred miles from the sea-shore. The first fourteen years this company encountered many difficulties, and lost many men, though far from being discouraged, they sent over numerous recruits of



Presbyterians, every year, who for all that, had much ado to stand their ground, with all their fighting and praying. But about the year of 1620 a large swarm of dissenters fled thither from the severities of their stepmother, the Church. These saints, conceiving the same aversion to the copper complexion of the natives with that of the first adventurers to Virginia, would on no terms contract alliances with them, afraid, perhaps, like the Jews of old, lest they might be drawn into idolatry by those strange women. Whatever disgusted them, I cannot say, but this false delicacy creating in the Indians a jealousy that the English were ill-affected towards them, was the cause that many of them were cut off, and the rest exposed to various distresses. This re-enforcement was landed not far from Cape Cod, where, for their greater security, they built a fort and near it a small town, which in honor of the proprietors, was called New Plymouth. But they still had many discouragements, to struggle with, though, by being well supported from home, they by degrees triumphed over them all. Their brethren, after this, flocked over so fast, that in a few years they extended the settlement one hundred miles along the coast, including Rhode Island and Martha's Vineyard. Thus the colony thrived apace, and was thronged with long detachments of independent and Presbyterians who thought themselves persecuted at home. Though these people may be ridiculed for some pharisaical particularities in their worship and behavior, yet they were very useful subjects, as being frugal and industrious, giving no scandal or bad example, at least by any open and public vices. By which excellent qualities they had much the advantage of the Southern

colony, who thought their membership of the established Church sufficient to sanctify very loose and profligate morals. For this reason New England improved much faster than Virginia, and in seven or eight years New Plymouth, like Switzerland, seemed too narrow a territory for its inhabitants. But what wounded Virginia deepest was the cutting of Maryland from it, by charter from King Charles I to Sir George Calvert, afterwards Lord Baltimore, bearing date the 20th of June, 1632. The truth of it is, it begat much speculation in those days, how it came about that a good Protestant King should bestow so bountiful a grant upon a zealous Roman Catholic. But it is probable it was one fatal instance amongst many others of His Majesty's complaisance of the Queen. The proprietors of New Jersey, finding more trouble than profit in their new dominions, made over their right to several other persons, who obtained a fresh grant from his royal highness, dated March 14, 1682. Besides the hope of being safe from persecution in this retreat, the new proprietors inveigled many over by their tempting account of the country, that it was a place free from those three great scourges of mankind, priests, lawyers and physicians. Nor did they tell them a word of a lie, for the people were yet too poor to maintain these learned gentlemen, who, everywhere, love to be well paid for what they do; and, like the Jews, cannot breathe in a climate where nothing is to be gotten. The Jerseys continued under the government of these proprietors till the year 1702, when they made a formal surrender of the dominion to the Queen, reserving, however, the property of the soil to themselves. So soon as the bounds of New Jersey came to be distinctly laid off, it ap-

peared there was still a narrow slip of land, lying betwixt the colony and Maryland. Of this, William Penn, a man of worldly wisdom, and some eminence among the Quakers, got early notice, and, by the credit he had with the Duke of York, obtained a patent for it, dated March 14, 1660. It was a little surprising to some people how a Quaker should be so much in the good graces of a Popish prince, though, after all it may be pretty well accounted for. This ingenious person had not been bred a Quaker, but in his earlier days had been a man of pleasure about the town. He had a beautiful form and very taking address, which made him successful with the ladies, particularly with a mistress of the Duke of Monmouth. By this gentlewoman he had a daughter, who had beauty enough to raise her to be a duchess, and continued to be a toast full 30 years. But this armour had like to have brought our fine gentleman in danger of a duel, had he not discreetly sheltered himself under his peaceable persuasion. Besides his father having been a flag officer in the navy while the Duke of York was lord high admiral, might have recommended the son to his favor. This piece of secret history I thought proper to mention, to wipe off the suspicion of his having been Popishly inclined. But the French and Spaniards had, in the name of their respective monarchs, long ago taken possession of that part of the northern continent that now goes by the name of Carolina, but finding it produced neither gold nor silver, as they greedily expected, and meeting such return from the Indians as their own cruelty and treachery deserved, they totally abandoned it. In this deserted condition the country lay for the space of ninety years, till King Charles II find-

ing it a derelict, granted it away to the Earl of Clarendon and others by his royal charter, dated March 24, 1666. The boundary of that grant towards Virginia was a due west line from Luck Island (the same as Colleton Island) lying 36 degrees of north latitude, quite to the South Sea. But afterwards Sir William Berkeley, who was one of the grantees and that time Governor of Virginia, finding territory of 31 miles in breadth between the inhabited part of Virginia and the above mentioned boundary of Carolina, advised Lord Clarendon of it, and his lordship had interest enough with the King to obtain a second patent to include it, dated June 30, 1665.

"This last grant describes the bounds between Virginia and Carolina in these words: to run from the north end of Coratuck inlet due west to Weyanoke creek, lying within or about the degree of 36 and 30 minutes of northern latitude and from thence west in a direct line as far as the South Sea." Without question this boundary was well known at the time the charter was granted, but in the long course of years Weyanoke creek lost its name, so that it became a controversy where it lay. Some ancient persons in Virginia affirmed it was the same with Wiccocon, and others again in Carolina were as positive it was Nottoway river. In the meantime the people on the frontiers entered for land and took out patents by guess, either from the King or the lords proprietors, but the crown was like to be the loser by this uncertainty because the terms both of taking up and seating land were much easier in Carolina. The yearly rental taxes to the public were likewise there less burdensome, which laid Virginia under a plain disadvantage. This consideration put Virginia upon entering

into measures with North Carolina to terminate the dispute and settle a certain boundary between the colonies. All the difficulty was to find out which was truly Weyanoke creek. The difference was too considerable to be given up by either side, there being a territory of 15 miles betwixt the two streams in controversy. However, till that matter could be adjusted, it was agreed on both sides that no lands at all should be granted within the disputed bounds. Virginia observed this agreement punctually, but I am sorry I cannot say the same of North Carolina. The great officers of that province were loath to lose the fees accruing from the grants of land, and so private interest got the better of public spirit and I wish that there were places in the world where such politics were fashionable. All the steps that were taken afterwards in that affair will best appear by the report of the Virginia commissioners. It must be owned the report of those gentlemen was severe upon the then commissioners of North Carolina and particularly upon Mr. Moseley. I will not take it upon me to say with how much justice they said so many hard things, though it had been fairer play to have given the parties accused a copy of such representation, that they might have answered what they could for themselves. But since that was not done, I must beg leave to say this much in behalf of Mr. Moseley, that he was not much in the wrong to find fault with the quadrant produced by the surveyors of Virginia, because that instrument placed the mouth of Nottoway river in the latitude of 37 degrees, whereas by an accurate observation made since it is found that there is an error of nearly 30 minutes. The lieutenant Governor of Virginia at that

time, Col. Spotswood, searching into the bottom of this affair, made very equitable proposals to Mr. Eden, at that time Governor of North Carolina, in order to put an end to this controversy. These, being formed into preliminaries, were signed by both Governors and transmitted to England, where they had the honor to be ratified by his late majesty and assented to by the lords proprietors of Carolina. Accordingly an order was sent by the late king to Mr. Gooch, afterwards Lieutenant Governor of Virginia, to pursue those preliminaries exactly. In obedience thereunto, he was pleased to appoint three of the Council of that colony to be commissioners on the part of Virginia, who in conjunction with others to be named by the Governor of North Carolina, were to settle the boundary between the two governments upon the plan of the above mentioned articles."

In the appendix to Col. Byrd's journal is quoted the commission issued by Governor Richard Everard in obedience to the king's order. This commission runneth in part as follows: "Sir Richard Everard, Baronet, Governor, Captain General, Admiral and Commander-in-Chief of the said province, to Christopher Gale, Esq., chief justice; John Lovick, Esq., secretary; Edward Moseley, Esq., surveyor general, and William Little, Esq., attoreny general, greeting: Whereas many disputes and differences have formerly been between the inhabitants of this province and those of his majesty's colony of Virginia, concerning the boundaries and limits between the said two governments, which have been duly considered by Charles Eden, Esq., late Governor of this province, and Alexander Spotswood, Esq., late Governor of Virginia, they agreed to certain pro-



posals for determining the said controversy and humbly offered the same for his majesty's royal approbation and the consent of the true and absolute lords proprietors of Carolina." Governor Everard then directed them to join in making the survey. He gave this order at the council chamber in Edenton, February 21, 1727. The commissioners for Virginia were William Byrd, Richard Fitz-William, and William Dandridge. The surveyors for North Carolina were Edward Moseley and Samuel Swan, while Alexander Irvin and William Mayo were the surveyors for Virginia. The Rev. Peter Fountain was the chaplain for the entire party. The total expense of running the line was 1,000 pounds, or \$5,000 say, in our money, and this sum was discharged by a warrant out of his majesty's quit rents from the lands of Virginia.

What may be called the real history of the dividing line is in a shape of a diary, which begins February 27, 1728, and says: "The surveyors for Virginia were Mr. Mayo, who made the accurate map of Barbadoes, and Mr. Irvin, the mathematics professor of William and Mary College. And because a good number of men were to go upon this expedition a chaplain was appointed to attend them, and the rather because the people on the frontiers of North Carolina, who have no minister near them, might have an opportunity to get themselves and their children baptized. Sir Richard Everard, of North Carolina, appointed four members of the council of that province to take care of the interests of the lords proprietors. Of these, Mr. Moseley was to serve in a double capacity, both as commissioner and surveyor. For that reason there was but one other surveyor from thence, Mr. Swan. All the

persons being thus agreed upon, they settled the time of the meeting to be at Curatuck, March 5, 1728. It was just noon before we arrived at Coratuck inlet. We saw a small New England sloop riding in the sound. She had come in at the new inlet, as all other vessels have done since the opening of it. The trade hither is engrossed by the saints of New England, who carry off a great deal of tobacco without troubling themselves with paying that impertinent duty of a penny a pound. Curatuck inlet is now so shallow that the breakers fly over it with the horrible sound, and at the same time afford a very wild prospect. About 2 o'clock in the afternoon we were joined by two of the Carolina commissioners, attended by Mr. Swan, their surveyor. The other two were not quite so punctual, which was the more unlucky for us, because there could be no sport until they came. These gentlemen, it seems, had the Carolina commission in their keep, notwithstanding which they could not forbear paying too much regard to a proverb, fashionable in their country, not to make more haste than good speed. The commissioners from Carolina came better provided for the belly than for the business. They brought not above two men along with them that could put their hands to anything but the kettle and the frying-pan. These spent so much of their industry that way that they had as little spirit as inclination for work. On the 6th, at noon, having perfect observation, we found the latitude of Curatuck inlet to be 36 degrees and 31 minutes. About 3 in the afternoon the two lag commissioners arrived and after a few decent excuses for making us wait told us they were ready to enter upon business as soon as they pleased. Our first step was to produce our respective

powers and the commission from each Governor was distinctly read, and copies of them interchangeably delivered. It was observed by our Carolina friends that the latter part of the Virginia commission had something in it a little too lordly and positive. In answer to which we told them it was necessary to make it thus peremptory, lest the present commissioners might go upon as fruitless an errand as their predecessors. The former commissioners were tied down to act in exact conjunction with those of Carolina, and so could not advance one step farther or one jot faster than they were pleased to permit them. The memory of that disappointment therefore induced the government of Virginia to give fuller powers to the present commissioners, by authorizing them to go on with the work themselves, in case those of Carolina should prove unreasonable, and refuse to join with them in carrying the business to execution. And all this was done lest his majesty's gracious intention should be frustrated a second time."

The survey was begun under the greatest difficulties, the party wading through bogs from knee to hip deep. They found quagmire after quagmire. The people flocked to see them and what astonished the natives most was how this surveying party with all its hard work could be so light-hearted. "The Sabbath," said Col. Byrd, "gave some ease to the jaded people, who rested religiously from every work but that of cooking the kettle." The narrative goes on to say: "We observe very few corn-fields in our walks and those very small, which seemed the stranger to us because we could see no other tokens of husbandry or improvement, but we were given to understand people only made corn for themselves and

not for their stocks, which know very well how to get their own living. Both cattle and hogs ramble into the neighboring marshes and swamps, where they maintain themselves the whole winter long and are not fetched home until the spring. Thus these indolent wretches during one-half of the year lose the advantage of the milk of their cattle and many of the poor creatures perish in the marches by this ill-management. Some who pique themselves upon more industry than their neighbors will now and then, in compliment to their cattle, cut down a tree whose limbs are covered with the long hanging grey moss. The trouble would be too great to climb the tree in order to gather this moss, but the shortest way (which in this country is always counted the best) is to fell it, just like the lazy Indians, who do the same by such trees as bear fruit, and so make one harvest for all. The only business here is raising hogs which is managed with the least trouble and affords the diet they are most fond of. The truth of it is, the inhabitants of North Carolina devour so much swine's flesh that it fills them full of gross humors. For want of a constant supply of salt, they are commonly obliged to eat fresh pork, and that begets the highest taint of scurvy. Thus whenever a severe cold happens to constitutions thus vitiated it is apt to improve into the yaws, called there very justly the country distemper which no preparation of mercury will touch. First it seizes the throat, next the palate and lastly shows its spite to the poor nose, in which it is apt to in a small time, treacherously undermine the foundation. This calamity is so common and familiar here that it ceases to be a scandal and in the disputes that happen about beauty, the noses have in some companies having

much ado to carry it. Nay it is said that once, after three good pork years, a motion had like to have been made in the House of Burgesses that a man with a nose should be incapable of holding any place of profit in the province, which extraordinary motion could never have been intended without some hopes of a majority. Thus, considering the foul and pernicious effects of eating swine's flesh in a hot country, it was wisely forbidden and made an abomination to the Jews, who lived much in the same latitude with Carolina. We came upon a family of mulattoes that called themselves free, although by the shyness of the master of the house, who took care to keep least in sight, their freedom seemed a little doubtful. It is certain many slaves shelter themselves in this obscure part of the world, nor will any of their righteous neighbors discover them. On the contrary, they find their account in settling such fugitives on some out-of-the-way corner of their land, to raise stocks for a mean and inconsiderable share, well knowing their condition makes it necessary for them to submit to any terms. Nor were these worthy borderers content to shelter runaway slaves, but debtors and criminals having often met with like indulgence. But if the government of North Carolina has encouraged this un-neighborly policy in order to increase the population, it is no more than ancient Rome did before them, which was made a city of refuge for all debtors and fugitives, and from that wretched beginning grew up in time to be mistress of the greater part of the world. And, considering how fortune delights in bringing great things out of small, who knows but Carolina may, one time or other, come to be the seat of some other great empire?

"The line cut many plantations, leaving part in Virginia, part in Carolina, to the great inconvenience of the owners, who were therefore obliged to take out two patents and pay for a new survey in each government. We could not be tempted to lodge in houses; we chose rather to lie in the open field, for fear of growing too tender. A clear sky spangled with stars, was our canopy, which, being the last thing we saw before we fell asleep, gave us magnificent dreams. The truth of it is we took so much pleasure in that natural kind of lodging, that I think at the foot of the account mankind are great losers by the luxury of feather beds and warm apartments. The curiosity of beholding so new and withall so sweet a method of encamping, brought one of the Senators of North Carolina to make us a midnight visit. But he was so very clamorous in his commendations of it, that the sentinel not seeing his quality, either through his habit or behaviour, had like to have treated him roughly. After excusing the unreasonableness of his visit, and letting us know he was a Parliament man, he swore he was so taken with our lodging that he would set fire to his house as soon as he got home, and teach his wife and children to lie like us, in the open field. On the 13th, early in the morning, our chaplain repaired to us with the men we had left at Mr. Wilson's. We sent for them the evening before to relieve those who had the labor-oar from Curatuck inlet. But to our great surprise they petitioned not to be relieved, hoping to gain immortal reputation by being the first of mankind that ventured through the great Dismal swamp, but the rest being equally desirous of the same honor, it was but fair to decide their pretensions by lot. After fortune had de-



clared herself, those which she had excluded, offered money to the happy persons, to go in their stead. But Hercules would have as soon sold the glory of cleansing the Augean stables, which was pretty near the same sort of work.

"On the 13th before 9 o'clock in the morning, the provisions, bedding and other necessities, were made up into packs for the men to carry on their shoulders into the Dismal. They were victualled for eight days at full allowance, nobody doubting but that would be abundantly sufficient to carry them through that inhospitable place, nor indeed was it possible for the poor fellows to stagger under more. As it was their loads weighed from 60 to 70 pounds, in just proportion to the strength of those who were to bear them. It would have been unconscionable to have saddled them with burdens heavier than that, when they were to lug them through a filthy bog, which was hardly practicable with no burden at all. Besides this luggage at their backs they were obliged to measure the distance, mark the trees, and clear the way for the surveyors every step they went. It was really a pleasure to see with how much cheerfulness they undertook and with how much spirit they went through all this drudgery. For their greater safety the commissioners took care to furnish them with Peruvian bark, rhubarb, hipococanah, in case they might happen in that wet journey to be taken with fevers or fluxes. Although there was no need of example to inflame persons already so cheerful, yet to enter the people with the better grace, the author and two more of the commissioners accompanied them half a mile into the Dismal. The skirts of it were thinly planted with dwarf reeds and gall bushes, but when we got into the Dismal itself

we found the reews grew there much taller and closer, and to mend the matter were so interlaced with bamboo briars that there was no scuffling through them without the help of the pioneers. At the same time we found the ground moist and trembling under our feet like a quagmire, insomuch that it was an easy matter to run the head of a ten-foot pole up to the head of it, without exerting any uncommon strength to do it. Two of the men, whose burdens were the least cumbersome, had orders to march before with their tomahawks and clear the way, in order to make an opening for the surveyors. By their assistance we made a shift to push a line half a mile in three hours, and then reached a small piece of firm land, about 100 yards wide, standing up above the rest like an island. Here the people were glad to lay down their loads and take a little refreshments, while the happy man whose lot it was to carry the jug of rum, began already, like Aesop's bread-carrier, to find it grow a good deal lighter.

"In the meantime the three commissioners returned out of the Dismal the same way they went in, and having joined their brethren proceeded that night as far as Mr. Wilson's. This worthy person lives within sight of the Dismal, in the skirts whereof his stock ranges and maintain themselves all the winter, and yet he knew as little of it as he did of Terra Australia Incognita. He told a Canterbury Tale of a North Briton whose curiosity spurred him a long way into this great desert, as he called it, near twenty years ago, but he having no compass, nor seeing the sun for several days together wandered about until he was almost famished, but at last he bethought himself of a secret his countrymen make use of to

come out, being for the most part ap-pilot themselves a dark day. He took a fat louse out of his collar, and exposed it to the open day light on a piece of white paper, which he brought along with him for his journal. The poor insect, having no eyelids, turned himself about until he found the darkest part of the heavens, and so made the best of his way towards the north. By this direction he steered himself safe out and gave such a frightful account of the monsters he saw and the distresses he underwent that nobody since had been hardy enough to go upon the like dangerous discovery.

"The Quakers prevailed much in this part of the country, for want of ministers to pilot the people a decent way to heaven. The ill-reputation of tobacco planted in the lower Virginia parishes makes the clergy unwilling to accept of them, unless it be such whose abilities are as mean as their pay. It is a wonder no Popish missionaries are sent from Maryland to labor in this neglected vineyard, who we know have zeal enough to traverse sea and land on the meritorious errand of making converts. Nor is it less strange that some wolf in sheep's clothing arrives not from New England to lead astray a flock that has no shepherd. People uninstructed in any religion are ready to embrace the first that offers. It is natural for helpless man to adore his Maker in some form or other, and were there any exceptions to this rule I should suspect it to be among the Hot-tentots of the Cape of Good Hope and of North Carolina. Since the surveyors had entered the Dismal they had laid eyes on no living creature. Not so much as a frog can endure so agonizing a situation. It had one beauty however, that delighted the eye, though at the expense of all the other senses. The

moisture of the soil makes every plant an evergreen, but at the same time the foul damps ascend without ceasing, corrupt the air and render it unfit for respiration. Not even a turkey-buzzard will venture to fly over it. In these sad circumstances the kindest thing we could do for our suffering friends was to give them a place in Litany. Our chaplain, for his part, did his office and rubbed us up with a seasonable sermon. This was quite a new thing to our brethren of North Carolina, who live in a climate where no clergymen can breathe any more than spiders in Ireland. For want of men in holy orders, both the members of the council and justices of the peace are empowered by the laws of that country to marry all those who will not take one another's word, but for the ceremony of christening their children they trust that to chance. If a parson comes in their way will crave a cast of 12 his office, as they call it, else they are content their offspring should remain as arrant pagans as themselves. They account it among their greatest advantages that they are not priest-ridden, not remembering that the clergy is rarely guilty of bestriding such as have the misfortune to be poor. One thing may be said for the inhabitants of North Carolina, they that are not troubled with any religious fumes, and have the least superstitions of any people living. They do not know Sunday from any other day, any more than Robinson Crusoe did, which would give them a great advantage were they given to be industrious. But they keep so many Sabbaths every week that their disregard of the seventh day has no manner of cruelty in it either to servants or cattle. Whole flocks of women and children flew hither to stare at us. Some borderers, too, had a great mind to know where the line would

prehensive lest their lands should be taken into Virginia. In that case they must have submitted to some sort of order and government, whereas in North Carolina every one does what seems best in his own eyes. There were some good women that brought their children to be baptized, but brought no capons along with them to make the solemnity cheerful. In the meantime it was strange that none came to be married in such a multitude, if it had only been for the novelty of having their hands joined by one in holy orders. Yet so it was that though our chaplain christened above a hundred he did not marry so much as one couple during the entire expedition.

"We began to be very greatly alarmed about our people who were in the Dismal, the 22nd being the 9th day since they entered into that inhospitable swamp, and consequently we had reason to believe their provisions were quite spent. In the midst of our concern we were most agreeably surprised with the news that they were all safe. The blessed tidings were brought us by Mr. Swan, the Carolina surveyor, who came to us in a very tattered condition. Our surveyors told us they had measured ten miles in the Dismal and computed the distance they had since marched to amount to about five more, so they made the whole breadth to be 15 miles. It may be computed at a medium to be about 30 miles long and ten miles broad, though where the line crossed it completed 15 miles wide. The exhalations that continually rise from this vast body of mire and nastiness infect the air for many miles around and render it very unwholesome for the bordering inhabitants. It makes them liable to agues, pleurises and many other distempers that kill abundance of people and make the rest look no better than ghosts. It would require a

great sum of money to drain it, but the public treasury could not be better bestowed than to preserve the lives of his majesty's leige people and at the same time render so great a tract of swamp very profitable, besides the advantage of making a channel to transport by water carriage goods from Albemarle sound to Nansemond sound and Elizabeth river in Virginia. On the 24th, being Sunday, we had a numerous congregation which flocked to us from all the adjacent country. The news that our surveyors were come out of the Dismal increased the number very much, because it would give them an opportunity of guessing at least whereabouts the line would cut, whereby they might form some judgment whether they belonged to Virginia or Carolina. Those who had taken up land within the disputed bounds were in great pain lest it would be found to lie in Virginia, because this being done contrary to an express order of that government, the patentees had great reason to fear they should in that case have lost their land. But their apprehensions were now at an end when they understood that all the territory which had been controverted was like to be left in Carolina. It approaches nearer to the description of lubber land than any other, by the great felicity of the climate, the easiness of raising provisions and the slothfulness of the people. The men, for their part, just like the Indians, impose all the work upon the poor women. They make their wives rise out of their beds early in the morning, at the same time that they lie and snore till the sun has risen one-third of its course and dispersed all the unwholesome damps. Then, after stretching and yawning for half an hour, they light their pipes and under the protection of to secure them, so that the building is



a cloud of smoke venture out into the open air, though if it happens to be never so cold, they quickly return shivering into the chimney corners. When the weather is mild they stand leaning with both their arms upon the corn-field fence and gravely consider whether they had best go and take a small heat at the hoe, but generally find reasons to put it off to another time. Thus they loiter away their lives, like Solomon's sluggard, with their arms crossed, and at the winding up of the year scarcely have enough bread to eat. To speak the truth it is a thorough aversion to labor that makes people file off to North Carolina, where plenty and a warm climate confirm them in their disposition to laziness for their whole lives. Since we were like to be confined in this place till the people returned out of the Dismal, it was agreed that our chaplain might safely take a turn to Edenton, to preach the Gospel to the infidels there and christen their children. He was accompanied thither by Mr. Little, one of the Carolina commissioners, who to show his regard to the Church, offered to treat him on the road with a fricassee of rum. They fried half a dozen rashers of very fat bacon in a pint of rum, both of which being dished up together, served the company at once both for meat and drink. Most of the rum they get in this country comes from New England and is so bad and unwholesome that it is not improperly called 'Kill Devil.' Their molasses comes from the same country and has the name of 'long sugar' in Carolina. I suppose from the ropiness of it, and serves all the purposes of sugar, both in their eating and drinking. Very few in this country have the industry to plant orchards, which in a dearth of rum might supply them with much bet-

ter liquor. The truth is there is one inconvenience that easily discourages lazy people from making this improvement. Very often in autumn when the apples begin to ripen they are visited with numerous flights of paroquets, that bite all the fruit to pieces in a moment for the sake of the kernals. The havoc they make is sometimes so great that whole orchards are laid waste in spite of all the noises that can be made or mawkins that can be dressed up to frighten them away. These ravenous birds visit North Carolina only during the warm season and so soon as the cold begins to come on retire back towards the sun. They rarely venture so far north as Virginia except in a very hot summer, when they visit the most southern parts of it. They are very beautiful, but like some other pretty creatures are apt to be loud and mischievous. Betwixt this and Edenton there are many whortleberry slashes, which afford a convenient harbor for wolves and foxes. The first of these wild beasts is not so large and fierce as they are in other countries more northerly. They will not attack a man in the keenest hunger, but will run away from him as from an animal more mischievous than themselves. The foxes are much bolder, and will sometimes not only make a stand but likewise assault any one that would balk them of their prey. The inhabitants hereabouts take the trouble to dig abundance of wolf pits, so deep and perpendicular that when a wolf is once trapped into them, he can no more scramble out of them than a husband who has taken the leap can scramble out of matrimony. Most of the houses in this part of the country are log houses, covered with pine and cypress shingles, three feet long and one broad. They are hung upon laths with

pegs and their doors too turn upon wooden hinges and have wooden locks finished without nails or other iron work. At Edenton there may be forty of fifty houses, most of them small and built without expense. A citizen here is counted extravagant if he has ambition enough to aspire to a brick chimney. Justice herself is but indifferently lodged, the court houses having much the air of a common tobacco house. I believe this is the only metropolis in the Christian or Mohammedan world where there is neither church, chapel, mosque, synagogue, or any other place of public worship of any sect or religion whatsoever. What little devotion there may happen to be is much more private than their vices. The people seem easy without a minister, as long as they are exempted from paying him. Sometimes the Society for Propagating the Gospel has had the charity to send over missionaries to this country, but unfortunately the priest has been too lewd for the people, or, which oftener happens, they too lewd for the priest. For these reasons these reverend gentlemen have always left their flocks as arrant heathens as they found them. This much, however, may be said of the inhabitants of Edenton, that not a soul has the least taint of hypocrisy or superstition, acting very frankly and above board in all their excesses. Provisions here are extremely good, so that people may live plentifully at a trifling expense. Nothing is dear but law, physic and strong drink, which are all bad in their kind, and the last they get with so much difficulty that they are never guilty of the sin of suffering it to sour upon their hands. They are rarely guilty of flattering for making any court to their Governors, but treat them with all the excesses of freedom

and familiarity. They are of opinion their rulers would be apt to grow insolent if they grew rich and for that reason take care to keep them poorer and more dependent if possible than the saints in New England used to do their Governors. They have very little corn, so they are forced to carry on their home traffic with paper money. This is the only cash that will tarry in the country, and for that reason the discount goes on increasing between that and real money and will do so to the end of the chapter. Our time passed heavily on our hands, when we were quite eloyed with the Carolina felicity of having nothing to do. It is really more insupportable than the greatest fatigue and made us even envy the drudgery of our friends in the Dismal. In making our survey care was taken to erect a post in every road that our lines ran through, with 'Virginia' carved on the north side of it and North Carolina' carved on the south. By permission of the Carolina commissioners Mr. Swan was allowed to go home as soon as the survey of the Dismal was finished. He met with this indulgence for a reason that might very well have excused his coming at all, namely that he was lately married. What remained of the drudgery for this season was left to Mr. Moseley, who had hitherto acted only in the capacity of a commissioner. They offered to employ Mr. Joseph Mayo as their surveyor in Mr. Swan's stead, but he thought it not proper to accept of it, because he had hitherto acted as a volunteer in behalf of Virginia, and did not care to change sides though it might have been to his advantage. We christened two of the children of our landlord, Mr. Parker, which might have remained infidels all their lives had we not carried Christianity home to his own door. The truth

of it is our neighbors of North Carolina are not so zealous as to go much out of their way to procure this benefit for their children. Otherwise being so near Virginia they might without exceeding much trouble make a journey to the next clergyman upon so good an errand, and, indeed, should the neighboring ministers once in two or three years vouchsafe to take a turn among these Gentiles, to baptize them and their children, it would look a little apostolical and they might hope to be requitted for it hereafter, if that be not thought too long to tarry for their reward. Wherever we passed we constantly found the borderers laid it to heart if their land was taken into Virginia. They chose much rather to belong to Carolina, where they paid no tribute either to God or to Caesar. Another reason was that the government there is so loose and the laws are so feebly executed that, like those in the neighborhood of Sidon formerly, every one does just what seems good in his own eyes. Besides there might have been some danger in venturing to be rigorous, for fear of undergoing the fate of an honest justice in Curatuck precinct. This bold magistrate, taking it upon him to order a fellow to the stocks for being disorderly in his drink, was for his intemperate zeal, carried thither himself and narrowly escaped being whipped by the rabble into the bargain. We found the mouth of Nottoway river to lie no more than half a minute farther to the northward than Mr. Lawson had formerly done.

Col. Byrd says that on the 2nd of April, three of the Meherrin Indians paid the commissioners and surveyors a visit. He adds: "They told us the small remains of their nation had deserted their ancient town, situated near the mouth of the Meherrin river, for

fear of the Catawbias, who had killed fourteen of their people the year before, and the few that survived that calamity had taken refuge amongst the English on the east side of Chowan river. If the complaint of these Indians was true, they are hardly used by our Carolina friends, but they are the least to be pitied because they have ever been reputed most false and treacherous to the English of all the Indians in the neighborhood. Because the spring was now pretty forward and the rattlesnakes began to crawl out of their winter quarters and might prove dangerous both to the men and to their horses, it was determined on the 5th of April to proceed no farther with the line until the fall. Besides the uncommon fatigue the people had undergone for near six weeks together, and the inclination they all had to visit their respective families, made a recess highly reasonable. The surveyors were employed a greater part of the day in forming a correct and elegant map of the line from Currutuck Inlet to the place where they left off. They found the whole distance they had run was 73 miles, of the map they made two fair copies, which, agreeing exactly, were subscribed by the commissioners of both colonies, and one of them was delivered to those on the part of Virginia and the other to those on the part of North Carolina. On the 6th we thus finished our spring campaign and having taken leave of our Carolina friends, we agreed to meet them on the 10th of September following, at the same place. On the following day we dispatched a runner to the town of the Nottoway Indians to let them know we intended them a visit that evening. Accordingly in the afternoon we marched in good order to the town, where the female scouts stationed on an eminence for



that purpose had no sooner spied us, but that they gave notice of our approach to their fellow-citizens by continual whoops and cries, which could not have been possibly more dismal at the sight of their most implicable enemies. This signal assembled all their great men, who received us in a body and conducted us to the fort. This fort was a square piece of ground enclosed with substantial puncheons, or strong palisades, about ten feet high, and leaning a little outwards to make a scalade more difficult. Each side of the square might be about a hundred yards long, with loop-holes at proper distances, through which they may fire upon the enemy. Within this inclosure we found bark cabins sufficient to lodge all their people, in case young men had pained themselves in a war. These cabins are no other but close harbours made of saplings, arched at the top and covered so well with bark as to be proof against all weather. The fire is made in the middle, according to the Hiberian fashion, the smoke whereof finds no other vent than at the door, and so keeps the whole family warm at the expense of their eyes and complexion. The Indians have no standing furniture in their cabins, but hurdles to repose their persons upon, which they cover with mats and deer skins. We were conducted to the best apartments in the fort, which just before had been made ready for our reception, and adorned with new mats that were very sweet and clean. The young men had painted themselves in a hideous manner, not so much for ornament as terror. In that frightful equipage they entertained us with songs and war dances, wherein they endeavored to look as formidable as possible. The instrument they danced to was an Indian drum, that is a large board with

a skin braced tight over the mouth of it. The dancers all sang to the music keeping exact time with their feet while their heads and arms were screwed into a thousand menacing postures. Upon this occasion the ladies had arrayed themselves in all their finery. They were wrapped in their red and blue match coats, thrown so negligently about them that their mahogany skins appeared in several parts. Their hair was braided with white and blue peaks and hung gracefully in a large roll upon their shoulders. This peak consists of small cylinders cut out of a conch shell, drilled through and strung like beads. It serves them both for money and jewels, the blue being of much greater value than the white, for the same reason that Ethiopian mistresses in France are dearer than French, because they are more scarce. The women wear necklaces and bracelets of these precious materials when they have a mind to appear lovely. Though their complexions be a little sad-colored, yet their shapes are very straight and well-proportioned. Their faces are seldom handsome, yet they have an air of innocence and bashfulness, that with a little less dirt, would not fail to make them desirable. Such charms might have had their full effect upon men who had been so long deprived of female conversation, but that the whole winter soil was so crusted on the skin of those dark angels that it required a very strong appetite to approach them. The bear's oil with which they anoint their persons all over makes their skins soft and at the same time protects them from every species of vermin that used to be troublesome to other uncleanly people. It is by no means a loss of reputation among the Indians for damsels that are single to have intrigues with the

men; on the contrary they account it an argument of superior merit to be liked by a great number of gallants. However, like the ladies in that game, they are a little mercenary in their amours, and seldom bestow their favors out of stark love and kindness. But after these women have once appropriated their charms by marriage they are henceforth faithful to their vows and will hardly ever be tempted by an agreeable gallant or be provoked by a brutal or even careless husband to go astray. The little work that is done among the Indians is done by the poor women, while the men are quite idle or employed at most in the gentlemanly diversions of hunting and fishing. In this, as well as in their wars, they use nothing but firearms, which they purchase of the English for skins. Bows and arrows are grown into disuse, except only amongst their boys, nor is it ill policy, but on the contrary, very prudent, to furnish the Indians with firearms, because it makes them depend entirely on the English not only for their trade, but even for their subsistence. Besides they were really able to do more mischief while they made use of arrows, of which they would silently let fly several in a minute, with wonderful dexterity, whereas now they hardly ever discharge their firelocks more than once, which they insidiously do from behind a tree and then retire as nimbly as the Dutch horse used to do now and then formerly in Flanders. We cheered their hearts with what rum we had left, which they love better than they do their wives and children. Though these Indians dwell close upon the English and see in what plenty a little industry enables them to live, yet they choose to continue in their stupid idleness and to suffer all

the inconveniences of dirt, cold and want, rather than to disturb their heads with care or to defile their hands with labor. The whole number of people belonging to the Nottoway town, if you include women and children, amount to about 200. These are only Indians of any consequence now remaining within the limits of Virginia. The rest are either removed or dwindled to a very inconsiderable number, either by destroying one another, or else by the small-pox or other diseases, though nothing has been so unfavorable to them as their ungovernable passion for rum, with which, I am sorry to say, they have been put too liberally supplied by the English that live near them. Many children of our neighboring Indians have been brought up in the college of William and Mary. They have been taught to read and write and have been carefully instructed in the principles of the Christian religion till they came to be men. Yet, after they returned home, instead of civilizing and converting the rest, they immediately relapsed into infidelity and barbarism themselves. Some of them, too, have made the worst use of the knowledge they acquired among the English, by employing it against their benefactors. Besides, as they unhappily forget all the good that they learn and remember all the ill, they are apt to be more vicious and disorderly than the rest of their countrymen. I ought not to quit this subject without doing justice to the great prudence of Col. Spotswood in this affair. That gentleman was Lieutenant Governor of Virginia when Carolina was engaged in her bloody war with the Indians. At that critical time it was thought expedient to keep a watchful eye upon our tributary savages, who we knew,

had nothing to keep them to their duty but their fears. Then it was that he demanded of each nation a competent number of their great men's children to be sent to the college, where they served as so many hostages for the good behavior of the rest and at the same time were themselves principled in the Christian religion. He also placed a school-master among the Saponi Indians to instruct their children. I must be of opinion that there is but one way of converting these poor infidels and reclaiming them from barbarity, and that is charitably to intermarry with them. Had the English done this at first settlement of the colony this at first settlement of the been worn out at this day with their dark complexions and the country had swarmed with people more than it does with insects. It was certainly an unreasonable nicety that prevented their entering into so good-natured an alliance. All nations of men have the same natural dignity and we know that very bright talents may be lodged in a very dark skin, the principal difference between one people and another proceeding only from the different opportunities of improvement. The Indians by no means want understanding and are in their figures tall and well-proportioned. Even their copper-colored complexion would admit of success. Indeed it was given in larger blanching, if not in the first, at the farthest in the second generation. I may safely venture to say the Indian women would have made altogether as honest wives for the first planters as the damsels they used to purchase from aboard the ships. It is strange, therefore, that any good Christian should have refused a wholesome, straight bed-fellow, when he might have so fair

a portion with her as the merit of saving her soul."

The agreement with the commissioners of Carolina was to meet again on the 10th of September, but when that came it was thought a little too soon to resume work on account of the snakes, so it was agreed to put it off to the 20th of said month, of which due notice was sent to the Carolina commissioners. The actual work was resumed on the 21st, and on the next day, which was Sunday, Col. Byrd dryly says: "When the sermon was over our chaplain did his part towards making eleven of them Christians. Several of our men had intermittent fevers, but were soon restored to their health again by proper remedies. Our chief medicine was dog-wood bark, which we used instead of that of Peru, with good quantities, but then to make the patients amends they swallowed much fewer doses. Our hunters brought us four wild turkeys, which at that season began to be fat and very delicious, especially the hens. These birds seem to be of the bustard kind and fly heavily. Some of them are exceedingly large and weigh upwards of 40 pounds; nay, some bold historians venture to say upwards of 50 pounds. They run very fast, stretching forth their wings all the time like the ostrich, by way of sail to quicken their speed. Their spurs are so sharp and strong that the Indians used formerly to point their arrows with them, though now they point them with a sharp white stone. I found some plants of that kind of rattlesnake root called star-grass. The leaves shoot our circulars and grow horizontally near the ground. The root is in shape not unlike the rattle of that serpent and is a strong antidote against the bite of it. It is very bitter and where



it meets with any poison, works by violent sweats, but where it meets with none, has no sensible operation but that of putting the spirits in a great hurry, and so of promoting perspiration. The rattlesnake has a strong antipathy to this plant, insomuch that if you smear your hands with the juice of it you may handle it safely. This much I can say from my own experience, that once in July, when these snakes are in their greatest vigor, I besmeared a dog's nose with the powder of this root and made him trample on a large snake several times, which, however, was so far from biting him that it perfectly sickened at the dog's approach and turned his head from him with the utmost aversion.

"In the stony grounds we rode over we found a great quantity of the true ipococanna, (Col. Byrd must have meant ipecac) which in this part of the world is called Indian physic. This has several stalks growing up from the same root about a foot high, bearing a leaf resembling that of a strawberry. It is not so strong as that of Brazil, but has the same happy effects if taken in a somewhat larger dose. There is abundance of it in the upper part of the country, where it delights most in a stony soil intermixed with black mould. On the 28th our surveyors crossed the Roanoke river, which rolls down a crystal stream of very sweet water, insomuch that when there comes to be a great monarch in this part of the world he will cause all the water for his own table to be brought from Roanoke, as the great kings of Persia did theirs from the Nile and Choaspis, because the waters of those rivers were light and not apt to corrupt. We crossed at a ford called by the Indians *Moni-Seep*, which signi-

fies shallow water. This is the ford where the Indian traders used to cross with their horses on their way to the Catawba nation. On the 29th a messenger we had sent returned with five Saponi Indians. We agreed with one of them to hunt for us. His hunting name was Bear Skin, and either by his skill or good luck he supplied us plentifully all the way with meat, seldom discharging his piece in vain. The woods in the uplands we found had been destroyed either by fire or caterpillars, which is often the case in the uplands, and such places are called poison fields. We here killed our first bear. He was very poor, which was a disappointment to our woodsmen, who commonly prefer the flesh of bears to every other kind of venison. This flesh is regarded by the Indians as the greatest promoter of vitality and of child-bearing and we proved it to be such. Some of our people shot a great wild cat, which is as big again as any household cat, and much the fiercest inhabitants of the woods. Whenever it is disabled it will tear its own flesh for madness. On the third of October, as we marched along we saw many buffalo tracks, but we saw not the animals, which either smelt us out, having that sense very quick, or else were alarmed at the noise of our marching. At the sight of a man they will snort and grunt, cock up their ridiculous short tails and tear up the ground with a sort of timorous fury. They hardly ever range alone, but herd together, and delight much in canes and reeds. On the 5th of October, to our very great surprise, the commissioners of Carolina acquainted us with their resolution to return home. This declaration of theirs seemed the more abrupt because they had not been so kind as to prepare us

by the least hint of their intentions to desert us. We, therefore, let them understand they appeared to us to abandon the business they came about with too much precipitation, this being but the 15th day since we came out the last time. But although we were to be so unhappy as to lose the assistance of their great abilities, yet we who were concerned for Virginia determined by the grace of God not to do our work by halves, but all deserted as we were like to be, should think it our duty to push the line quite to the mountains, and if their government should refuse to be bound by so much of the line as was run without their commission, yet at least it would bind Virginia and stand as a direction how far his majesty's lands extend to the southward. On the 6th, being Sunday, we lay still on the bank of Hico river, and had only prayers, our chaplain not having spirits enough to preach. The gentlemen of Carolina assisted not at our public devotion because they were taken up all the morning in making a formidable protest against our proceeding with the line without them. When the divine service was over the surveyors set about making the plots of so much of the line as we had run this last campaign. Our pious friends of Carolina assisted in this work with some seeming scruples, pretending it was a violation of the Sabbath, which we were the more surprised at, because it happened to be the first qualm of conscience they had ever been troubled with during the whole journey. They made no bones of staying from prayers to hammer out an unnecessary protest, though divine service was no sooner over than an unusual fit of godliness made them fancy that finishing the plots, which was now a

matter of necessity, was a profanation of the day. However, the expediency of losing no time for us who thought it our duty to finish what we had undertaken, made such labor pardonable. Mr. Fitz-William, one of the Virginia commissioners, declared it his opinion, that by his majesty's order they could not proceed further on the line but in conjunction with the commissioners of Carolina, for which reason he intended to retire the next morning with those gentlemen. This looked a little odd in our brother commissioner, though in justice to him, as well as to our Carolina friends, they stuck by us as long as our good liquor lasted and were so kind to us as to drink our good journey to the mountains in the last bottle we had left. On the 7th those of Carolina delivered their protest which was by this time licked into form and signed by them all. After having adjusted all our affairs to the Carolina commissioners and kindly supplied them with bread, to carry them back, which they hardly deserved at our hands, we took leave both of them and of our colleague, Mr. Fitz-William.

"On the 13th, this being Sunday, we rested from our fatigue and had leisure to reflect on the signal mercies of Providence. Our hunters brought in three brace of wild turkies and told us they could see the mountains distinctly from every eminence. We examined our friend Bear Skin concerning the religion of his country, and he explained it to us without any of the reserve to which the nation is subject. He told us he believed there was one Supreme God, who had several subaltern deities under Him, and that this master god made the world a long time ago. Then he told the moon, the sun and stars

their business, in the beginning, which they, with good looking after, have faithfully performed ever since. That the same power which made all things at first has taken care to keep them in the same method and motion ever since. He believed that God had formed many worlds before he formed this, but that those worlds either grew old and ruinous, or were destroyed for the dishonesty of the inhabitants. That God is ever just and good, ever pleased with those men who possess those good qualities. That he takes good people into his protection, makes them rich, fills their bellies plentifully, preserves them from sickness and from being surprised or overcome by their enemies. But all such as tell lies and cheat those that have dealings with them, he never fails to punish with sickness, poverty and hunger, and after all that, suffers them to be knocked on the head and scalped by those that fight against them. He believed that after death both good and bad people are conducted by a strong guard into a great road, in which departed souls travel together for some time, till at a certain distance this road forks into two paths, the one extremely level and the other stony and mountainous. Here the good are parted from the bad by a flash of lightning, the first being hurried away to the right, the others to the left. The right hand road leads to a charming warm country, where the spring is everlasting and every month is May, and as the year is always in its youth, so are its people, and particularly the women are bright as stars and never scold. That in this happy climate there are deer, turkeys, elk, and buffaloes innumerable, perpetually fat and gentle, while the trees are loaded with delicious fruit, quite

throughout the four seasons. That the soil brings forth corn spontaneously, without the curse of labor, and so very wholesome that none who have the happiness of eating it ever grow sick or old or die, near the entrance into this blessed land sits a venerable old man on a mat richly woven, who examines strictly all that are brought before him, and if they behave well, the guards are ordered to open the crystal gate and let them enter into the land of delight. The left path is very rugged and uneven, leading to a dark and barren country where it is always winter. The ground is the whole year round covered with snow, and nothing to be seen upon the trees but icicles. All the people are hungry, yet have not a morsel of anything to eat, except a bitter kind of potato that gives them the dry gripes, and fills their whole body with loathsome ulcers, that stink and are insupportably painful. Here all the women are old and ugly, having claws like a panther's, with which they fly upon the men that fight their passion. For it seems these haggard old furies are intolerably fond and expect a great deal of cherishing. They talk much and exceedingly shrill, giving exquisite pain to the drum of the ear, which in that place of torment is so tender that every sharp note wounds it to the quick. At the end of this path sits a dreadful old woman on a toadstool, whose head is covered with rattlesnakes instead of tresses, with glaring white eyes that strike terror unspeakable into all that behold her. This hag pronounces sentence of woe upon all the miserable wretches that hold up their hands at her burial. After this they are delivered over to huge turkey-buzzards, like harpies, that fly away with them to the place above



mentioned. Here, after they have been tormented a certain number of years, according to their several degrees of guilt, they are driven back again into the world to try again to mend their manners if they will, and merit a place next time in the regions of bliss. This was the substance of Bear Skin's religion, and was as much to the purpose as could be expected from a mere state of nature, without one glimpse of revelation or philosophy; it contained, however, the three great articles of natural religion; the belief in a God, the moral distinction betwixt good and evil, and the expectation of rewards and punishments in another world. Indeed the Indian notion of future happiness is a little gross and sensual like Mahomet's paradise. But how can it be otherwise in a people that are contented with nature as they find her, and have no other lights than what they receive from purblind tradition?

"The Indians can subsist several days upon a little rockahominy, which is parched Indian corn reduced to powder. This they moisten in the hollow of their hands with a little water, and is hardly credible how small a quantity of it will support them. It is true they grow a little lank upon it, but to make themselves feel well they gird up their loins very tight with a belt taking up a hole every day. With this simple substance they are able to travel very long journeys, but then to make themselves amends, when they do meet with good cheer they eat without ceasing, till they have ravened themselves into another famine.

The Indians had some strange notions about game, for Col. Byrd says: "Our Indian was very superstitious about the matter of our men boiling

venison and turkeys together, these with the addition of a little rice or French barley making excellent soup, and what happens rarely in other good things it never cloy, no more than an engaging wife would do, by being a constant dish. Our Indian told us with a face full of concern that if we continued to boil venison and turkey together we should for the future kill nothing, because the spirit that presided over the woods would drive all the game out of our sight. We were entertained at night by the yells of the whole family of wolves. These beasts of prey kept pretty much upon our track being tempted by the garbage of the creatures we killed every day, for which we were serenaded almost every night. This beast is not so untamable as the panther, but the Indians know how to gentle their whelps and use them about their cabins instead of dogs. On the 11th we came upon the River Dan a second time. Hereabout, from one of the highest hills, we made the first discovery of the mountains, on the northwest of our course. They seemed to lie off at a vast distance and looked like ranges of blue clouds rising one above another. We made good cheer upon a very fat buck. The Indian likewise shot a wild turkey, but confessed he would not bring it to us, lest we should continue to provoke the guardian of the forest by coking the beasts of the field and the birds of the air together in one vessel. The instance of Indian superstition I confess is countenanced in some measure by the Levitical law, which forbade the mixing things of a different nature together in the same field, or in the same garment, and why not then in the same kettle? But after all if the jumbling of things together be

a sin the good people of England would have a great deal to answer for in beating up so many different ingredients into a pudding. The Indian killed a very fat doe and came across a bear which had been killed and was half devoured by a panther. The last of these brutes reigns absolute monarch of the woods, and in the keenness of his hunger will venture to attack a bear, although then it is ever by surprise. Their play is to take the poor bears napping, they being very drowsy animals, and though they be exceedingly strong, yet their strength is heavy, while the panthers are too nimble and cunning to trust themselves within their hug. In South Carolina they call this beast a tiger, though improperly, and so they do in some parts of the Spanish West Indies. Some of their authors, a little more properly, complete it with the name of a leopard. But none of these are the growth of America, that we know of. On the 17th we crossed the Dan, which now began to run away more southerly, we being well assured by the Indians that it runs through the mountains. The atmosphere was smoky all around us, due to the firing of the woods by the Indians, for we were now near the route the Northern savages take when they go out to war against the Catawbas and other Southern Indians. The Northern Indians have an implacable hatred to those of the South. Their wars are everlasting, without any peace, enmity being the only inheritance among them that descends from father to son, and either party will march a thousand miles to take revenge upon such hereditary enemies. Some Indian, remarkable for his bravery, and a war captain declares his intention of visiting some Southern nation, and here-

upon as many of the young fellows as have a strong thirst for blood or glory, place themselves under his command. With these volunteers he goes from one confederate town to another, listing all the rabble he can, till he gathered together a competent number for mischief. Their arms are a gun and a tomahawk and all the provisions they carry from home is a pouch of rock-ahominy. Thus they march towards the enemy's country, not in a body or by a certain path, but straggling along in small numbers for the greater convenience of hunting and passing along undiscovered. If they are able to find the camp of any Southern Indians, they squat down in some thicket and keep themselves hushed and snug until it is dark, then, creeping up softly, they approach near enough to observe all the motions of the enemy and about 2 o'clock in the morning, when they conceive them to be in a profound sleep, for they never keep watch and ward, pour in a volley upon them, each singling out his man. The moment they have discharged their pieces, they rush in with the tomahawks and make sure work of all that are disabled. Sometimes when they find the enemy asleep around their little fire they first pelt them with little stones to wake them and when they get up fire in upon them, being in that posture a better mark than when prostrate on the ground. Those that are killed of the enemy or disabled they scalp. The prisoners they happen to take alive they put to all the tortures that ingenious malice and cruelty can invent, and they never fail to treat those with greatest inhumanity that have distinguished themselves most by their bravery, and if he be a war captain they do him the honor to roast him alive and distribute

a collop to all that had a share in stealing the victory. They are very cunning in finding out new ways to torment their unhappy captives, though like those in hell their usual method is by fire. Sometimes they barbecue them over live coals, taking them off now and then to prolong their misery; at other times they will stick sharp pieces of lightwood in the flesh to the very bone, and when they take a stout fellow that they believe able to endure a great deal they will tear all the flesh off his bones with red hot pinchers: If such cruelties happen to be executed in their towns they employ their children in tormenting the prisoners, in order to extinguish in them betime all sentiments of humanity. In the meantime, while these poor wretches are under all the anguish of this inhuman treatment, they disdain so much as a groan, sigh or to show the least sign of dismay or concern, but make it a point of honor all the time to soften their features and look as pleased as if they were actually enjoying some delight, and if they never sang before in their lives they will be sure to be delodious on this sad and dismal occasion. So prodigious a degree of passive valor in the Indians is the more to be wondered at because in all articles of danger they are apt to behave like cowards. And what is still more surprising, the very women discover on such occasions as great fortitude and contempt both of pain and death as the gallantest of their men do.

On the 25th, the air clearing up, we were again agreeably surprised with a full prospect of the mountains, which discovered themselves both to the north and south of us on either side, not distant above ten miles. We could now see those to the north rise in four distinct ledges, one above another, but

those to the south formed only a single ledge, and that broken and interrupted in many places. The next day we found our way grow still more mountainous, and we came to a rivulet that ran with a swift current toward the south. This we fancied to be another branch of the Irvin river, though some of the men who have been Indian traders judged it rather to be the head of Deep river, that discharges its stream into that of Pee Dee, but this seemed a wild conjecture. The bread began to grow scanty and the winter seemed to advance upon us. We had reason to apprehend being intercepted by deep snows, and the swelling of many waters between us and home, obliging us to winter in those desolate woods. These considerations determined us to stop here and push our adventures no farther. The last tree we marked was a red oak on the bank of the river. We found the whole distance from Coratuck Inlet to the rivulet where we left off to be in a straight line 241 miles and from the place where the Carolina commissioners deserted us 72 miles. One of the men picked up a pair of elks' horns and discovered the track of the elk that had shed them. The elk is fully as big as a horse and of the deer kind. Their swiftest speed is a large trot and in that motion they turn their horns back upon their necks and cock their noses aloft in the air, nature having taught them this attitude to save their antlers from being entangled in the thickets, which they always retire to. We all agreed to wear in our hats the maosti, which is in Indian the beard of a wild turkey-cock, and on our breasts the figure of that fowl with its wings extended and holding in its claws a scroll with this motto: 'Vice coturnicum,' meaning that we had all been supported by them in the wilderness in



the room of quails. It is not improbable that a few miles farther the course of our line might carry us to the most northerly towns of the Cherokees. It was a great pity that the want of bread and the weakness of our horses hindered us from making the discovery. Our traders have now to travel about 500 miles to take goods to the Cherokees. The discovery of a shorter way would certainly prove an unspeakable advantage to this colony by facilitating the trade with so considerable a nation of Indians, which have 62 towns and more than 4,000 fighting men. Of late the new colony of Georgia has made an act obliging us to go 400 miles to take out a license to traffic with these Cherokees, though many of their towns lie out of their bounds, and we carried on this trade 80 years before that colony was thought of. I would furnish our foresters for going into this great wilderness with portable provisions, namely gluebroth and rockahominy. The Indians, who have no way of traveling but on the hoof, making nothing of going 25 miles a day and carrying their necessaries at their backs and sometimes a stout pack of skins in the bargains and they laugh at the English, who cannot stir to the next neighbor without a horse and say that two legs are too much for such lazy people who cannot visit their next neighbor without six. For their part they were utter strangers to all our beasts of burden or carriage, before the slothful Europeans came amongst them. Although practice will soon make a man of tolerable vigor an able footman, yet as a help to bear fatigue, I used to chew a root of gingseng as I walked along, this held up my spirits and made me trip away nimbly in my half pack-boots as younger men would do in their shoes. We rested our horses by

walking and custom had made traveling on foot so familiar that we were able to walk ten miles with pleasure. One of the men had the luck to meet with a young buffalo on the 11th of November, the beast being two years old, but notwithstanding as big as an old ordinary ox. The hair growing on his neck and head is shaggy and so soft it will spin into thread not unlike mohair. Some people have stockings made of it that would have served an Israelite during his 40 years march through the wilderness. His horns are short and strong, of which the Indians make large spoons which they say will split and fall to pieces whenever poison is put into them. Buffaloes may be easily tamed when they are taken young. The best way to catch them is to carry a mulch mare into the woods and when you find a cow and a calf to kill the cow and then having caught the calf to suckle it upon the mare, when it will follow her home and become as gentle as another calf. If we could only get into the breed of them they might be made very useful, not only for the dairy, by giving an ocean of milk, but also for drawing vast and cumbersome weights by their prodigious strength. The men were so delighted with the diet of buffalo meat that the gridiron and frying-pan had no more rest at night.

"The Tuscarora Indians were once very numerous and powerful, making within time of memory at least a thousand fighting men. Their habitation, before the war with Carolina, was on the north branch of Neuse river, commonly called Connechia creek, but now the few that are left alive are on the north side of Moratuck, which is all that part of Roanoke below the great falls towards Albemarle sound.

But the greatest consumption of these savages happened by the war about 25 years ago, on account of some injustice the inhabitants of Carolina had done them about their lands. It was on that provocation they resented their wrongs a little too severely upon Mr. Lawson, who under color of being surveyor-general had encroached too much upon their territories, at which they were so enraged that they waylaid him and killed him, but at the same time released the Baron De Graffenreid, whom they had seized for company, because it appeared plainly he had done them no wrong. This blow was followed by some other bloody actions on the part of the Indians, which brought on the war, wherein many were cut off and obliged to flee for refuge to the Senecas, so that now there remains so few that they are in danger of being quite exterminated by the Catawbias, their mortal enemies. We crossed the Trading Path, which is the route the traders take with their caravans when they go to trade with the Indians. The goods for the Indian trade consist chiefly of guns, powder shot, hatchets (which the Indians call tomahawks), kettles, red and blue planes, Duffields, Stroudwater, blankets and some cuttlery wares, brass rings and other trinkets. The course of this path lies through a fine country, watered by several beautiful rivers, those of the greatest note being Tar river, which is the upper part of Pamlico; Flat river, Little river and Eno river, all three branches of Neuse. Between Eno and Saxapahaw rivers are the Haw Old Fields, which have the reputation of containing the most fertile highland in this part of the world, lying in a body of about 50,000 acres. This Saxapahaw is the upper

part of Cape Fear river, the falls of which lie many miles below the Trading Path. Not far from thence the Path crosses Aramanchy river, a branch of the Saxapahaw, and about 40 miles beyond that the Path intersects the Yadkin river, which is there half a mile over and is supposed to be the south branch of the same Pee Dee. About three score miles more bring you to the first town of the Catawbias, called Nauvasa, situated on the banks of the Santee river. These Indians were all called formerly by the general name of the Usherees.

"On the Roanoke river, at the plantation of Cornelius Keith, I beheld the wretchedest scene of poverty I have ever met with in this happy part of the world. This man, his wife and six children lived in a pen like so many cattle, without any roof over their heads but that of heaven. This was their airy residence in the day-time, but then there was a fodder-stack not far from this enclosure, in which the whole family sheltered themselves at night and in bad weather. However, it was almost worth while to be as poor as this man was to be as perfectly contented. All his wants proceeded from indolence and not from misfortune. All the grandees of the Saponna Indians came to meet us, with four young ladies of the first quality, the price set upon whom was not at all exorbitant, as a princess for a pair though dear. The Saponas are now of red stockings cannot surely be made up of the remnants of several other nations, of which the most considerable are the Occaneeches and Stoukenhocks, who have united themselves into one body and all go under the name of the Saponas. The Saponas have now removed in a body to the Ca-

170 p. 11 - How the Indians are called

tawbas, and the daughter of the King of the Teteros went away with them, but being the last of her nation, and fearing she should not be treated according to her rank, she poisoned herself, like an old Roman, with the root of the trumpet-plant. She was the last of her race.

"Thus ended our second expedition, in which we extended the line within the shadow of the Chariky mountains, where we were obliged to set up our pillars like Hercules and return home. His Majesty has been pleased to declare, notwithstanding the desertion of the Carolina commissioners, that the line run by us shall hereafter stand as the true boundary between the governments of Virginia and North Carolina."

The narrative of Col. Byrd also contains notes of a journey to what he called "The Land of Eden," that being his name for his property in North Carolina. He began this journey September 11, 1733. On the 1st of October he crossed the Dan river near the place where the Irvin river runs into it and then came to an opening of large extent, where the Sauro Indians once lived, who, he says, had been a considerable nation, but had been so incessantly annoyed by the frequent inroads of the Senecas that they had been obliged to remove from this fine situation about the year 1700. They then retired more southerly, as far as the

Kewaweese, where Col. Byrd says a remnant of them still survived in 1733. On Hatcher's creek he found a large beech tree, with these words cut upon it, "J. H., H. H., B. B., lay here the 24th of May, 1673." These men, he says, were Joseph Hatcher, Henry Hatcher, and Benjamin Bullington, Indian traders, who had lodged near that place 60 years before on their way to the Sauro town. Col. Byrd had the good luck to shoot a young buffalo. He says: "I pitched my tent on the very spot I had done so when we ran the dividing line between Virginia and Carolina. The beech tree whose bark recorded the names of the Carolina commissioners was still standing, and we did them the justice to add to their names a sketch of their characters. Major Mayo, my companion, began to survey the land which the commissioners of Carolina had presented him with on Sugartree creek. In coming back to our camp from an observation, we found a wolf eating a deer which we had out in the water to preserve it from the ravens. We shot an old she bear and discovered a solitary bull buffalo, which boldly standing his ground, contrary to the custom of that shy animal, we spared his life, from a principle of never slaughtering an innocent creature to no purpose."

FRED A. OLDS.

(The End.)













LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 014 419 484 6

